Owner's Manual
Golf, Golf GTI
V1, R2, en_US
Print status: 08.06.2020
English USA: 2020.09
Teile-Nr.: 5GM012723ST

5GM012723ST

Owner's Manual

Golf, Golf GTI

U.S. Edition, Model Year 2021

Golf, Golf GTI Owner's Manual

Signs and symbols

- Indicates a reference to a section with important information and safety warnings that should always be heeded.
- Arrow indicating that the section continues on the next page.
- Arrow marking the end of a section.
- The symbol indicates situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.
- The symbol indicates registered trademarks. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of any rights associated with intellectual property.
- Cross-reference to a red, orange, or yellow warning in the same section or on the stated page, pointing out possible risks that can cause serious personal injuries and how to help prevent them.
- Cross reference to a Notice about possible property damage, in the same section or on the stated page.
- Used on vehicle labels and indicates the availability of additional important information and warnings in this Owner's Manual.

DANGER

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which will cause death or severe injuries if not avoided.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which could cause death or severe injuries if not avoided.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which could cause minor or moderate injuries if not avoided.

NOTICE

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding situations which could cause vehicle damage if not avoided.

Texts with this symbol contain information about the environment and how you can help to protect it.

Texts with this symbol contain supplementary information.

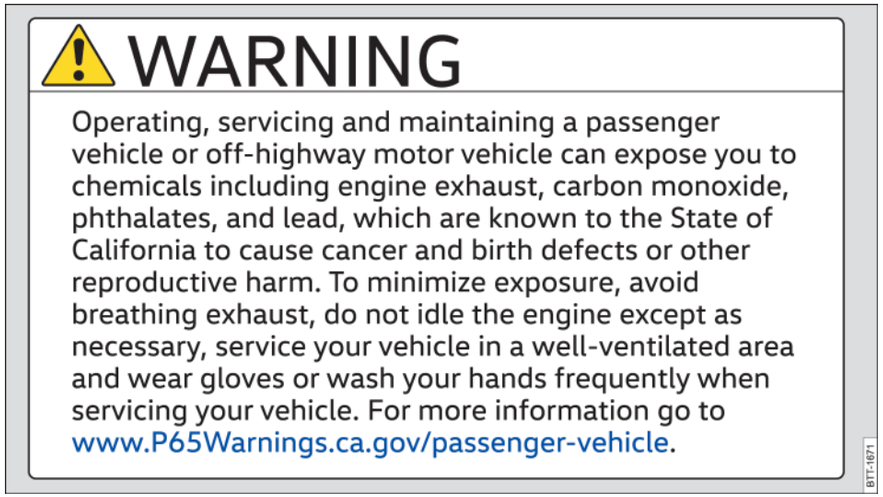


Fig. 1 California Proposition 65 Warning.

Volkswagen works constantly to improve all of its products. Due to ongoing vehicle development, changes in design, equipment, and technology are possible at any time. The information about equipment, appearance, performance, dimensions, weights, fuel consumption, standards, and functions of the vehicles is the information that was available as of the editorial deadline. Some of the equipment may not be available until later or may be available only in certain markets. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for more information. No legal obligations or commitments may be derived from the information, illustrations, and descriptions in this Manual.

No reprint, reproduction, or translation of this Manual is permitted, even in excerpts, without the express written consent of Volkswagen de México.

Volkswagen de México expressly reserves all rights under applicable copyright law. Subject to change without notice.

Produced in Mexico.

© 2020 Volkswagen de México, S.A. de C.V.

This paper was made from chlorine-free, bleached pulp.

We thank you for buying a Volkswagen vehicle

This Volkswagen vehicle provides advanced technology incorporating many convenience features for you to enjoy in your daily driving.
Please carefully read and follow the information in this Owner's Manual. It will help you both to become more familiar with your vehicle and to recognize and avoid situations that could endanger you and others.
If you have questions about your vehicle or if you believe that this Manual is not complete, please contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or your authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities always welcome your questions, suggestions, and constructive criticism.
We hope you enjoy your vehicle and we wish you many years of safe and enjoyable driving.
Volkswagen de México, S.A. de C.V.

5GM012723ST

5GM012723ST

Table of contents

Vehicle overview
— Front view 5
— Side view 6
— Rear view 7
— Driver door overview 8
— Driver side overview 9
— Upper center console 10
— Lower center console 11
— Front passenger side overview 12
— Roof console 12

Volkswagen Information System
— Warning and indicator lights 13
— Instrument cluster 15
— Using the instrument cluster menus 24
— Infotainment system operation and displays 26

Safety
— General information 32
— Sitting properly and safely 33
— Safety belts 36
— Airbag system 44
— Child safety and child restraints 64
— In an emergency 84

Opening and closing
— Vehicle key set 86
— Keyless Access with push-button start 88
— Doors and power locking system 90
— Anti-theft alarm system 95
— Trunk lid 96
— Power windows 98
— Power sunroof 100

Steering wheel
— Adjusting the steering wheel position 103

Seats and head restraints
— Driver and front passenger seats 104
— Rear seats 106
— Head restraints 107
— Seat functions 110

Lights
— Turn signals 112
— Vehicle lighting 112
— High beams 116
— Interior lighting 118

Vision
— Windshield wipers and washer 119
— Mirrors 121
— Sun protection 124

Climate control
— Heating and air conditioning 126

Driving
— Information on driving safely and efficiently 133
— Starting and stopping the engine 141
— Start-stop system 146
— Manual transmission 147
— Automatic and DSG® transmission 148
— Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold) 154
— Downhill speed control 155
— Steering 156
— Driving Mode Selection 157

Driver assistance systems
— Cruise control 160
— Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 162
— Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist) 167
— Lane Keeping system (Lane Assist) 171
— Blind Spot Monitor 173

Parking and maneuvering
— Parking 177
— Parking brake 178
— Park Distance Control (PDC) 179
— Rear View Camera system 182
— Park Assist 185
— Rear Traffic Alert 189
— Braking assistance systems 191

Storage and equipment
— Storage areas 196
— Cup holders 200
— Power outlets 201

Media and audio components
— Removing the subwoofer 204

Data transfer
— Cybersecurity 205
— VW Car-Net® Security & Service: Connecting you and your vehicle 205
— Wi-FI hotspot 207

Transporting
— Stowing luggage 213
— Luggage compartment cover 214
— Variable luggage compartment floor 215
— Luggage compartment – features 216
— Roof rack 218
— Trailer towing 220

Fuel and emission control system
— Tips on handling fuel 221
— Refueling 222
— Fuel types 222
— Engine control and emission control system 225

Do it yourself
— Vehicle tool kit 227
— Windshield wiper blades 228
— Replacing light bulbs 230
— Replacing fuses 231
— Jump-starting 233
— Towing 236

Checking and refilling
— In the engine compartment 241
— Operating fluids and equipment 244
— Windshield washer fluid 245
— Engine oil 246
— Engine coolant 251
— Brake fluid 255
— Vehicle battery 256

Tires and wheels
— Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 260
— Important information on tires and wheels 269
— Wheel trim 298
— Changing a wheel 299

Vehicle maintenance
— Vehicle care 308
— Parts, accessories, repairs, and modifications 316

Consumer information
— Important vehicle labels 320
— Air conditioning system operating fluids 320
— Driving your vehicle outside of the United States and Canada 321
— Radio antenna and reception 321
— Component protection 321
— Volkswagen service information 322
— Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems 322
— Reporting Safety Defects 322

Technical data
— Weights and axle weights 324
— Vehicle identification label 324
— Dimensions 325
— Fuel capacities 325
— Engine data 325

Abbreviations 327

Index 328

5GM012723ST

About this Manual

— At the end of this Manual, you will find an alphabetical index.

— The list of Abbreviations at the end of the Manual explains the technical abbreviations and designations.

— Directions (left, right, front, back) refer to the driving direction unless noted otherwise.

— Illustrations are only for orientation and are merely used to help explain the text descriptions and instructions.

— Some values in this Owner's Manual may be given in both metric and imperial units, like km/h and mph. These values refer to certain country-specific equipment, such as instrument clusters, and to country-specific regulations, such as speed limits.

— Any technical modifications to the vehicle that were introduced after the editorial deadline can be found in a supplement to this Manual.

All options and models are described without identification as optional equipment or model versions. Some of the described equipment may not be installed on your vehicle or may be available at a later time or only in certain markets. Please consult the sales documents regarding your vehicle's equipment and options and contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for more information.

All information in this Manual corresponds to information available as of the editorial deadline. Due to ongoing vehicle development, there may be differences between your vehicle and the information in this Manual. No legal obligations or commitments can be derived from the information, illustrations, or descriptions in this Manual.

If you sell or lend your vehicle, please make sure that the complete Manual set is in the vehicle.

Standard Manual set includes:

— Warranty and Maintenance booklet

— Owner's Manual

The Manual set may also include:

— Supplement

— Infotainment System

— *Other inserts* ◁

Vehicle overview

Front view

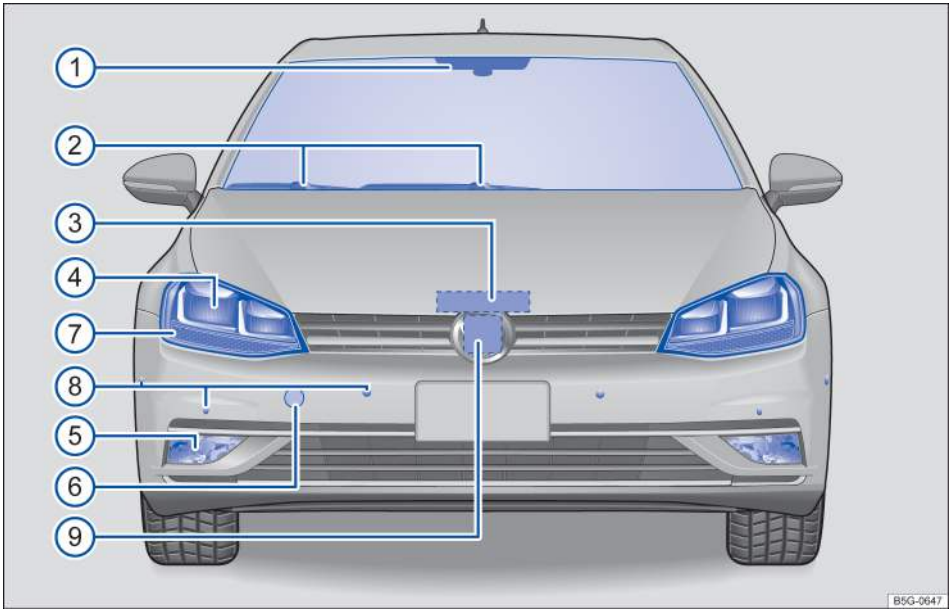


Fig. 2 Vehicle front overview.

Key to fig. 2:

① Inside mirror with sensor or camera on the mirror base for:
- — Rain sensor (if equipped) 120
- — Low-light sensor (if equipped) 112
- — Lane Assist (if equipped) 171
- — Light Assist (if equipped) 116

② Windshield wipers 119
③ Engine hood release 241
④ Headlights (on left and right) 112
⑤ Fog lights/static cornering lights (on left and right, if equipped) 112
⑥ Threaded hole for the front towing eye (behind cover) 236
⑦ Side marker lights (on left and right) 112
⑧ Sensors for:
- — Park Distance Control (PDC) (on left and right, if equipped) 179
- — Park Assist (on left and right, if equipped) 185

⑨ Sensor for:
- — Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) (if equipped) 162
- — Front Assist (if equipped) ..... 167 ◁

5GM012723ST

Side view

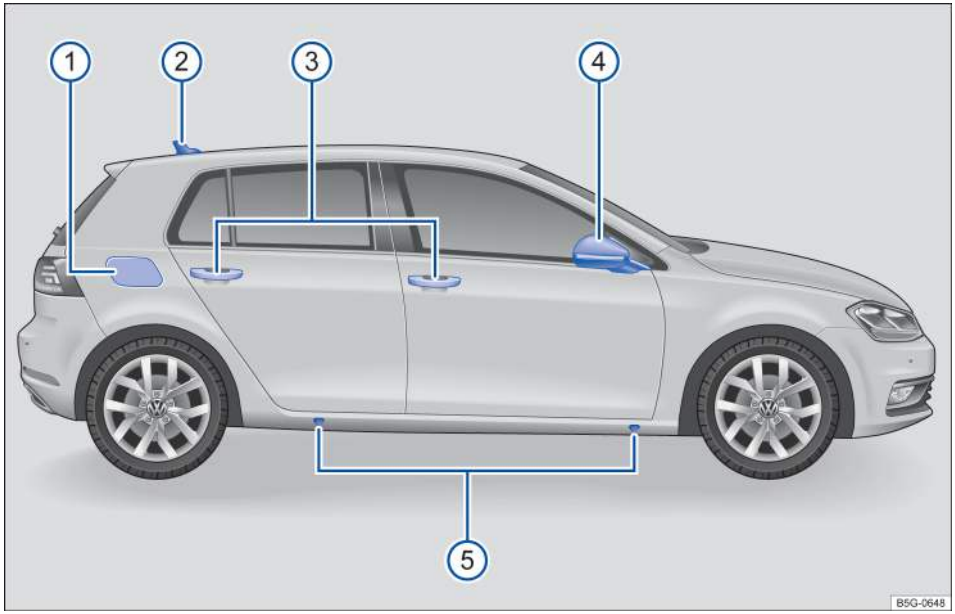


Fig. 3 Vehicle side overview.

Key to fig. 3:

① Fuel filler flap 222
② Roof antenna 321
③ Outside door handles 90
④ Outside mirror : 121
— Additional turn signal light 112
— Blind Spot Monitor indicator light (if equipped) 173
⑤ Lift points for the jack ..... 299 ◁

Rear view

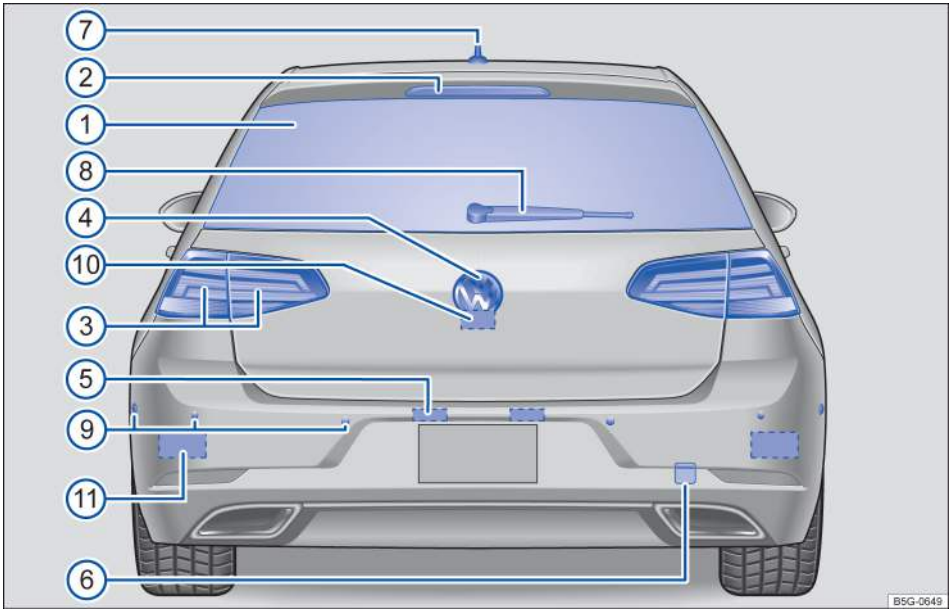


Fig. 4 Vehicle rear overview.

Key to fig. 4:

① Rear window:
— Rear window defroster 126
② High-mounted brake light 112
③ Taillights (on left and right) , ... 112, 230
④ Volkswagen emblem for opening the trunk lid 96
⑤ License plate lights (on left and right) , ... 112, 230
⑥ Threaded hole for the rear towing eye (behind cover) 236
⑦ Roof antenna 321
⑧ Rear windshield wiper 119
⑨ Sensors for:
— Park Distance Control (PDC) (on left and right, if equipped) 179
— Park Assist (on left and right, if equipped) 185
⑩ Under the Volkswagen emblem: Rear View Camera system location 182
⑪ Sensors for the Blind Spot Monitor and Rear Traffic Alert (approximate location on left and right, if equipped) , ... 173, 189 ◁

5GM012723ST

Driver door overview

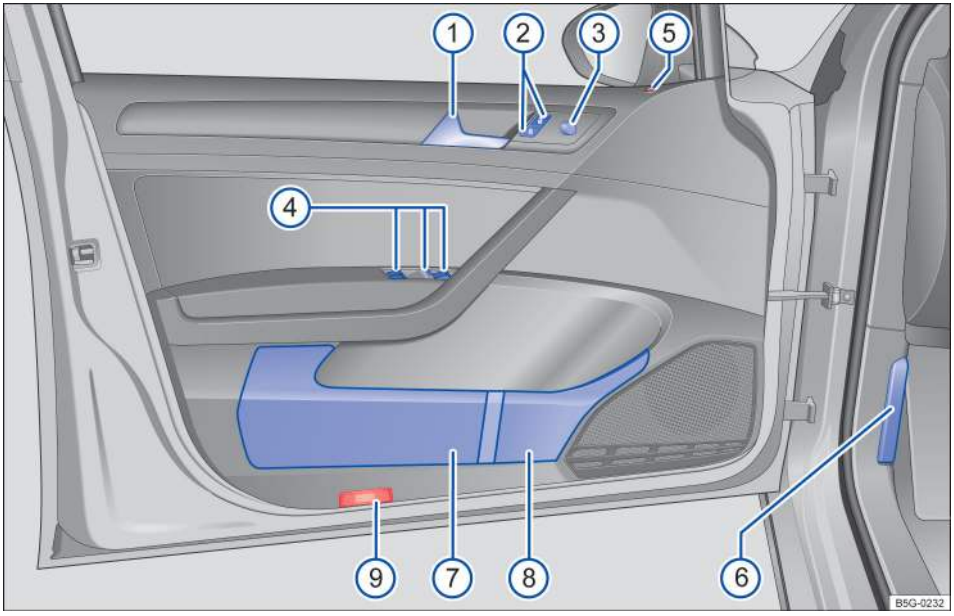


Fig. 5 Overview of the driver door.

Key to fig. 5:

① Door handle 90
② Power locking switch for locking and unlocking the vehicle 90
③ Knob for adjusting the outside mirrors : 121
— Adjusting outside mirrors L – 0 – R
— Outside mirror heating
④ Switches for operating the power windows 98
— Power windows
— Safety switch for rear power windows
⑤ Indicator light for the power locking system 90
⑥ Lever for releasing the engine hood 241
⑦ Storage compartment 196
⑧ Bottle holder 200
⑨ Reflector

Driver side overview

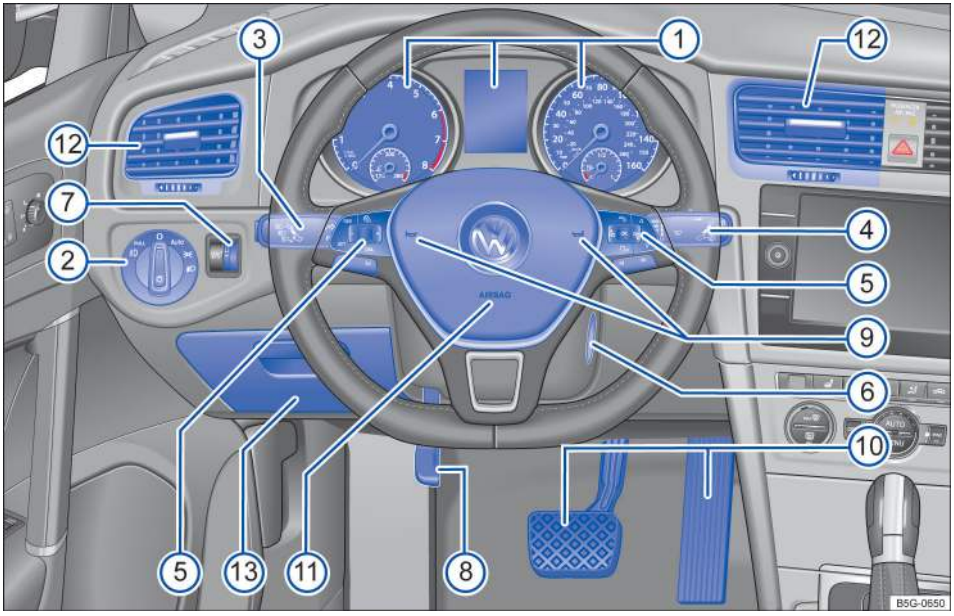


Fig. 6 Driver side overview.

Key to fig. 6:

① Instrument cluster:
- — Instruments 15
- — Display 16
- — Warning and indicator lights 13

② Headlight switch ☼ : 112
- — Off position **0**
- — Automatic headlights **AUTO** (if equipped)
- — Parking lights ⇉ (if equipped)
- — Low beams ≡D
- — Fog lights **PULL** ≡D (if equipped)

③ Lever for : 112
- — Turning high beams on or off ≡D – ≡D
- — Headlight flasher ≡D **1**x
- — Turn signals ⇦⇨

④ Windshield wiper and washer lever : 119
- — Windshield wiper **HIGH** – **LOW**
- — Intermittent operation for the front windshield wipers **INT**
- — Interval settings for the wipers or sensitivity for the rain sensor ▲▲▲▲ (if equipped)
- — Windshield wiper **OFF**
- — "One-tap wiping" **1**x
- — Windshield wiper ▽
- — Automatic wipe/wash for windshield ▽
- — Rear window wiper ▽

5GM012723ST

— Rear window automatic wipe/wash

5 Multi-function steering wheel controls : 24
— Volume setting for radio, navigation system notifications (if applicable), or telephone calls
— Voice control activation
— Audio, navigation
— Control buttons for the Volkswagen Information System , , ... 13
— Cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control buttons , SET, CNL, RES, , , ... 160, 162
— Button for driver assistance systems 25
— Button for switching between the current and the previously selected menu VIEW 24

6 Ignition switch (vehicles without Keyless Access) or location for the emergency start feature for the Keyless Access system 141

7 Dimmer control for the instrument and switch illumination 112

8 Lever for the adjustable steering wheel 103

9 Horn

10 Pedals 133

11 Driver front airbag 44

12 Air vents – – 126

13 Storage compartment 196

Upper center console

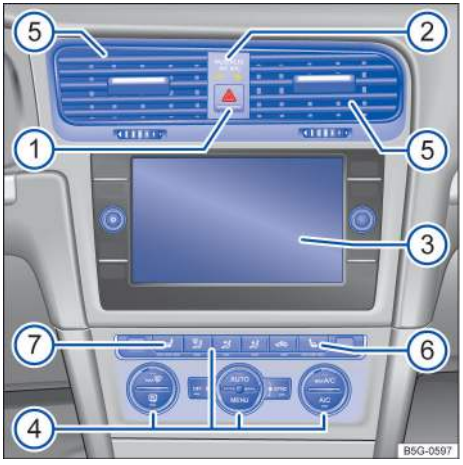


Fig. 7 Overview of the upper center console.

Key to fig. 7:

1 Button for the emergency flashers 84

2 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light (front airbag for front seat passenger) 44

3 Infotainment system → *Infotainment System*, ... 26
— User information display 26
— Radio → *Infotainment System*
— Navigation system → *Infotainment System*

4 Controls for:

— Manual air conditioning 126
— Climatronic 126
(5) Air vents ◀ – ▶ 126
(6) Passenger seat heating button 126
(7) Driver seat heating button 126

Lower center console

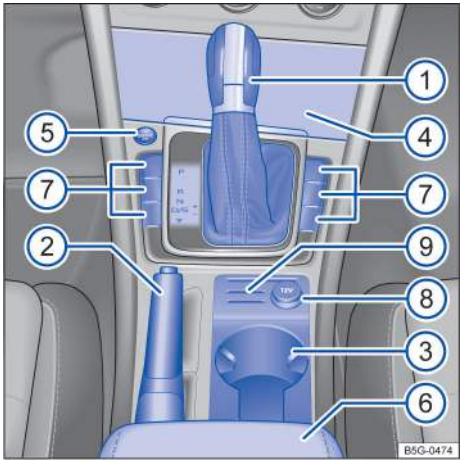


Fig. 8 Overview of the lower center console.

Key to fig. 8:

(1) Lever for:
— Manual transmission 147
— Automatic or DSG® transmission 148
(2) Parking brake lever 178
(3) Cup holders 200
(4) Storage compartment 196
— With USB port → *Infotainment System*
(5) Starter button (for vehicles with Keyless Access) 141
(6) Center armrest 110
— With storage compartment 196
— With 12 Volt socket 201
(7) Buttons for:
— Driving Mode Selection (if equipped) 157
— Start-stop system (if equipped) 146
— Anti-slip regulation (ASR) (if equipped) 191
— Park Assist (if equipped) 185
— Park Distance Control (if equipped) 179
(8) 12 Volt socket 201
(9) Coin holders 198

5GM012723ST

Front passenger side overview

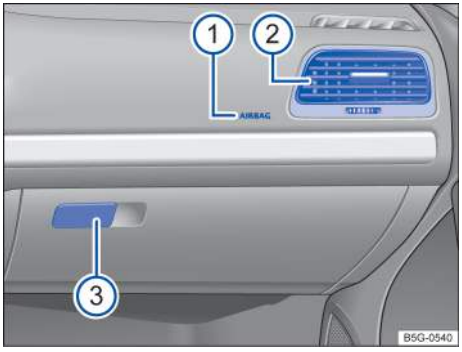


Fig. 9 Overview of the front passenger side.

Key to fig. 9:

① Passenger front airbag location in the instrument panel (approximate) 44
② Air vent ◀ – ▮▮▸ – ▶ 126
③ Opening handle for the glove compartment ..... 196 ◁

Roof console

Symbol	Meaning
REAR	Interior and reading lights → page 112.
	Power sunroof → page 100.
SOS	3-button module for vehicles with Car-Net® → page 205. ◁

Volkswagen Information System

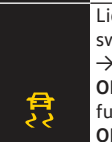
Warning and indicator lights

Warning and indicator lights notify you of warnings → ⚠ and malfunctions → ⓘ, or tell you about certain functions. Some warning and indicator lights come on when the ignition is switched on and should go out when the engine is running or when the vehicle is moving.

Additional text messages appear in the instrument cluster of appropriately equipped vehicles to give more information or prompt you to take certain actions → page 15, *Instrument cluster*.

Depending on the vehicle options, a symbol may appear in the instrument cluster instead of a warning light.

In addition, a warning chime or other acoustic warning sounds when certain warning and indicator lights go on.

Symbol	Meaning → ⚠, → ⓘ
	Central warning light: Read and follow the text messages in the instrument cluster display.
	Stop! Parking brake engaged → page 178.
	Stop! Brake fluid level too low → page 255. **OR:** Brake system malfunction → page 191. **OR:** Together with the ABS indicator light (ABS) or **ABS**: ABS failure → page 191.
	Stop! Engine coolant level too low, engine coolant temperature too high, or engine coolant system malfunction [a] → page 251, → page 22.
	Stop! Engine oil pressure too low [a] → page 246.
	Stop! Lights up: Steering system malfunction → page 156.
	Stop! Flashes: Electronic steering column lock malfunction → page 156.
	Driver and/or passenger safety belts not buckled → page 36.
	Brake or take action to avoid the vehicle ahead! Front Assist Forward Collision Warning (if equipped) [a] → page 167. **OR:** Pedestrian Monitoring system warning.
	Brake! Depress brake pedal. ACC driver intervention warning → page 162.
	Alternator malfunction [a] → page 256.
	Central caution light: Read and follow the text messages in the instrument cluster display.
	Lights up: ESC malfunction or ESC switched off by the system → page 191. **OR:** Together with (ABS) or **ABS**: ABS malfunction. **OR:** The vehicle battery has been reconnected. Flashes: ESC or ASR is active → page 191.
	ASR manually deactivated → page 191. **OR:** ESC Sport mode manually activated → page 191. **OR:** Together with **ESC OFF**: ESC manually switched off → page 191.
	ABS malfunction → page 191.
	Electronic parking brake malfunction (if equipped) [a] → page 178.
	One or more driving lights burned out [a] → page 230.
	Light malfunction [b] → page 112.
	Lights up: Engine control malfunction → page 225. Flashes: Misfire → page 225.
	Engine control malfunction → page 141.
	Engine speed (rpm) limited (if equipped, to help prevent overheating) [a] → page 141.
	Lights up: Problem with the steering → page 156. Flashes: Steering column not locked/unlocked → page 156.
	Lights up: Tire pressure too low → page 260. Flashes: Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction → page 260.
	Rain and light sensor malfunction → page 112, → page 119.
	Windshield wiper malfunction → page 119.

5GM012723ST

Symbol	Meaning → ⚠, → ⓘ
	Not enough windshield washer fluid [a] → page 119.
	Fuel tank almost empty → page 222, → page 21.
	Lights up: Engine oil level too low [a] → page 246. Flashes: Engine oil system malfunction [a] → page 246.
	Airbag and safety belt pretensioner system malfunction → page 44.
	Passenger front airbag turned off (PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light) → page 44.
	Fuel filler cap not properly closed [a] → page 222.
	Lane Assist switched on, not active → page 171.
	Automatic transmission: Malfunction or transmission overheating [a] → page 148. *Manual transmission:* Clutch does not transfer all of the engine torque [a] → page 147.
	Adaptive cruise control (ACC) currently not available [a] → page 162.
	Front Assist switched off (if equipped) - [a] → page 167.
	Adaptive chassis control DCC system malfunction (if equipped) [a] → page 157.
	Turn signals, left or right → page 112.
	Emergency flashers switched on → page 84.
	Lights up: Brake pedal not depressed → page 133. Flashes: The release button in the selector lever is not engaged → page 148.
	Lights up: Cruise control is regulating the vehicle speed → page 160.
	OR: Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) switched on (if equipped) → page 162.
	Lane Assist is switched on and active → page 171.
	High beams switched on or headlight flashers in use → page 112.
	ACC switched on. No vehicle has been detected ahead → page 162.
	ACC switched on. Vehicle detected ahead → page 162.
	Increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. Front Assist distance warning (if equipped) → page 167.
	Cruise control malfunction → page 160

Symbol	Meaning → ⚠, → ⓘ
	Light Assist high beam control switched on (if equipped) → page 112.
	Service reminder display → page 23.
	Charge level of the mobile phone battery. Applies only to models with a factory-installed mobile phone package → *Infotainment System*.
	Outside temperature colder than +39 °F (+4 °C) → page 16.
	Start-stop available. Automatic engine stop is active → page 146.
	Start-stop not available. **OR:** Start-stop has automatically restarted the engine → page 146.
	Fuel-efficient driving display → page 16.
	Refer to the Owner's Manual.

[a] Displayed in color on an instrument cluster with color display.

[b] A separate display appears in the instrument cluster if there is an AFS malfunction.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic and where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.
- A broken-down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.
- Before opening the engine hood, always switch off the engine and let the engine cool down.
- Always be very careful when working in the engine compartment, which is a potentially dangerous area in any motor vehicle and can cause serious personal injury → page 241, *In the engine compartment*.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage. ◁

Instrument cluster

Introduction

Emergency starting and starting the engine with a very weak vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, driver personalization, and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge.

WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never use the buttons in the instrument cluster while driving.
- Adjust the settings in the instrument cluster or the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is standing still.

Instrument overview (Golf, Golf GTI)

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 15.

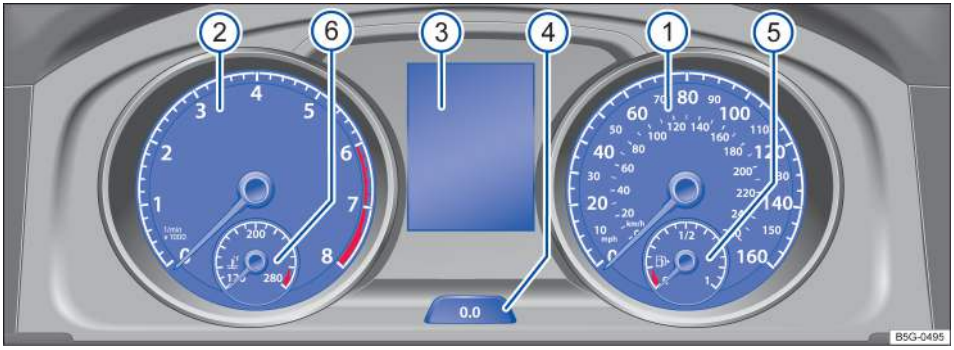


Fig. 10 Instrument cluster in the instrument panel (Golf).

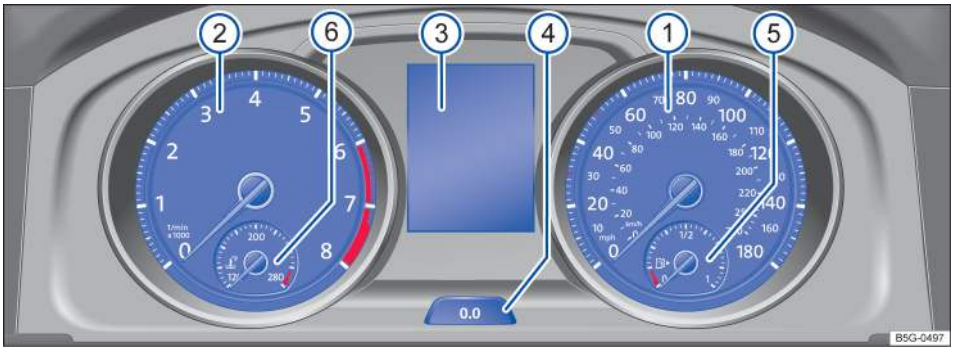


Fig. 11 Instrument cluster in the instrument panel (Golf GTI).

Instrument explanations → fig. 10 or → fig. 11:

(1) **Speedometer**.
(2) **Tachometer** (thousands of revolutions per minute when the engine is running) → page 16.
(3) **Displays** → page 16.

5GM012723ST

④ **Reset, set, and display button** → page 16, → page 18, → page 20.
⑤ **Fuel gauge** → page 21, → page 222.
⑥ **Engine coolant temperature gauge** → page 22, → page 251.

Tachometer

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 15.

Tachometer

The beginning of the red zone at the end of the scale indicates maximum permissible engine rpm (revolutions per minute) for all gears after the break-in period. Before the needle reaches the red zone, select the next higher gear or selector lever position **D/S**, or ease your foot off the accelerator → ⓘ.

NOTICE

- To help prevent engine damage, always avoid high engine speeds, full throttle acceleration, and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold.
- To help prevent engine damage, the tachometer needle should only enter the red zone (warning zone) briefly, for example, when accelerating rapidly.

Upshifting early into the next higher gear saves fuel and reduces engine noise.

Displays

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 15.

Depending on vehicle equipment, different information may be shown in the instrument cluster display.

- Open doors, engine hood, or trunk lid
- Warning and information texts → page 19, *Warning and information texts*
- Odometer displays
- Time → page 20, *Setting the clock*
- Radio and navigation information → *Infotainment System*
- Telephone information → *Infotainment System*
- Outside temperature
- Compass display
- Selector lever position → page 149, *Automatic or DSG® transmission selector lever*
- Gear recommendation → page 133, *Gear recommendation*
- Driving data and menus for different settings → page 18, *Driving data (Multi-Function Display)*
- Service reminder display → page 23, *Service reminder display*
- Speed warning
- Start-stop system status information → page 146, *Start-stop system*
- Fuel-efficient driving display eco
- Engine identification code
- Driver personalization: User selection → page 30, *Driver personalization*

Open doors, hood, or trunk lid

The instrument cluster display indicates if any doors, the engine hood, or trunk lid are open once the vehicle has been unlocked, and while the vehicle is moving. There may also be an audible warning chime. Different models and equipment versions may have different displays.

Driver personalization

For vehicles equipped with driver personalization, the instrument cluster display indicates which user profile is currently active for about 10 seconds after the ignition is switched on. During this time, you can switch from one user profile to another with the arrow up and down buttons △ or ▽ on the multifunction steering wheel.

You can adjust more settings for driver personalization in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Odometer displays

The *odometer* at the bottom of the instrument cluster display indicates the total distance driven by the vehicle.

The *trip odometer* (**trip**) shows the distance driven since the last time the trip odometer was reset. The last digit indicates 1/10 mile (or 100 meters, depending on the units selected).

Press the 0.0 button in the instrument cluster briefly→ page 15, *Instrument overview (Golf, Golf GTI)* to reset the trip odometer to 0.

Outside temperature display

At outside temperatures below about +39 °F (+4 °C), a "snowflake symbol" ❄ appears in the display. The symbol stays on until the outside temperature rises above +43 °F (+6 °C) → ⚠.

When the vehicle is not moving or when you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature.

The measurement range is from -49 °F (-45 °C) to +169 °F (+76 ℃).

Compass display

On vehicles equipped with a compass display, the current compass direction is indicated in the instrument cluster display when the ignition (or the navigation system, if equipped) is switched on.

On vehicles equipped with a navigation system and the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit, you can view the compass display in the **Navigation** or **Driver assist systems** information profiles.

Selector lever position (automatic or DSG® transmission)

The selector lever position is shown both on the side of the selector lever and in the instrument cluster. The respective gear may be shown in the instrument cluster display in Tiptronic® mode → page 149, *Automatic or DSG® transmission selector lever*.

Gear recommendation

When the vehicle is moving, a fuel economy gear recommendation may appear in the instrument cluster display → page 133, *Gear recommendation*.

Speed warning

A display in the instrument cluster indicates when the set maximum speed has been exceeded → page 13, *Volkswagen Information System*.

The speed warning can also be set and changed in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system when the ignition is switched on → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Start-stop status display (if equipped)

The current status of the Start-stop system is shown in the instrument cluster display → page 146, *Start-stop system*.

Fuel-efficient driving display

In vehicles equipped with the fuel-efficient driving display, the instrument cluster display shows the symbol when the vehicle is being driven in a fuel-efficient manner → page 134, *Efficient driving style*.

Engine identification code

Press and hold the 0.0 button in the instrument cluster → page 15, *Instrument overview (Golf, Golf GTI)* for about 15 seconds to display the vehicle's engine identification code. You must do this when the doors are closed, the ignition is on, but the engine is not running.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights or other warnings can result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic and where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.
- A broken-down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.

WARNING

Roads and bridges may be dangerously icy even if the outside air temperature is above freezing.

- If you use the outside temperature display to tell you about frost conditions, remember that roads can even ice over at temperatures above +39 °F (+4 °C). Always remember: even if the "snowflake symbol" is not displayed, there could still be black ice on the road.
- Never rely exclusively on the outside temperature display.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

The instrument cluster displays and their arrangement may vary depending on the vehicle model and engine. For displays without warning and information messages, malfunctions are only signaled with indicator lights.

Depending on vehicle equipment, some settings and displays may also appear in the Infotainment system. ◁

5GM012723ST

Instrument cluster menus

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 15.

The following list shows how the Volkswagen Information System menus in the instrument cluster display are structured. The size and layout of the Volkswagen Information System menu depends on vehicle equipment.

Certain menus may only be displayed while the vehicle is completely stopped.

Driving data → page 18

Assist systems (if equipped)

- Lane Assist on/off → page 171
- Blind Spot on/off → page 173
- Rear Traffic on/off → page 189
- Front Assist on/off → page 167
- ACC (display only) → page 162

Navigation (if equipped) → *Infotainment System*

Compass (vehicles without navigation) → page 16

Audio → *Infotainment System*

Telephone → *Infotainment System*

Vehicle status → page 19

Lap timer (if equipped) → page 20

Driving data (Multi-Function Display)

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 15.

When the ignition is on, the **Driving data** menu provides a variety of travel and fuel consumption data. Navigate through the data as described on → page 25, *Operation with the multi-function steering wheel*.

Switching between the displays

Use the arrow up and down buttons (△ and ▽) on the right side of the steering wheel → fig. 16.

Trip memories

The display has 3 automatic memories:

— **Since start**

— **Extend. period**

— **Since refuel**

The currently selected memory is shown in the display.

The trip memories are in addition to the trip odometer, which is displayed in the bottom part of the instrument cluster and controlled using the 0.0 button → fig. 10 (4), → fig. 11 (4), or, depending on equipment.

Press the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel to toggle between the 3 memories when the ignition is on.

The driving data for the trip memories can also be viewed in the Infotainment system by pressing the MENU button followed by the Vehicle and 🚗 function keys → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

OR: When the vehicle is not moving, press the CAR Infotainment button until the Driving Data is displayed → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Since start trip memory

The memory accumulates and stores information about distance driven and fuel used from the time the ignition was switched on until the time it was switched off.

If the ignition stays off for 2 hours or more, stored information is automatically deleted. If the trip is continued within 2 hours after the ignition was switched off, the memory continues to accumulate and store information after the ignition is switched on again.

Extend. period trip memory

Depending on the instrument cluster version, the memory displays and stores the accumulated driving and fuel consumption data of any number of single trips up to a total driving time of either 19 hours and 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes, and up to a total distance of either 1,999 km or 9,999 km. If one of the maximum values[1)] is exceeded, then the memory is automatically cleared and starts again from 0.

Since refuel trip memory

The memory accumulates and stores information about distance driven and fuel used from the time the vehicle is refueled. The memory is deleted automatically during refueling.

1) May differ depending on the instrument cluster version.

Manually erasing a trip memory

— Select either the **Since start** or the **Extended period** memory to be erased. The **Since refuel** memory cannot be manually erased.

— Press and hold the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel for about 2 seconds.

You can also reset the **Since start** or the **Extended period** driving data in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Enabling and disabling displays

You can set which driving data displays should appear in the instrument cluster in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*. The units in which data is displayed can also be changed. Options may vary, depending on vehicle equipment.

Average (or ∅) economy display

Average fuel consumption in miles per gallon (l/100 km) on trips per trip memories 1, 2, and 3 (toggle). For the **Since start** trip memory, the value is displayed once the vehicle has been driven about 330 feet (100 m). Until then, dashes appear instead of a number. The value displayed is updated every second.

Range display

Estimated distance in miles (km) that the vehicle can go with the fuel left in the tank the way you are currently driving. Takes account of the current fuel consumption, among other things.

Average (or ∅) speed display

Average speed on trips per trip memories 1, 2, and 3 (toggle). For the **Since start** trip memory, the value is displayed once the vehicle has been driven about 300 feet (100 m). The value displayed is updated every 5 seconds.

Energy consumers display

Displays any convenience equipment in the vehicle that is currently affecting fuel consumption in gallons per hour (or liters per hour).

Speed warning

When the speed warning is switched on and the set speed is exceeded, an acoustic warning sounds and a visual message may also appear in the instrument cluster display.

— Select the **Speed warning** or **Warning at** display in the instrument cluster.

— Press the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel to save the current speed and to activate the warning.

— If necessary, set the desired speed within about 5 seconds with the △ or ▽ buttons on the multi-function steering wheel. Then press the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel a second time or just wait a few seconds. The speed is saved and the warning is activated.

— *To deactivate*, press the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel. The set speed is deleted.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Warning and information texts

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 15.

The status of various vehicle functions and components is monitored when the ignition is switched on and while driving. Malfunctions are indicated by red and yellow warning symbols with text messages in the instrument cluster display → page 13, *Warning and indicator lights*. In some cases, they may also be signaled acoustically. The display can vary depending on the instrument cluster model.

Additionally, current malfunctions can be manually displayed in the **Vehicle status** or **Vehicle** menu.

Priority 1 warning message (red)[1)]

A symbol flashes or lights up – sometimes with acoustic warnings. STOP **Stop!** → ⚠.

Check the malfunction and take corrective action. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

Menus cannot be accessed when a priority 1 warning message is displayed. The warning message will turn off automatically after a few seconds. You can confirm and turn off some warning messages by pressing the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Priority 2 warning message (yellow)

A symbol flashes or lights up continuously – sometimes with acoustic warnings.

Malfunctions or low operating fluid levels may cause vehicle damage and vehicle breakdown → (!).

1) Displayed in color on an instrument cluster with color display.

5GM012723ST

Check the malfunction as soon as possible. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

Information texts

Information texts provide information about various vehicle situations.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, turn on the emergency flashers, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.
- Never park the vehicle in areas where the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, oil, or other material that can catch fire.
- A broken-down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

If there are multiple warning messages, the symbols are displayed for several seconds in order of importance. The symbols are displayed until the cause has been corrected.

If warning messages are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear differently. If this happens, take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. ◁

Setting the clock

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice on page 15.

You can set the time in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system when the ignition is switched on → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

You can also set the time in the instrument cluster.

— If a vehicle status message or the vehicle icon is displayed, push the OK button on the right side of the multi-function steering wheel.

— To set the time, press and hold the 0.0 button in the instrument cluster → page 15 or until the word **Time** appears in the display. If the ignition is switched off, the doors must be closed.

— Release the button. The time is shown in the instrument cluster display and the hour setting is highlighted.

— Press the 0.0 button repeatedly until the correct hour is displayed. Press and hold the button to scroll through quickly.

— Once you have set the hour, release the button and wait a few seconds until the minutes display is highlighted.

— Press the 0.0 button repeatedly until the correct minutes are displayed. Press and hold the button to scroll through quickly.

— Release the button to finish setting the clock. ◁

Lap timer

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice on page 15.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a lap timer that you can access via the main menu in the instrument cluster → page 18, *Instrument cluster menus*.

With the lap timer, you can time your own laps manually, store lap times, and compare the times to one another.

The following menus can be displayed:

— **Lap timer**

— **Lap 1** (or current lap number)

— **Statistics**

Switching between the menus

— Press the △ or ▽ button on the multi-function steering wheel → fig. 16.

Menu displays and functions

Lap timer menu:

Start The timing of a lap starts.

Since start Timing starts when the vehicle begins driving. If the vehicle is already in motion, timing will begin after the vehicle has come to a temporary stop.

Statistics Statistics display of the laps driven.

A new first lap can only be started if the statistics are reset in the **Statistics** menu.

Lap menu:

New lap Timing of the current lap is interrupted and a new lap begins. The time of the completed lap is carried over to the statistics.

Split time A split time displays for about 5 seconds. Active timing continues in parallel.

Stop Active timing is interrupted. This will not end the lap.

Resume After pressing **Stop**, paused timing resumes for the current lap.

Stop lap After pressing **Stop**, timing of the active lap ends and the lap is deleted. It is not entered into the statistics.

End After pressing **Stop**, active timing stops. The lap is automatically entered into the statistics.

Statistics menu:

Back Go back to the previous menu.

Reset All stored statistics data is reset.

In the "Statistics" menu, the lap times most recently recorded are shown. If the maximum number of 99 laps or the maximum time of 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds has been recorded, timing can only start again after the statistics are reset.

WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never set the lap timer when the vehicle is moving.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause skidding and loss of traction, especially on slippery roads, resulting in a loss of vehicle control, collisions, and serious personal injury.

- Only use the lap timer or fast acceleration if speed limits, visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions permit and other drivers will not be endangered by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.

NOTICE

To help prevent engine damage, always avoid high engine speeds, full throttle acceleration, and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold. ◁

Indicator lights and fuel gauge

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 15.

Fig. 12 In the instrument cluster: Fuel gauge.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

Fuel tank almost empty

The yellow indicator light comes on. The vehicle is running on reserve (red area indicated in → fig. 12) → page 221, → page 325.

— Refuel as soon as possible → ⓘ.

Fuel filler cap not properly closed

The yellow indicator light comes on. The fuel filler cap is not properly closed.

— Stop the vehicle in a safe place and switch off the engine and the ignition.

— Open the fuel filler flap and take the fuel filler cap off the filler neck. Then put the fuel filler cap back on the filler neck and screw it on clockwise until you clearly hear a clicking sound.

— Close the fuel filler flap.

After switching on the ignition, the indicator light may stay on or the text message may still appear in the instrument cluster display, even if the fuel filler cap is now properly closed. This is normal and no reason to take your vehicle in for service.

5GM012723ST

If, however, the malfunction indicator light also comes on, drive to your nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the fuel system and the engine checked.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

WARNING

Driving with a fuel tank that is almost empty can lead to stalling in traffic, a collision, and serious personal injuries.

- When the fuel tank is almost empty, fuel supply to the engine can be interrupted, especially when driving over bumps, across slopes, and up and down hills.
- Steering and braking assistance as well as ESC and related systems will not work if the engine "sputters" or stalls due to lack of fuel.
- Always refuel when the tank is 1/4 full to reduce the risk of running out of fuel and stalling in traffic.

NOTICE

- Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular fuel supply can cause the engine to misfire. This allows unburned fuel to get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

The small arrow next to the gas pump symbol in the fuel gauge → fig. 12 shows the side of the vehicle with the fuel filler flap. ◁

Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice on page 15.

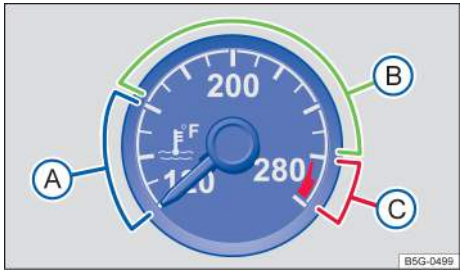


Fig. 13 Engine coolant temperature gauge in the instrument cluster.

Key to fig. 13:

- (A) Cold range. Do not drive at high engine speeds or with heavy engine loads until the engine warms up.
- (B) Normal temperature range.
- (C) Warning zone. The display may also move into the warning area when the engine is working hard, especially at high ambient temperatures.

If the needle in the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the cold range (A), the engine has not reached operating temperature. High engine speeds and heavy engine loads should be avoided.

Under normal driving conditions, the needle should be in the middle of the gauge. The temperature may go higher when the engine is working hard, especially in hot weather.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

The following paragraphs explain what to do if the engine coolant temperature warning light does not go out a few seconds after the engine is started or starts flashing while driving.

Flashes when the temperature needle is in area (C)

The engine coolant temperature is too high.

— **Stop!** Pull off the road and stop as soon as you can do so safely.

— Stop the engine and let it cool down until the temperature needle is in the normal range again.

— Check the engine coolant level and add engine coolant if needed → page 253, *Checking engine coolant level and topping off*.

— If the engine coolant level is correct or the problem continues after adding coolant and driving a short distance, **do not drive any farther**. Contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

— If the coolant level is correct, the overheating may be caused by a radiator fan fault. Check the fuses and replace as necessary → page 231, *Replacing fuses*.

Flashes when the temperature needle is in area Ⓑ

The engine coolant level is too low or there is a coolant system malfunction.

— **Stop!** Pull off the road and stop as soon as you can do so safely.

— Check the engine coolant level after the engine has cooled down and add engine coolant if low → page 251, *Engine coolant*.

— If the engine coolant level is correct but the warning light does not go out **OR** if the needle goes into the red warning zone Ⓒ, **do not drive any farther!** Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage. ◁

Service reminder display

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 15.

Fig. 14 In the instrument cluster display: Example of the service reminder when a service is due.

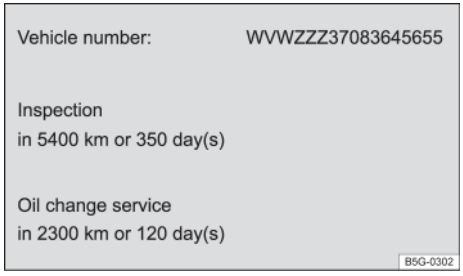


Fig. 15 In the Infotainment system display: Example of the service reminder.

The maintenance service reminder is shown in the instrument cluster display → fig. 14 and in the Infotainment system → fig. 15. Versions and displays can vary depending on the instrument cluster or the Infotainment system version equipped with the vehicle.

For information on maintenance intervals, please see the → *Warranty and Maintenance*.

For vehicles with **time- or distance driven-dependent service**, only fixed service intervals are displayed.

Service reminder

If service is due in the near future, a **service reminder** is displayed when the ignition is switched on.

The number of miles (km) and amount of time shown correspond to the maximum number of miles (km) or maximum time that can still be driven before the next service.

5GM012723ST

Service event

For a **scheduled oil service** or a **scheduled inspection** there is an audible chime when the ignition is switched on. The wrench symbol also appears for several seconds in the instrument cluster display along with one of the following messages → fig. 14:

Oil service now!
Inspection now!
Oil service and inspection now!

Viewing service message

You can view service information → fig. 15 in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

The current service message can also be accessed in the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on and the vehicle is stopped:

— Press and hold the 0.0 button in the instrument cluster → page 15 until the word **Service** appears in the display.

— Release the button. The current service message appears in the display for a few seconds.

Resetting the service reminder display

If the service was not performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, the service reminder can be reset as follows:

— Switch off the ignition.

— Press and hold the 0.0 button in the instrument cluster → page 15.

— Switch on the ignition.

— Release the 0.0 button.

— One after the other, the following messages appear in the display:

Reset oil change service?
Reset inspection interval?

— When you see the message for the interval you want to reset (either oil change or inspection), confirm the request by pressing the 0.0 button in the instrument cluster. A confirmation message appears in the display when the service reminder has been reset.

Do **not** reset the service reminder between service intervals; otherwise, incorrect information will be displayed. ◁

Using the instrument cluster menus

Introduction

The number of menus and information in the instrument cluster display depends on the electronics and equipment on the vehicle.

An authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility may be able to add or modify functions depending on your vehicle's equipment.

As long as a priority 1 warning message is displayed, no menus can be accessed. To display menus, acknowledge the warning by pressing the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel → fig. 16.

WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never access menus when the vehicle is moving.

Emergency starting and starting the engine with a very weak vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge. ◁

Operation with the multi-function steering wheel

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 24.

Fig. 16 Right side of the multi-function steering wheel: Controls for the menus and information in the instrument cluster display.

Accessing the instrument cluster menus and information displays

- Switch on the ignition.
- Driver personalization: Select user.
- If a message or the vehicle icon is displayed, push the OK button (→ fig. 16) on the right side of the multi-function steering wheel until a main menu appears in the instrument cluster display. For a list of main menus, see → page 18, *Instrument cluster menus*.
- Push buttons ◁ or ▷ to move to another main menu, and push the arrow up and down buttons △ and ▽ to navigate within the current main menu.

To open the menu or information display shown in the selection menu, press the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel or wait until the menu or information display opens automatically after a few seconds.

Selecting a setting

Use the arrow up and down buttons △ or ▽ on the multi-function steering wheel → fig. 16 to navigate through the available options. A frame may appear around the selected option. Push the OK button to select a setting.

Returning to the main menu

Press the ◁ or ▷ button → fig. 16.

VIEW button

- Press the VIEW button to switch between the current and previously selected menus.

If warning messages are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear differently. If this is the case, take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. ◁

Driver assistance systems button

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 24.

Fig. 17 On the multi-function steering wheel: Driver assistance systems button.

Your vehicle may have a driver assistance systems button on the multi-function steering wheel, which lets you switch some driver assistance systems on or off in the **Assist systems** menu → page 18, *Instrument cluster menus*.

Switching individual driver assistance systems on or off

- Press the button → fig. 17 Ⓐ to open the **Assist systems** menu.
- Using the arrow up and down buttons △ or ▽ on the multi-function steering wheel, select the driver assistance system (for example, Lane Assist, if equipped). A "check mark" indicates if the selected driver assistance system is switched on.
- Confirm the selection by pressing the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel.

You can also switch driver assistance systems on and off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment sys-

5GM012723ST

tem → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*. ◁

Infotainment system operation and displays

Introduction

General information on operating the unit

The following section contains information on the settings that can be adjusted in the **Vehicle settings** menu. You can find information on operating the Infotainment system as well as warning and safety instructions in a separate manual. See → *Infotainment System*.

Some Infotainment features can only be accessed and operated when the vehicle is standing still and the transmission selector lever is in Park **(P)**.

Vehicle settings and information

After pressing the CAR Infotainment button or the MENU Infotainment button followed by the Vehicle function key, you can tap the corresponding function key on the Infotainment screen to display information or adjust the following settings:

Selection (Vehicle information)

- **Sport** (Performance Monitor, if equipped) → page 27
- **Energy consumers** → page 18
- **Driving data** (Since start, extend. period, since refuel) → page 18
- **Think Blue. Trainer.** → page 135
- **Vehicle status** (Current warning and information messages) → page 19

Radio or **Media** (Radio station or media selection) → *Infotainment System*

Settings or **Setup** (depending on equipment) → page 26

WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never let yourself be distracted when setting, adjusting, or using the Infotainment system.
- Always drive attentively and responsibly. Use the Infotainment system only if road, traffic, and weather conditions permit and you will not be distracted from your driving.

Starting the engine with a very weak 12 Volt vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge. ◁

Vehicle settings menu

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 26.

Opening the Vehicle settings menu

— Switch on the ignition.

— If necessary, switch on the Infotainment system.

— Press the CAR Infotainment button.

— **OR:** Press the MENU Infotainment button followed by the Vehicle function key.

— Tap the ⚙ function key to open the **Vehicle settings** menu.

— Tap the corresponding function key to open additional menus in the **Vehicle settings** menu, or to adjust settings in the menu points.

If the box in the function key is checked ☑, the respective function is switched on.

Changes made in settings menus are automatically applied immediately after entry.

Tapping the ⮌ function key takes you back to the previous menu.

The possible menu items depend on the vehicle electronics and vehicle equipment. ◁

Performance Monitor sport gauges

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 26.

Fig. 18 In the Infotainment system: Performance Monitor sport gauges (if equipped). Gauges shown in the display may vary depending on configuration.

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Performance Monitor feature, which includes sport gauges and a lap timer/stopwatch in the Infotainment system.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following Performance Monitor sport gauges may be available:

- Boost pressure gauge fig. 18 ①
- Accelerometer (g-meter) fig. 18 ②
- Power display fig. 18 ③
- Engine oil temperature gauge
- Engine coolant temperature gauge

You can access the Performance Monitor sport gauges in the Infotainment system by pressing the MENU Infotainment button followed by the Vehicle, , and Sport function keys.

OR: When the vehicle is not moving, press the CAR Infotainment button until the Performance Monitor is displayed → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Tap the arrow buttons at either side of the screen to toggle between the Performance Monitor sport gauges and the lap timer/stopwatch → page 28, *Performance Monitor lap timer and stopwatch*.

Changing the gauges and units in the display

The display can show three Performance Monitor sport gauges at any given time. Swipe your finger up or down on a gauge to select a different one.

For some gauges, the units can be changed in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Boost pressure gauge

The boost pressure gauge → fig. 18 ① shows the pressure in the boost pressure duct between the turbocharger and the engine (shown in bar or psi, depending on the units selected). The farther right the needle points on the gauge, the higher the pressure in the boost pressure duct and the greater the output from the engine.

Accelerometer (g-meter)

The accelerometer, or g-meter → fig. 18 ②, shows the current vehicle acceleration in the center display (shown in g).

The red mark moves to different areas of the gauge as the direction of acceleration changes. If you turn left, the mark moves to the right of the gauge (and vice versa). The red mark also moves down when accelerating and up when braking. These values are combined in certain situations, for example, when making a right turn while accelerating, the red mark moves to the lower left area of the gauge.

The red mark also moves toward or away from the center of the gauge depending on the level of acceleration. The farther the red mark is from the center, the heavier the acceleration (greater g).

Power display

The power display → fig. 18 ③ shows the current engine power output on both a gauge and a digital display (shown in kilowatts).

5GM012723ST

Engine oil temperature gauge

If the needle in the engine oil temperature gauge is in the cold range, the engine has not reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads until the engine has reached operating temperature.

The engine has reached operating temperature when the needle moves into the center of the gauge under normal driving conditions. The needle may move farther to the right on the gauge with a heavier engine load at high outside temperatures. This is not a cause for concern as long as the indicator light does not light up or flash in the instrument cluster See → page 246, *Engine oil*.

Engine coolant temperature gauge

If the needle in the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the cold range, the engine has not reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads until the engine has reached operating temperature.

Under normal driving conditions, the needle should be in the middle of the gauge. The temperature may go higher when the engine is working hard, especially in hot weather. This is not a cause for concern as long as the indicator light does not light up or flash in the instrument cluster. See → page 22, *Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge*.

WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never pay so much attention to the gauges in the Infotainment system that you fail to notice what is going on around you.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause skidding and loss of traction, especially on slippery roads, resulting in a loss of vehicle control, collisions, and serious personal injury.

NOTICE

To help prevent engine damage, always avoid high engine speeds, full throttle acceleration and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold.

Because conditions used to determine vehicle performance may vary, the displayed values may not always be exact. ◁

Performance Monitor lap timer and stopwatch

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice on page 26.

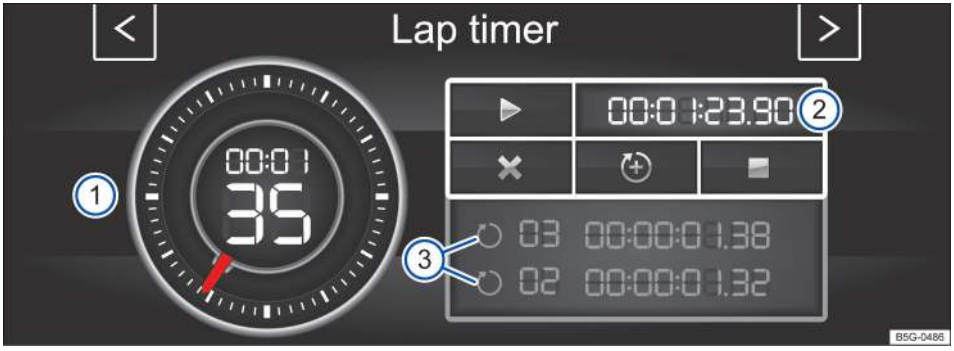


Fig. 19 In the Infotainment system: Performance Monitor lap timer/stopwatch.

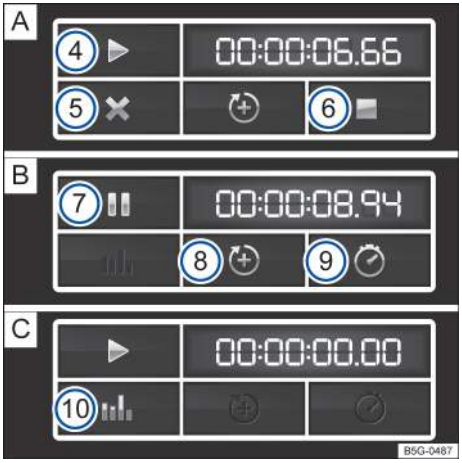


Fig. 20 In the Infotainment system: Buttons for operating the Performance Monitor lap timer/stopwatch. The buttons displayed vary depending on the current lap timer/stopwatch activity.

You can access the lap timer/stopwatch in the Infotainment system by pressing the MENU Infotainment button followed by the Vehicle, , and Sport function keys.

OR: When the vehicle is not moving, press the CAR Infotainment button until the Performance Monitor lap timer/stopwatch is displayed → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Tap the arrow buttons at either side of the screen to toggle between the Performance Monitor sport gauges → page 27, *Performance Monitor sport gauges* and the lap timer/stopwatch.

Key to fig. 19 and fig. 20:

1. Stopwatch display
2. Digital split time display
3. Display of recent split times
4. Play button to start timing
5. Button to cancel the current lap
6. Stop button to end timing
7. Pause button to pause timing
8. Button to start a new lap
9. Button to show intermediate time in the stopwatch display
10. Button to show statistics

Operating the stopwatch and lap timer

The stopwatch has two different measuring functions. The stopwatch in the outer ring of the display (with timer needle) → fig. 19 (1) can measure up to 60 seconds. The digital display in the center of the stopwatch shows the elapsed hours, minutes, and seconds. The seconds appear as large numbers.

The digital display on the right side → fig. 19 (2) shows the current lap split time in 1/100 second intervals. If the lap timer is not being used to track split times, both digital displays show the same time.

Function	Action → fig. 19 and → fig. 20
Start or resume timing:	Tap the play button A (4). If you tap the play button when the vehicle is not moving, a confirmation message appears in the display. Tap Start to begin timing immediately. Otherwise, the timer starts automatically as soon as the vehicle moves forward. If laps have already been completed and are recorded in the statistics, timing will resume on the current lap. A new first lap can only be started if the statistics are reset in the statistics area. Tap the statistics button C (10) to see lap statistics and reset the lap timer, if necessary.
Pause timing:	Tap the pause button B (7).
End timing:	After tapping the pause button B (7) to pause timing, tap the stop button A (6) to end timing.
Start a new lap:	Tap button B (8). Timing of the current lap is interrupted and a new lap begins. The time of the completed lap is carried over to the statistics.
Cancel the current lap:	After tapping the pause button B (7) to pause timing, tap button A (5). Timing of the active lap ends and the lap time is deleted. It is entered in the statistics as --:--:--.--.

5GM012723ST

Function	Action → fig. 19 and → fig. 20
Show the intermediate time in the stopwatch display:	Tap button B (9). The intermediate time (the moment the button is pressed) is shown for a few seconds in the center of the stopwatch → fig. 19 (1). After the brief pause, the current time resumes in the center of the stopwatch.
Show lap statistics:	After tapping the stop button A (6) to stop timing, tap the statistics button C (10) to see lap statistics such as number of laps, total time, fastest lap number and time, slowest lap number and time, average time, and individual lap times. From this screen you can also reset stored lap times.
Reset lap timer and statistics:	Tap the Reset function key in the statistics area (not shown).

A maximum of 99 laps and a maximum total time of 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds can be recorded. If one of the two limits is reached, timing can only start again after tapping the **Reset** button in the statistics area.

For vehicles equipped with a lap timer in the instrument cluster display, see → page 20, *Lap timer*.

⚠ WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never set the lap timer when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause skidding and loss of traction, especially on slippery roads, resulting in a loss of vehicle control, collisions, and serious personal injury.

- Only use the lap timer or fast acceleration if speed limits, visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions permit and other drivers will not be endangered by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.

NOTICE

To help prevent engine damage, always avoid high engine speeds, full throttle acceleration, and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold. ◁

Driver personalization

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 26.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a personalization feature that saves certain vehicle settings for different user profiles, for example, some climate control, instrument cluster, or vehicle lighting settings. There are four user profiles, which the vehicle can identify by the key that is used to unlock the vehicle. Each vehicle key is assigned to a user profile.

Changes to the settings are applied to the active user profile and are saved after the vehicle is locked or when the user profile is changed.

Identifying and selecting the user profile

When personalization is active, the name of the current user profile appears in the instrument cluster display for about 10 seconds after switching on the ignition.

During this time, you can select a user profile using the △ and ▽ buttons on the multi-function steering wheel → page 25, *Operation with the multi-function steering wheel*.

The saved vehicle settings will be activated after selecting the user profile.

Managing user profiles and applying settings

You can manage user profiles and select settings via the Infotainment system in the **Personalization** menu when the ignition is switched on.

— Press the CAR Infotainment button.

— **OR:** Press the MENU Infotainment button followed by the Vehicle function key.

— Tap the function key and select **Personalization**. Then select the desired user profile.

If the box in the function key is checked ☑, the feature is switched on.

Switching user profiles

You can select the user profile either in the **Personalization** menu or in the **Vehicle status** menu in the Infotainment system.

Manually assigning a vehicle key to a user profile

By selecting **Manual** key assignment, you can assign a vehicle key to the user profile that is currently active.

— Tap the ⚙ function key and select **Personalization**.

— Under **Settings**, select **Manual** key assignment.

— Tap the Assign key to current account function key.

— When the confirmation message appears, tap Assign.

— Press the 🔓 button on the remote control vehicle key within about 5 seconds → page 86, *Remote control vehicle key functions*.

Automatically assigning a vehicle key to a user profile

— Select **Automatic** key assignment.

— *Vehicles without Keyless Access:* When the user profile is switched, the new user profile is automatically assigned to the vehicle key used to unlock the vehicle.

— *Vehicles with Keyless Access:* When the user profile is switched, the new user profile is automatically assigned to the vehicle key detected when the driver door is opened.

Personalizing vehicle settings

The following settings can be personalized, depending on vehicle equipment:

— Opening and closing (single door opening, convenience opening, etc.).

— Vehicle lighting (3-blink turn signal (convenience indicating), etc.).

— Climate control system (temperature settings, ventilation, etc.).

— Driver assistance systems (PDC, ACC, etc.).

— Driving mode selection (active driving mode, custom settings, etc.).

— MFD and instrument cluster (display selection).

— Infotainment system (display brightness and station sorting).

A new vehicle key is assigned to the current user profile if automatic key assignment is selected. To assign the vehicle key to a different user profile, select the desired user profile and assign it to the vehicle key manually. ◁

5GM012723ST

Safety

General information

Getting ready and driving safely

Observe the following points before and during every drive for your own safety, the safety of all passengers and others → ⚠:

- ✓ Check proper function of lights and turn signals.
- ✓ Check tire pressure → page 260, *Tires and wheels* and fuel level → page 222, *Refueling*.
- ✓ Make sure that all windows are clean.
- ✓ Check the windshield washer fluid level → page 245, *Windshield washer fluid*.
- ✓ Make sure that the engine is not covered by blankets or other materials and that the engine air intake is not blocked.
- ✓ Store items and all luggage safely in the storage compartments, in the luggage compartment and, where applicable, on the roof → page 196, *Storage areas*, → page 213, *Transporting*.
- ✓ Always make sure that nothing keeps the pedals from moving freely.
- ✓ Make sure that children are properly secured by a restraint system appropriate for their size and weight → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.
- ✓ Properly adjust front seats, all head restraints, and mirrors → page 33, *Sitting properly and safely*, → page 104, *Seats and head restraints*.
- ✓ Wear shoes that give your feet a good grip and feel for the pedals.
- ✓ Make sure that the floormat on the driver side is properly fastened and cannot interfere with the pedals.
- ✓ Assume a proper seating position before the vehicle starts to move and keep this position while driving. Make sure that all passengers do the same → page 33, *Sitting properly and safely*.
- ✓ Properly fasten your safety belt before driving the vehicle and wear your safety belt properly at all times while driving. Make sure that all passengers do the same → page 36, *Safety belts*.
- ✓ Only transport as many passengers as there are seats and safety belts available.
- ✓ Never drive if your driving ability has been impaired, for example, by medication, alcohol, or illegal drugs.
- ✓ Never let passengers or phone calls distract you while driving and never take your attention off the road while using vehicle software or adjusting vehicle equipment or accessories.
- ✓ Always adapt your speed and driving style to visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- ✓ Always obey traffic laws and speed limits.
- ✓ On long trips make frequent rest stops – at least once every 2 hours.
- ✓ Secure animals in the vehicle with a system that corresponds to their weight and size.

Driving in other countries checklist

Some countries have special safety standards and other requirements that your vehicle may not meet. Before taking your vehicle to another country, Volkswagen therefore recommends that you ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about the following issues with regard to the country to which you would like to travel:

- ✓ Should the vehicle be technically prepared for the trip abroad, such as masking or adjusting headlights?
- ✓ Are maintenance, repair facilities, necessary tools, and testing equipment as well as spare parts readily available for your vehicle?
- ✓ Are there authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities in the countries where you will be driving?
- ✓ Is fuel with the appropriate rating for your vehicle's engine requirements readily available → page 221, *Fuel and emission control system*?
- ✓ Are engine oil (→ page 246, *Engine oil*) and other operating fluids that meet Volkswagen quality and performance requirements available where you will be driving? For more information, please see → *Warranty and Maintenance*.
- ✓ Does the factory-installed navigation system work in the countries where you will be driving, and is navigation data available?
- ✓ Are special or heavy-duty tires necessary for the kind of driving expected?

Refueling checklist

If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work. Make sure that you check the following items regularly. The best thing is to check them every time you refuel:

- ✓ Windshield washer fluid level → page 245, *Windshield washer fluid*
- ✓ Engine oil level → page 246, *Engine oil*

✓ Engine coolant level → page 251, *Engine coolant*

✓ Brake fluid level → page 255, *Brake fluid*

✓ Tire pressure → page 260, *Tires and wheels*

✓ Vehicle lighting necessary for driving safety → page 112, *Lights*:

— Turn signals

— Low beams and high beams

— Taillights

— Brake lights

— License plate lights

Information about replacing light bulbs → page 230, *Replacing light bulbs*.

⚠ WARNING

Driving under the influence of alcohol, illegal drugs, narcotics and some medications may cause collisions and other accidents, severe personal injuries and even death.

- Alcohol, illegal drugs, narcotics and some medications may severely affect perception, reaction times and safe driving, which may result in the loss of vehicle control.

⚠ WARNING

Always observe traffic rules and posted speed limits and use common sense. Your good judgment can mean the difference between arriving safely at your destination and being seriously injured in a crash or other kind of accident.

⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and injuries.

- Please note and follow the points listed in the checklist.

NOTICE

Volkswagen is not responsible for mechanical damage that may result from substandard fuel or service or the unavailability of Genuine Volkswagen parts.

Regular service and maintenance of your vehicle is important both for operational and driving safety and to help prolong your vehicle's service life. Always follow the scheduled maintenance intervals in the → *Warranty and Maintenance*, especially for changing the brake fluid. Hard use, frequent stop-and-go driving, driving in very dusty areas, and other factors may make it necessary to have the vehicle serviced more frequently. Ask an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for more information. ◁

Sitting properly and safely

Introduction

Number of seats

The vehicle has a total of **5** seating positions: 2 in front and 3 in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

⚠ WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries in a crash or other accidents, especially when the airbag deploys.

- All occupants must sit properly and be properly restrained at all times.
- Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are seating positions with safety belts available.
- Always secure children in the vehicle with an approved and suitable restraint system appropriate for their age, weight, and height → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.
- Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust seat, safety belts, and head restraints properly before driving and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.

- Push the passenger seat as far back as possible. Always be sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent. The distance to the instrument panel in the knee area must be at least 4 inches (10 cm).
- If these requirements cannot be met for physical reasons, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Fa-

5GM012723ST

cility to see whether adaptive equipment is available.

- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other places inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms, and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the driver's airbag to help protect you in a collision.
- Never drive with backrests reclined or tilted back farther than necessary to drive comfortably. The farther back the backrests are tilted, the greater the risk of injury caused by incorrect positioning of the safety belts and improper seating position.
- Never drive with the front seat passenger backrest tilted forward. If the front airbag deploys, the front backrest can be forced backward and injure passengers on the rear seat.
- Sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel and the instrument panel.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest with the front seats properly adjusted. Never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Rear seat passengers who are not properly seated and restrained are more likely to be seriously injured in a crash.

⚠ WARNING

Improper adjustment of the seats can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle. In addition, you will not be in the correct seating position while adjusting the seats.
- Adjust the front seat height, angle and longitudinal direction only if the seat adjustment area is clear.
- The adjustment of the front seats must not be restricted by things in the footwell in front or behind the seats.

⚠ WARNING

Some kinds of cigarette lighters can be lit unintentionally, or crushed causing a fire that can result in serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Always make sure that there are no lighters in the seat tracks or near other moving parts before adjusting the seats.
- Before closing a storage compartment, always make sure that no cigarette lighter can be activated, crushed, or otherwise damaged.
- Never leave a cigarette lighter in a storage compartment, on the instrument panel, or in other places in the vehicle. Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. High temperatures could cause the cigarette lighter to catch fire. ◁

Examples of improper seating positions

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 33.

Not wearing or improperly fastening safety belts increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Safety belts can work only when they are properly positioned on the body. An improper seating position significantly impairs the protection provided by safety belts. This can cause severe or even fatal injuries. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury or death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. The driver is responsible for all passengers and especially children riding in the vehicle.

The following are only some examples of seating positions that will increase the risk of serious injury or death.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

— Never stand up in the vehicle.
— Never stand on the seats.
— Never kneel on the seats.
— Never ride with the seat backrest reclined.
— Never lean up against the instrument panel.
— Never lie down on the rear seat.
— Never sit on the edge of the seat.
— Never sit sideways.

— Never lean out the window.
— Never put your feet out the window.
— Never put feet on the instrument panel.
— Never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat.
— Never ride in the footwell.
— Never sit or stand on an armrest.
— Never ride without your safety belt properly fastened.
— Never ride in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Contact with parts of the vehicle interior can cause serious personal injury in a crash.

- Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious and fatal injury, especially when an airbag deploys and strikes a passenger in an improper seating position.

◁

Proper seating position

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 33.

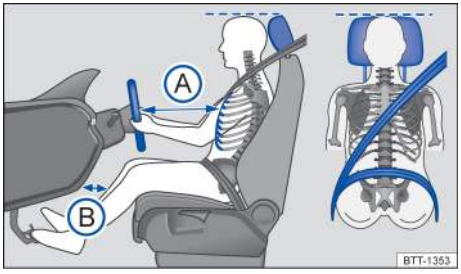


Fig. 21 Proper safety belt positioning and head restraint adjustment. The driver should never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel.

The following describes the proper seating positions for the driver and passengers.

If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary. Only the proper seating position ensures optimum protection by the safety belt and airbag.

Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987 for information about possible modifications to your vehicle.

For your own safety and to reduce injuries in the event of sudden braking maneuvers or accidents, Volkswagen recommends the following seating positions:

Applies to all vehicle occupants:

— Adjust head restraints so that the upper edge of the head restraint is at least at eye level or higher. Position the back of your head as close as possible to the head restraint → fig. 21 (dotted line).
— Push the head restraint completely down for short people, even if the top of the head is then below the upper edge of the head restraint.
— Tall people should pull the head restraint all the way up.
— Adjust the seat backrest angle to an upright position so that your back is in full contact with it when the vehicle is moving.
— Always keep both feet on the floor and in the footwell whenever the vehicle is moving.
— Always adjust and fasten safety belts properly → page 36, *Safety belts*.

Driver - seat and steering wheel adjustment:

— Adjust the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone → fig. 21 Ⓐ, → page 103, *Steering wheel*. When adjusting the proper distance to the steering wheel, grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbows slightly bent.
— Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
— Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other places inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms, and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
— Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel cover points at your chest and not at your face. Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the driver's airbag to help protect you in a collision.
— Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while

keeping your knee(s) slightly bent. The distance to the instrument panel in the knee area must be at least 4 inches (10 cm) → fig. 21 Ⓑ.

— Adjust the seat height so that the top point of the steering wheel can be reached.

— Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

Passenger - front seat adjustment:

— Push the passenger seat as far back as possible in order to ensure optimum protection if the airbag is deployed. ◁

Safety belts

Introduction

Properly worn safety belts are the single most effective means of reducing the risk of serious injury and death in a collision or other accident.

Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.

Check the condition of all safety belts and buckles regularly.

If a safety belt shows damage to webbing, hardware, retractors, or buckles, have the safety belt replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing a safety belt or wearing an improperly positioned safety belt increases the risk of severe personal injury or death. Safety belts offer optimum protection only when they are used properly.

- Properly worn safety belts are the single most effective means of reducing the risk of serious injury and death in a collision or other accident. For this reason, always wear your safety belt properly and make sure all passengers wear their safety belts properly as well whenever the vehicle is moving.
- The driver must always make sure that every person in the vehicle is properly seated on a seat of his or her own, properly fastens the safety belts belonging to that seat before the vehicle starts to move, and keeps the belts properly fastened while riding in the vehicle. This applies even when just driving around town. Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.
- Always secure children in the vehicle with a restraint system appropriate for their age, weight and height → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.
- Always fasten safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
- Never attach the safety belt to the buckle of another seat. Attaching the safety belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- Never let any objects or liquids get into the safety belt latch and prevent it from working properly.
- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any single safety belt.
- Never let children or babies ride sitting on your lap, and never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eyeglasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Several layers of heavy clothing (such as a coat worn over a sports jacket) may interfere with proper positioning of the safety belt and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the correct use of some child restraint systems.
- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat backrest is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.

⚠ WARNING

Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.

- Never let safety belts become damaged by being caught in the door or seat hardware.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged safety belt hardware can break in an accident.
- Inspect belts regularly for damage. If webbing, hardware, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have the belts replaced immediately with the correct replacement belts approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle, model, and model year.

- Safety belts that were subject to stress in an accident and stretched must be replaced with a correct, new safety belt, preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Replacement after a crash may be necessary even if a safety belt shows no visible damage. Anchorages that have been loaded must also be inspected.
- Damaged safety belts must be replaced; they cannot be repaired.
- Never try to repair a damaged safety belt yourself. Never remove or modify the safety belts in any way.
- Have safety belts, hardware, retractors, and buckles replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work correctly and can impair the function of the inertia reel. ◁

Warning light

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 36.

Fig. 22 Warning light in the instrument cluster.

Driver and/or front passenger have not fastened their safety belts, if front passenger seat is occupied. Fasten safety belts.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

A warning chime also sounds.

The safety belt warning light comes on for 6 seconds when the ignition is switched on. A warning chime also sounds for up to 6 seconds if the driver's safety belt is not buckled. The chime stops sooner if the driver buckles his or her safety belt. The warning light and the chime go out when both driver and front passenger have buckled their safety belts.

If the driver and front seat passenger do not both fasten their safety belts within about 24 seconds after the chime stops and the vehicle is moving at a speed of more than about 15 mph (25 km/h), the chime will again sound for about 6 seconds, then go off for about 24 seconds, then sound again for about another 6 seconds. The same thing happens if one of the safety belts is fastened and then unfastened while the vehicle is moving. The safety belt warning light also flashes. The warning chime continues to sound at 24 second intervals for up to 2 minutes. No chime sounds at speeds of less than about 5 mph (8 km/h).

If the ignition is switched on, the safety belt warning light stays on until the driver and front passenger have both buckled their safety belts.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing a safety belt or wearing an improperly positioned safety belt increases the risk of severe personal injury or death. Safety belts offer optimum protection only when used correctly. ◁

Frontal collisions and laws of physics

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 36.

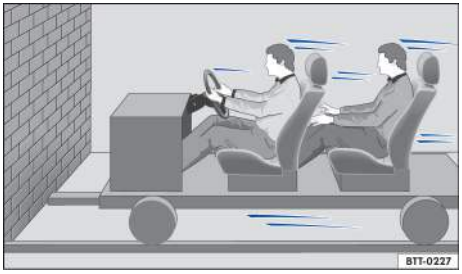


Fig. 23 A vehicle with passengers not wearing safety belts approaches a wall.

5GM012723ST

Fig. 24 A vehicle with passengers not wearing safety belts hits a wall.

The physical principles of a frontal collision are simple. Both the moving vehicle and the passenger possess energy → fig. 23, which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy "kinetic energy."

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy has to be "absorbed" in a crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If your speed doubles (for example, from 15 mph to 30 mph – 25 km/h to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the occupants of the vehicle in the above example are not using safety belts, they are not "attached" to the vehicle. In a frontal collision, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the inside of the passenger compartment. Because the occupants of the vehicle in the example are not wearing safety belts, their entire kinetic energy will be absorbed by impact with the wall → fig. 24.

The same principles apply to people in a vehicle that is in a frontal collision on the highway. Even at city speeds of 20–30 mph (30–50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

Of course, the laws of physics don't apply just to frontal collisions; they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions. ◁

What happens to passengers not wearing a safety belt

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 36.

Fig. 25 The unbelted driver is thrown forward.

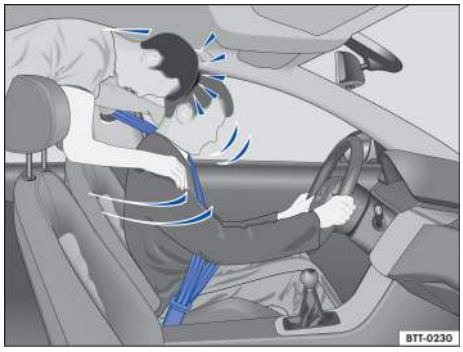


Fig. 26 Unbelted passengers in the rear seats are thrown forward on top of the belted driver.

Many people believe that it is possible to resist the forces of an impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. That is simply not true!

Even at low collision speeds, the forces acting on the body are too much for the body to be held in the seat with the arms and hands. In a frontal collision, unrestrained occupants will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield or anything else in the way → fig. 25.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Even if your vehicle is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash,

regardless of whether a seating position has an airbag or not.

An airbag will deploy only once. Safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle, causing even more severe injuries or death.

It is also important for occupants in the rear seats to wear their safety belts properly since they can be thrown violently forward through the vehicle in the event of an accident. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers in the vehicle → fig. 26. ◁

Safety belts protect

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 36.

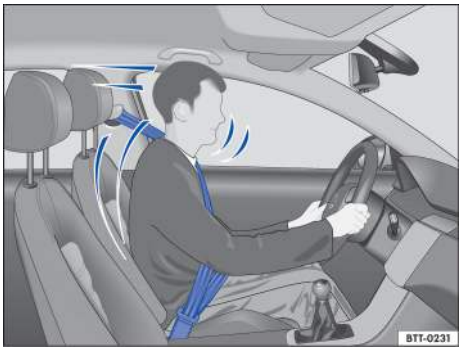


Fig. 27 Belted driver secured by the correctly worn safety belt in the event of a sudden braking maneuver.

Used properly, safety belts can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in a collision, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle → fig. 27.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or "softly" through the "give" in the safety belts, crumple zones, and other safety features (such as airbags) engineered into today's vehicles. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to absorb kinetic energy. By "absorbing" the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the forces on the body become more "tolerable" and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or "just going to the corner store," always buckle up and make sure that others do, too.

Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving a collision. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is required by law in most countries including the United States and Canada.

Although your Volkswagen is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in rollovers, or in cases when the conditions for deployment stored in the electronic control unit are not met. The same goes for the other airbag systems on your Volkswagen.

So always wear your safety belt and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained! ◁

Using safety belts

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 36.

Checklist

Using safety belts → ⚠

- ✓ Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.
- ✓ Check the condition of all safety belts and buckles regularly.
- ✓ Keep safety belts clean.
- ✓ Keep objects and liquids away from safety belt webbing, the safety belt buckle tongue, and the safety belt buckle latch and opening.
- ✓ Do not pinch or damage the safety belt or buckle tongue (for instance, when closing a door).
- ✓ Never modify, disassemble or try to repair safety belts and safety belt anchorages.

5GM012723ST

✓ Always fasten your safety belt properly before driving and keep it fastened whenever the vehicle is moving.

Twisted safety belt

If it is difficult to pull the safety belt out of the belt guide, the belt may be twisted inside the side trim because the belt retracted too quickly when it was taken off.

— Hold the safety belt tongue, slowly and carefully pull safety belt all the way out.

— Untwist the safety belt and slowly return the belt by hand.

If you cannot untwist the safety belt, wear it anyway. Make sure that the safety belt is twisted in a spot where it does not come in direct contact with your body. Have the safety belt untwisted immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Lockable safety belt

The retractors for the rear seat safety belts and the front passenger safety belt have a switchable locking feature for child restraints in addition to the emergency locking feature. Whenever a child restraint is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that the safety belt webbing cannot unreel. The switchable locking feature lets you lock the belt so that a child restraint can be properly installed and, for example, so that it can't tip to the side when the vehicle goes around a corner → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.

To see that a safety belt is lockable, pull the safety belt *all the way* out of the safety belt retractor. You should then hear a "clicking" sound as the belt winds back into the retractor reel. Test the switchable locking feature by pulling on the belt. When the switchable locking feature is active, you should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor.

The locking feature must be deactivated when a vehicle occupant uses the safety belt.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use and care of safety belts increases the risk of severe personal injury or death.

- Regularly check safety belts and related parts for damage.
- Damaged safety belts must be replaced; they cannot be repaired.
- Always keep safety belts clean.
- Never catch, damage or chafe safety belt webbing on sharp edges.
- Always keep objects and liquids away from the belt buckle and buckle opening. ◁

Fastening and unfastening safety belts

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 36.

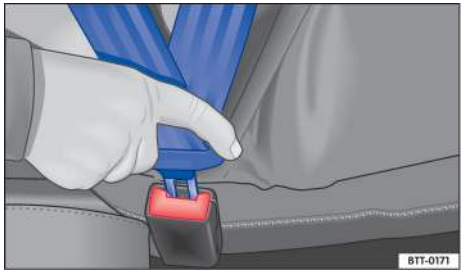


Fig. 28 Inserting the buckle tongue into the belt buckle.

Fig. 29 Releasing the buckle tongue from the belt buckle.

Properly worn safety belts help to hold occupants in their seats and provide optimum protection during braking or in a collision or other accident → ⚠.

The switchable locking feature makes a "clicking" sound when the safety belt is winding back onto the safety belt retractor wheel after being pulled *all the way* out. Whenever a child restraint is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that the safety belt webbing cannot unreel → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*. If active, deactivate the locking feature before using the safety belt to restrain a person without a child restraint system.

Fastening safety belts

Always buckle your safety belt before driving.

— Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly → page 104, *Seats and head restraints*.

— Make sure the seat backrest of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the safety belt → ⚠.

— Hold the safety belt by the tongue and pull it slowly and evenly across the chest and pelvis. Do **not** twist the safety belt webbing → ⚠.

— Insert the tongue into the correct buckle for your seat until you hear it latch securely → fig. 28.

— Pull on the safety belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

Unfastening safety belts

Unfasten safety belts only when the vehicle is not moving → ⚠.

— Press the red button on the buckle → fig. 29. The buckle tongue is ejected.

— Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position to help prevent the safety belt from twisting and to help avoid damage to the interior trim.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat backrest is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.
- A person who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself if it slips from the stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.
- Unfastening safety belts while the vehicle is in motion can cause severe personal injury or death in the event of an accident or braking maneuver!

◁

Safety belt position

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 36.

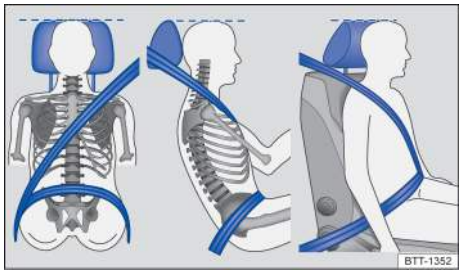


Fig. 30 Proper safety belt positioning and head restraint adjustment.

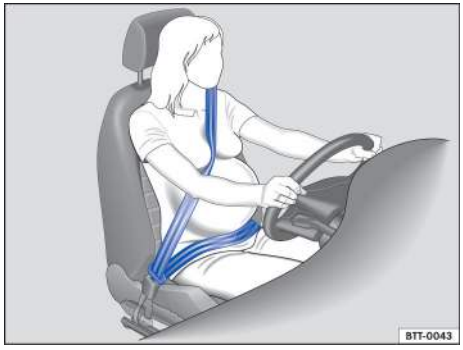


Fig. 31 Proper safety belt positioning for expectant mothers.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. A properly worn safety belt also helps to position the occupant so that an airbag can provide maximum protection when deployed. Therefore, always fasten your safety belt and make sure that it is properly positioned over your body.

Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and even increase the risk of injury or death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of severe injury or death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not seated properly → page 33, *Sitting properly and safely*.

Proper safety belt position

— The shoulder portion of the safety belt must always run over the center of the shoulder and nev-

5GM012723ST

er over the throat, over the arm, under the arm or behind the back.

— The lap portion of the safety belt must always run as low as possible over the pelvis and never over the abdomen.

— Always wear the safety belt flat and snug against the body. Pull on the safety belt to tighten if necessary.

Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen – throughout the pregnancy. The safety belt must lie flat against the body to avoid pressure against the abdomen → fig. 31.

Adjusting safety belt height

The safety belt position can be adjusted using the following features:

— Safety belt height adjusters for the front seats.

— Front seats with height adjustment.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident or a sudden braking maneuver.

- Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat backrest is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.
- A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable soft tissue and cause serious injury.
- The shoulder belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned over the middle of the occupant's shoulder and never across the neck or throat.
- The safety belt must lie flat and snug on the occupant's upper body.
- Never wear the shoulder part of the safety belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- The lap portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug against the pelvis. Pull on the safety belt to tighten if necessary.
- Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
- Do not twist the belt when attaching it. If you cannot untwist a twisted safety belt, wear it anyway, but make sure the twisted part is not in contact with your body. Have the problem corrected right away by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never hold the safety belt away from your body with your hand.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects, such as eyeglasses, pens or keys.
- Never modify the position of the belt using comfort clips, loops or similar devices.

If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the seat with the safety belt properly fastened, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987 for information about possible modifications to your vehicle. ◁

Safety belt height adjusters

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 36.

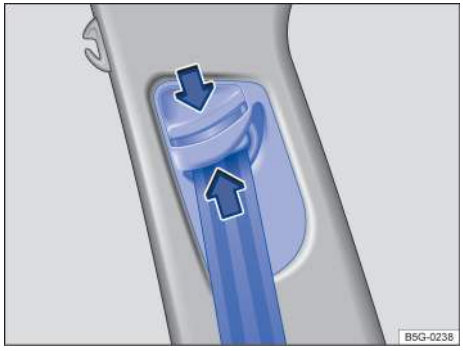


Fig. 32 Next to the front seats: Safety belt height adjuster.

Safety belt height adjusters for the front seats can be used to adjust the height of the shoulder portion of the safety belt so that it is positioned correctly:

— Pinch the safety belt attachment together as indicated by the arrows and hold → fig. 32.

— Slide the belt and upper attachment up or down until the safety belt is positioned over the center of the shoulder → page 41, *Safety belt position*.

— Release the safety belt attachment.

— Pull on the safety belt to make sure that the upper attachment is securely locked in place.

WARNING

Never adjust the height of the safety belt while driving.

Safety belt retractor, pretensioner, load limiter

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice on page 36.

The safety belts in the vehicle are part of the vehicle's safety concept → page 50, *Safety equipment* and consist of the following important features:

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic safety belt retractor on the shoulder belt. As long as the safety belt is pulled out slowly, the shoulder belt will extend to let you move freely under normal driving conditions. The automatic safety belt retractor locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in a collision. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve.

Safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt retractors for the driver and front seat passenger have a pretensioner that helps take the slack out of the safety belt and tighten it when the pretensioner is activated.

The pretensioners are activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system in front, side, and rear collisions, and in rollovers. By tightening the safety belt, the pretensioner helps to reduce the occupant's forward movement. The belt pretensioner works together with the airbag system; its function is monitored by the airbag system indicator light.

A fine dust may be released upon activation. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.

Safety belt load limiter

The front and rear outboard safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

Heed all safety regulations if the vehicle or individual components of the system have to be scrapped. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility are familiar with these regulations → page 43, *Service and disposal of belt pretensioners*.

Service and disposal of belt pretensioners

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice on page 36.

The pretensioners are part of the safety belts installed at the front seats in your vehicle. Installing, removing, servicing, or repairing of safety belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision. The pretensioners themselves may then also not work in the event of an accident, or not work properly.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment. Undeployed safety belt pretensioners and airbag modules contain explosive materials that can cause serious injuries to the general public and to people who work at dealerships and workshops, scrap yards, and recycling facilities. For this reason, the systems must be properly handled when they or the vehicles they are installed in are scrapped.

Undeployed safety belt pretensioners and airbag modules can also pollute the environment. Never abandon vehicles or vehicle parts. If your vehicle must be scrapped, please make sure that it is done safely, responsibly, and in compliance with all applicable environmental regulations. Take it to a licensed facility that has the knowledge and experience to properly dispose of the vehicle and its safety belt system. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility are familiar with these regulations.

WARNING

Improper handling, care, servicing, and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a belt pretensioner from activating when needed or by causing it to activate unexpectedly.

- The pretensioner can be activated only once. If a pretensioner has been activated, the safety belt must be replaced.
- Safety belt systems including the pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required to remove, install, and dispose of this system.

- Never repair, adjust, or change pretensioners or any other part of the safety belt system yourself. We strongly recommend that you have any work on the safety belt system performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. They have the necessary technical information, training, and special equipment → page 316, *Parts, accessories, repairs, and modifications*.

⚠ WARNING

Undeployed safety belt pretensioners and airbag modules contain explosive materials that can cause serious personal injuries if they are not properly handled when they or the vehicles they are installed in are scrapped.

- Never abandon vehicles or vehicle parts.
- Always scrap vehicles and vehicle parts, especially those containing undeployed airbag modules and undeployed safety belt pretensioners, at a licensed facility that has the knowledge and experience to properly dispose of the vehicle and its safety belt and airbag systems.

Undeployed airbag modules and safety belt pretensioners are classified as **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – see http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of the vehicle or parts of its restraint system, including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you. ◁

Airbag system

Introduction

Your vehicle is equipped with a front airbag for the driver and front seat passenger. The front airbags can provide additional protection for the chest and head of the driver and the front seat passenger when seats, safety belts, head restraints and, for the driver, the steering wheel, are properly used and have been properly adjusted. Airbags are only supplemental restraints. They are not a substitute for safety belts that must be worn even though the front seating positions are equipped with front airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbags work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts → page 36, *Safety belts*.
- The driver must always make sure that every person in the vehicle is properly seated on a seat of his or her own, properly fastens the safety belts belonging to that seat before the vehicle starts to move, and keeps the belts properly fastened while riding in the vehicle. This applies even when just driving around town. Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit upright more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel and with your back against the backrest, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly. See → page 36, *Safety belts*.
- An infant in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle.
- Never put your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the head, legs and hips if the airbag inflates.

⚠ WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is moving.
- Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuvers and fly dangerously through the passenger compartment when an airbag inflates.
- Always make sure that the airbag deployment zones are clear at all times. Never let any thing or object, a pet, or a person, including an infant or small child, be in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag at any time.

⚠ WARNING

An airbag works only once. Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Deployed airbags and the related system parts must be replaced immediately with new parts approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle model and model year.
- Have repairs and vehicle modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities have the required tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information, and trained personnel to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.
- Never modify any components of the airbag system.

⚠ WARNING

Fine dust released when airbags deploy can irritate the skin, eyes, and mucous membranes as well as cause breathing problems for people who suffer from asthma or other respiratory conditions.

- To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes or into any cuts, scratches, or open wounds.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

⚠ WARNING

Using solvents or other improper cleaning products on surfaces where airbags are located can change the way airbags deploy in a crash.

- Products containing solvents will change the properties of the plastics and may cause plastic parts to break and fly around when the airbag deploys in a crash, causing injury.
- Never use solvents or cleaners on the steering wheel horn pad or on the instrument panel because they can damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- When cleaning the horn pad and instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or a cloth moistened with plain water. ◁

Advanced Airbag System, infants, child restraints, and children on the front seat

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 44.

Be sure to read the important information and the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been certified for “suppression” for infants of about 12 months old and younger and for “low risk deployment” for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the front passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child restraint. It is a very

5GM012723ST

dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

⚠ DANGER

The front seat of any vehicle can be a dangerous place for a child - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- If the front airbag inflates, a child or infant who
  - — is unrestrained on the front seat,
  - — is in an improperly installed forward-facing child restraint on the front seat, or
  - — is in any rearward-facing child restraint on the front seat will be seriously injured and can be killed.
- Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- Always properly install rearward-facing child restraints or infant carriers and forward-facing child restraints on the rear seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

◁

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 44.

The Advanced Airbag System as well as the side airbags and Side Curtain Protection® airbags with ejection mitigation features (including the electronic control unit, sensors and system wiring) are all monitored continuously to make sure that they are functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The airbag system must be inspected if the airbag indicator light

- — does not light up when the ignition is switched on,
- — does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition,
- — goes out and then lights up again or blinks after the ignition is switched on,
- — or if it lights up or blinks while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the airbag indicator light comes on and stays on to alert the driver to the problem. It also reminds you to have the airbag system checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light → page 47, *PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light* will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

⚠ WARNING

An airbag system and safety belt pretensioner that are not working properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

◁

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 44.

Fig. 33 In the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light.

On	Location	Possible cause	Solution
	Instrument cluster	Airbag and safety belt pretensioner system malfunction.	See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility immediately to have the system checked.
OFF	Instrument panel → fig. 33	Airbag system malfunction.	See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility immediately to have the system checked.
		Front passenger airbag turned off by Advanced Airbag System.	Check if the airbag must stay turned off.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light → fig. 33 will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light burns out, the airbag indicator light → page 46, *Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System* will come on and signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out light will not change the way the front airbag on the passenger side works, it will no longer be possible to use the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will blink for about 5 seconds when:

- the ignition is switched on **and**
- the capacitive passenger detection system, which switches the front seat passenger's front Advanced Airbag on and off, detects a change in the status of the front passenger seat.

After the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is proper for the size, age, and weight (electrical capacitance) of the occupant on the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will show the status of the front seat passenger's front Advanced Airbag System a few seconds after the ignition has been switched on and the airbag monitoring light goes off. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light:

5GM012723ST

— will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied;

— will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about 1 year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*;

— will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and...

— a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or

— a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or

— a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,

— and if the electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front passenger airbag will not deploy, and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will stay on.

Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat. The safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is on the rear seat → page 44, *Airbag system*, and → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on...

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so **AND**

— reactivate the airbag system by turning the ignition off for more than 4 seconds and then turning it on again;

— remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed around or through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;

— make sure that the switchable locking feature on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight;

— make sure that no electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, or electronic games device) is placed or used on the front passenger seat;

— make sure that no seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat;

— make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed;

— make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on...

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on), take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light should NOT come on...

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on under these circumstances, make sure that:

— the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined;

— the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing;

— there are no aftermarket seat covers or cushions or other things (such as blankets) on the front passenger seat that might cause the capacitive passenger detection system to miscalculate electrical capacitance.

⚠ WARNING

If the status of the Advanced Airbag System has changed while the vehicle is moving, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above.

⚠ WARNING

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not go off when an adult who is not very small is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.

- Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

If the capacitive passenger detection system determines that the front passenger seat is empty, the front airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will stay on.

If the front passenger safety belt itself is buckled and the front passenger seat is not occupied, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will come on and stay on. ◁

Airbags and how they work

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 44.

Front airbags and how they work

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. They are not a substitute for safety belts that must be worn even though the front seating positions are equipped with front airbags. The front airbags can provide additional protection for the chest and head of the driver and the front seat passenger when seats, safety belts, head restraints and, for the driver, the steering wheel, are properly used and have been properly adjusted.

When the airbag system deploys in a collision, a gas generator fills the airbags that break open the padded covers on the steering wheel and the instrument panel. The front airbags inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger.

Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the vehicle interior, thereby reducing the forces acting on the occupants during a crash. In this way, they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body during a crash. Airbags do not provide protection for the arms and lower body parts. It is important to remember that the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries. However, it is possible that a deployed airbag may cause other injuries such as swelling, bruising, friction burns, and abrasions.

Airbags inflate in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

Airbags inflate with a great deal of force. Airbags can cause serious injuries when they inflate and hit those who are sitting too close, are out of position, or are not properly restrained. By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection during certain frontal collisions → page 36, *Safety belts*.

Make sure that nothing is in the way of the airbags when they deploy. For example, things on your lap or on the seat could be pushed into your body or fly dangerously through the passenger compartment when the airbag inflates and cause serious personal injury.

The areas outlined in red (dotted lines) → fig. 34 and → fig. 35 indicate the airbag deployment zone. Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, on the windshield, over or near the area marked in red (dotted lines).

Physical impairments and airbags

If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary. The safety belt and airbag can only provide optimum protection if you are seated correctly and can reach the pedals.

5GM012723ST

Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987 for information about possible modifications to your vehicle.

When airbags deploy

Deployment of the front airbags and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

The front airbags will not inflate in side or rear collisions, in rollovers or if the ignition is switched off. The front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the vehicle may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not. It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the vehicle hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. This dust could irritate skin and eyes and cause breathing problems for people with asthma or other respiratory conditions.

Always remember: Front airbags only supplement the 3 point safety belts in some frontal collisions only when the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags. Airbags only deploy once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. The safety belts are always there to offer protection in situations in which airbags should not deploy or when they have already deployed, for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after an initial collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always buckle up properly and wear your safety belts.

The airbags are part of the overall passive vehicle safety system. The airbag system works most efficiently when used with properly worn safety belts and a proper seating position → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 33.

Safety equipment

Your safety and the safety of your passengers shouldn't be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a number of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The following are just a few of the safety features for your Volkswagen:

- Sophisticated safety belts for all seating positions.
- Safety belt pretensioners for the driver and front passenger.
- Safety belt load limiters for the front and rear outboard seating positions.
- Safety belt height adjusters for the front seats.
- Safety belt warning light.
- Advanced front airbag system for the driver and front passenger.
- Sensors for the capacitive front seat passenger detection system.
- Side airbags for the driver and front passenger.
- Side Curtain Protection® airbags with ejection mitigation features.
- Airbag indicator light .
- PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light.
- Electronic control unit and associated sensors.
- Head restraints with height adjustment optimized for rear-end collisions.
- Adjustable steering column.
- LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages for child restraints at the rear outboard seating positions.
- Top tether anchorages for child restraints at all rear seating positions.

These individual safety features can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of collisions. These features can't work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and properly used!

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together...

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the front passenger front airbag will be turned off if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system on the front passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front airbag on the passenger side will also be turned off if the capaci-

tance measured by the system for the front passenger seat equals that of an infant of about 1 year of age in one of the child restraints that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off → page 47, *PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbags work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts → page 36, *Safety belts*.
- The driver must always make sure that every person in the vehicle is properly seated on a seat of his or her own, properly fastens the safety belts belonging to that seat before the vehicle starts to move, and keeps the belts properly fastened while riding in the vehicle. This applies even when just driving around town. Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit less than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit upright more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways, or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You can also be seriously injured and even be killed if you are sitting too close to the airbag when it inflates.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
- An infant in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when the airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle.
- Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never put your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat.
- Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the head, legs and hips if the airbag inflates.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is moving.
- Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors or attach them to the doors; never place them over or near the area marked AIRBAG on the steering wheel, instrument panel, or seat backrests or between those areas and someone in the vehicle. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially if an airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.
- Never place or transport objects on the front passenger seat. Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive sensor in the seat to signal to the airbag system that the seat is occupied by a person when it in fact is not, or that the person on the seat is heavier than he or she actually is. The change in electric capacitance because of such objects can cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or can cause the airbag to work in a way

5GM012723ST

that is different from the way it would have worked without objects on the seat.

- Always make sure that the status signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is correct for the way that the front passenger seat is being used.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with asthma or other breathing conditions.

- To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts, scratches, or open wounds.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on, take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seating positions.
- Always make sure that the child restraint is correctly registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag on your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle. ◁

The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 44.

The airbag on the front passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride, even if the vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System. The front seat is a very dangerous place for an infant or small child in a rearward facing child restraint. The front seat is also not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child restraint. All children, especially 12 years and younger, must always ride on the back seat and be properly restrained for their age and size.

During a frontal collision, a child restraint or infant carrier on the front seat could be hit and knocked out of position by the inflating front passenger airbag. The airbag could significantly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure a child while deploying.

Because of this danger, and because children are generally better protected on the rear seat when properly restrained for their age and size, we strongly urge you to always make sure that children ride on the rear seat → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*, and → page 44, *Airbag system*.

DANGER

A front seat passenger, especially an infant or small child, will be seriously injured and can even be killed if too close to the airbag when it deploys – even an Advanced Airbag.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

- Although the Advanced Airbag System has been designed to switch off when an infant or small child is on the front passenger seat in a child restraint that was used during the certification process for the Advanced Airbag System, no one can guarantee with absolute certainty that the airbag will never deploy under these particular conditions in all conceivable situations for the duration of your vehicle's use.
- The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the "low risk" option for 3 to 6 year-old children under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child with electrical capacitance greater than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant restrained in one of the forward facing or rearward-facing child restraints with which your vehicle was certified is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, must always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- When installing a child restraint, always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.

⚠ DANGER

Children on the front seat of any vehicle, even one with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.

- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and the child against the seat backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- If you have, in exceptional circumstances, nevertheless decided to install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on, immediately install the rearward-facing seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the following special precautions must be taken for the safety and well-being of the child:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing child restraint has been designed and certified for use on a front passenger seat with a front airbag and a side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided for the child restraint or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law. For example, the use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing is in the way that prevents the front passenger seat from being moved all the way back to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  - Never place additional items on the seat that can influence the electrical capacitance

5GM012723ST

measured by the capacitive passenger detection system.

— Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

— If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child restraint in a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

- Always buckle the child restraint firmly in place even when no child is sitting in it. A loose child restraint can fly around the vehicle during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in the vehicle: → page 36, *Safety belts*, → page 44, *Airbag system*, and → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*. ◁

Front airbags

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 44.

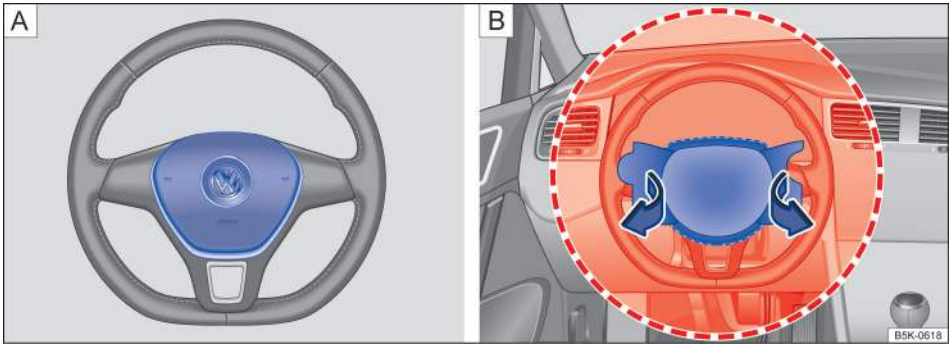


Fig. 34 Location and deployment zone of the driver front airbag.

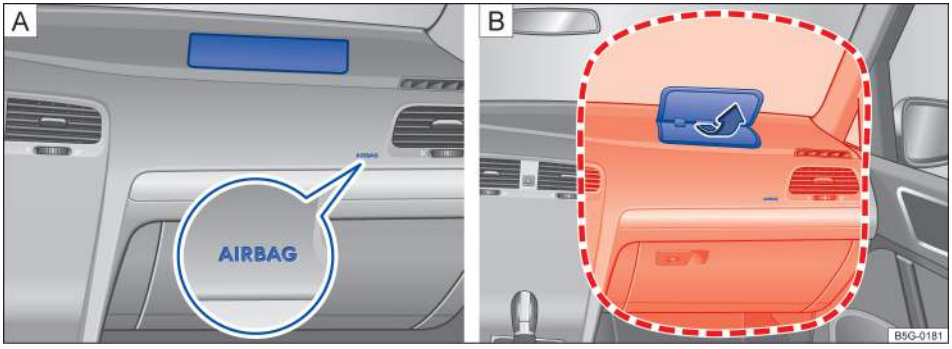


Fig. 35 Location and deployment zone of the front passenger front airbag.

The vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System in compliance with the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 or the Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub → fig. 34 A and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel → fig. 35 A. The general location of the airbags is marked "AIRBAG."

The safety belts for the front seating positions have safety belt pretensioners which help take up slack in the belts. The airbag control unit also activates the belt pretensioners → page 43, *Safety belt retractor, pretensioner, load limiter*.

The safety belts for the front and rear outboard seating positions also have belt load limiters to reduce the forces acting on a body during an accident.

The areas marked in red (dotted lines) → fig. 34 B and → fig. 35 B indicate the airbag deployment zone. Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, on the windshield, over or near the area marked in red (dotted lines).

Front airbags will not deploy:

— if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,

— in side collisions,

— in rear-end collisions,

— in rollovers,

— when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger front airbag will also not deploy:

— when the front passenger seat is not occupied,

— when the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat indicates that the passenger side front airbag must be switched off by the electronic control unit (the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on → page 47, *PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*).

⚠ DANGER

Children on the front seat of any vehicle, even one with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.

- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and the child against the seat backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- If you have, in exceptional circumstances, nevertheless decided to install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on, immediately install the rearward-facing seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ DANGER

A front seat passenger, especially an infant or small child, will be seriously injured and can even be killed if too close to the airbag when it deploys – even an Advanced Airbag.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.
- An Advanced Airbag System can deploy with the "low risk" option for 3 to 6 year-old children when a child who is heavier than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old child plus child restraint is secured on the passenger seat in a forward-facing or rear-facing child restraint that was used to certify your vehicle, and when the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- For their own safety, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always sit on the back seat, properly restrained for their age and size.
- When installing a child restraint, always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- If the airbag indicator light goes on while driving, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or author-

5GM012723ST

ized Volkswagen Service Facility. A lit indicator light means the airbags may not work properly if activated in a crash.

- Always make sure that the status signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is correct for the way that the front passenger seat is being used.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is moving.
- Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, notepads, navigation systems, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors or attach them to the doors; never place them over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the steering wheel, instrument panel, or seat backrests, or between those areas and someone in the vehicle → fig. 34 and → fig. 35. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially if an airbag inflates.
- Never attach accessories to the windshield above the passenger front airbag, such as GPS navigation units or music players. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially if an airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of an object could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
- Always make sure that nothing is on the front passenger seat when the backrest is folded forward.
- Always make sure that the status signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is correct for the way that the front passenger seat is being used.

WARNING

Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms, and head if the driver's airbag inflates.

- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with asthma or other breathing conditions.

- To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts, scratches, or open wounds.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag on your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Undeployed airbag modules and safety belt pretensioners are classified as **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – see http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding handling

and disposal of the vehicle or parts of its restraint system, including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you. ◁

Advanced Airbag System components

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 44.

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it → page 49, *Airbags and how they work*. These parts include the capacitive passenger detection system, wiring, brackets, and more. The control unit monitors the system in the front passenger seat when the ignition is switched on and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the one of the system components is detected → page 46, *Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag System for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System also includes:

— Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.

— An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit "decides" whether to fire just the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also "decides" whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.

— An Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.

— An Advanced Airbag with gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.

— A capacitive passenger detection system underneath the front passenger seat cover. This system measures the electrical capacitance of the person in the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.

— An airbag system indicator light in the instrument cluster → page 46, *Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

— The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light in the center of the instrument panel that tells you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off → page 47, *PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*.

— A switch in the safety belt buckle for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

⚠ WARNING

An airbag system and safety belt pretensioner that are not working properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the airbag system. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen. Have them installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.

- Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
- Repairs to the front passenger seat should be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never remove the front passenger seat or driver seat from the vehicle.
- Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.

5GM012723ST

- Never disassemble or take parts off the seat or disconnect wires from it.
- Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or put them on the seat. If the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat is punctured it cannot work properly.
- Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the front passenger seat. Such objects can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit. These things can also cause serious personal injury if the airbag inflates.
- Never store items under the front seats. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the front seats could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
- Never put seat covers or replacement upholstery on the front seats that have not been approved by Volkswagen for your specific vehicle.
- Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
- Never use cushions, pillows, blankets, or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional layers prevent the capacitive passenger detection system from accurately measuring the capacitance of the child safety seat and/or the person on the seat and thus keep the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, or electronic games device) on the front passenger seat. Such devices can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something similar to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the child the restraint at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

WARNING

If the front passenger seat gets wet, dry it immediately.

- If liquid soaks into the front passenger seat, this can keep the airbag system from working properly and may, for instance, deactivate the passenger front airbag. If this happens, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will come on and stay on together with the airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster.
- If liquid is pooled on the seat, but has not soaked in, this may also keep the airbag system from working properly and cause the front passenger front airbag to be enabled (turned on), even though there is a properly installed child restraint system on the seat. Wet towels or other wet things on the seat cushion can have the same effect. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light goes out when the front passenger's front airbag is active.

NOTICE

- To help prevent damage to electrical and other parts in the seat, do not kneel on the front seats or apply concentrated pressure to a small area of the seat or backrest.
- Never install leather upholstery on a vehicle that originally had cloth upholstery. Never install cloth upholstery on a vehicle that originally had leather upholstery. The capacitive passenger detection system for the Advanced Airbag system will not work properly if different upholstery is installed on the passenger seat than the upholstery originally installed on the vehicle when it was originally manufactured. ◁

How to tell if the front passenger front airbag is on or off

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice on page 44.

Passenger front airbag

Regardless of safety belt use, the airbag in front of the front passenger seat will be switched off if the electrical capacitance measured on this seat is less than the value programmed in the electronic control unit.

The front airbag on the passenger side of the front seat will also be turned off if the electrical capaci-

tance measured on the seat (by the capacitive passenger detection system) is less than or equal to the combined capacitance of:

— a typical 1 year-old infant and

— any of the child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 for which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is certified.

For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with U.S. Safety Standard 208, see → page 67, *Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System*. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.

Passenger front airbag active

— Switch on the ignition.

— The capacitive passenger detection system measures the electrical capacitance of the front passenger seat. If that capacitance is above the reference value, the passenger front airbag will be switched on by the Advanced Airbag control unit.

— If the ignition is on, and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light in the instrument panel *does not* come on, the passenger front airbag is generally active. If the OFF light has burned out (see below), you will be unable to tell whether the passenger front airbag is active or not.

Using child restraints on the front passenger seat

The airbag on the front passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. Because of this danger, and because children are generally better protected on the rear seat when properly restrained for their age and size, we strongly advise that you always place children on the rear seat → page 52, *The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat*. For a list of the child restraints used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of FMVSS 208, see → page 67, *Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System*.

For more information, see → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*; note → ⚠ below!

How do I know when the passenger front airbag has been turned off by the control unit?

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light in the instrument panel will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. **Unless** the yellow OFF light comes on and stays on, the passenger front airbag is still active → page 47, *PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*.

For safety reasons, you must never use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat **unless** the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light **comes on and stays on**, perhaps in combination with the indicator light in the instrument cluster. If the passenger front airbag deployed in an accident, it would severely injure and possibly kill the child in the restraint system. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light burns out, the airbag indicator light will come on and signal a malfunction of the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out light will not change the way the front airbag on the passenger side works, it will no longer be possible to use the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ DANGER

A front seat passenger, especially an infant or small child, will be seriously injured and can even be killed if sitting too close to the airbag when it deploys.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and the child against the seat backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, must always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- When installing a child restraint, always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.

5GM012723ST

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on. Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the seating positions on the rear seat if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

- If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something similar to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
- Otherwise, install the child restraint system on the rear seat!

WARNING

Changes in the electrical capacitance of the passenger seat while driving can switch the passenger front airbag on or off so that it does not deploy when it should or deploys when it should not, resulting in an increased risk of serious personal injury.

- Do not carry anything on your lap or transport things on the passenger seat. Things on the passenger seat can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, sending the wrong information to the airbag control unit. These objects can also cause serious personal injury if the airbag inflates.
- Always make sure that a child restraint has been correctly registered by the capacitive passenger detection system. If the status of the Advanced Airbag System changes while the vehicle is moving, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the passenger riding on the front passenger seat. ◁

Side airbags

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 44.

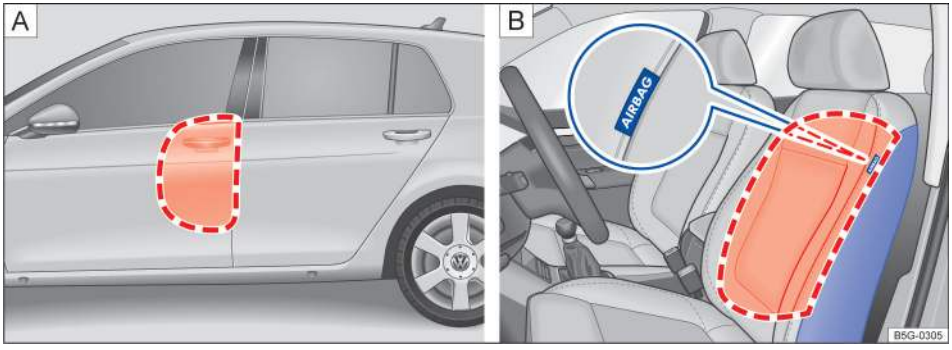


Fig. 36 On the driver side. A: Location and deployment zone of the side airbags. B: Location and deployment zone of the side airbags in the padding on the outboard side of the front seat backrests.

The side airbags are in the backrest padding of the driver and front passenger seats → fig. 36. The general location is shown by the word “AIRBAG.” The area marked in red (dotted lines) indicates the deployment zone of the side airbags.

In a side collision, the side airbag in the seat backrest can deploy on the side of the vehicle that is struck and help reduce the risk of injury to the driver or the front seat passenger.

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly.

The side airbag for the front passenger seat can be used with properly installed child restraints. Always read and heed all important information and WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in the vehicle: → page 36, *Safety belts*, → page 44, *Airbag system*, → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*, and → ⚠ in *The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat* on page 52.

The side airbag system includes:

— An electronic control module and side impact sensors.

— Side airbags in the front seat backrests.

— An airbag system indicator light in the instrument cluster → page 46, *Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

When a side airbag deploys in a collision, a gas generator fills the side airbag between the vehicle occupant and the door. The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the occupant's upper torso.

In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates. This applies especially to children → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make sure it is working properly at all times. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle → page 33, *Sitting properly and safely*, → page 36, *Safety belts*.

It is important to remember that the side airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injury. However, it is also important to remember that a deploying airbag may also cause other injuries, such as swelling, bruising, friction burns, and abrasions. Also remember that side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents. After the side airbag inflates, the system must be replaced. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which side airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not inflate:

— if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,

— in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,

— in front-end collisions,

— in rear-end collisions,

— in rollovers, unless the deployment threshold for deployment stored in the control unit is met.

In some types of accidents, the front airbags, Side Curtain Protection® airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

⚠ WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or even fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- To help reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates,
  - Always sit in an upright position and do not lean against the area where the side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly.
  - Never let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand out of the window.
- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in a collision by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors or over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the seat backrests → fig. 36.
- Accessories or other objects can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause serious injury if the supplemental side airbag inflates.
- Never position or hold any objects or pets in the area where an airbag inflates or allow any children or other passengers to ride in that space.
- Never use the built-in coat hooks for anything but lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. Such ob-

5GM012723ST

jects may interfere with side airbag deployment and cause serious personal injury in a collision.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use, repair, or disassembly of the driver and front passenger seats can prevent side airbags from working properly and result in severe injuries.

- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - — Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seat backrests that have not been specifically approved by Volkswagen. Otherwise, the side airbag may not be able to deploy properly.
  - — Never put seat cushions, blankets, or other coverings over the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - — Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects hitting the sides of the seat backrests or force being put on the seat backs, especially in the area where the side airbag module is located.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced.
- Always have work involving the side airbag system, including removal, replacement, and installation of airbag components, or other repairs performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise, the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or modify parts of the front seats.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
- If too much force is exerted on the seat backrest bolsters, the side airbags may deploy improperly, not at all, or when they should not. ◁

Side Curtain Protection® airbags

🕮 **Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 44.**

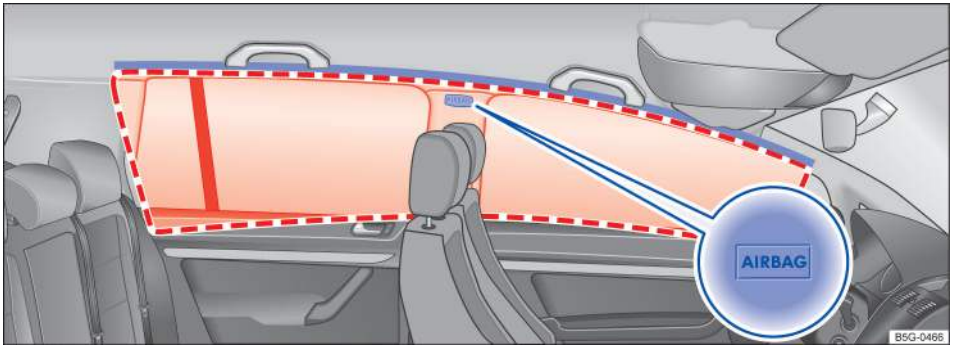


Fig. 37 On the left vehicle side: Installation location and deployment zone of the Side Curtain Protection airbag.

The Side Curtain Protection® airbags are in the header area on both sides of the vehicle → fig. 37. The general location is identified by the word "AIRBAG." The red lines show the deployment zone of the Side Curtain Protection® airbags. The Side Curtain Protection® airbags contain features that provide ejection mitigation to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle interior in certain side impacts and vehicle rollovers.

The Side Curtain Protection® airbag system includes:

- — An electronic control module and side impact sensors.
- — The Side Curtain Protection® airbags above the front and rear side windows.
- — An airbag system indicator light in the instrument cluster → page 46, *Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The Side Curtain Protection® airbags inflate downwards between the occupant and the side window on that side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collisions → fig. 37. The Side Curtain Protection® airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for the occupant's head and upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The Side Curtain Protection® airbags also contain features to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle interior in certain vehicle rollovers.

In order to help provide this additional protection, the Side Curtain Protection® airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The Side Curtain Protection® airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental Side Curtain Protection® airbag inflates. This applies especially to children → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make sure it is working properly at all times. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle → page 33, *Sitting properly and safely*, → page 36, *Safety belts*.

It is important to remember that the Side Curtain Protection® airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injury. However, it is possible that a deployed Side Curtain Protection® airbag may cause other injuries such as swelling, bruising, friction burns, and abrasions. Remember too, Side Curtain Protection® airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents. Side Curtain Protection® airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which Side Curtain Protection® airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The Side Curtain Protection® airbag will not inflate:

— if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,

— in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,

— in front-end collisions,

— in rear-end collisions,

— in rollovers, unless the deployment threshold for deployment stored in the control unit is met.

In some types of accidents, the front, Side Curtain Protection® and side airbags may be triggered together.

⚠ WARNING

An inflating Side Curtain Protection® airbag can cause serious or even fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- A deploying airbag inflates within a fraction of a second with a lot of force and at very high speed.
- Always make sure that the Side Curtain Protection® airbag can inflate without interference.
- Always sit in proper seating position and wear safety belts while traveling so that the Side Curtain Protection® airbags can help provide protection.
- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area where the Side Curtain Protection® airbag inflates.
- Always keep the area where the Side Curtain Protection® airbag inflates clear. Never carry any objects or pets in the area between them and where the airbags inflate and never let children or other passengers ride in this area.
- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Never use the built-in coat hooks for anything but lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.
- Only use factory-installed sunshades or, if shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Volkswagen sunshades.
- Never swing the sun visors over to the side windows if things such as pens, garage door openers, hands-free speakers, etc. are attached to the sun visors. They could come loose and cause serious injury if the Side Curtain Protection® airbag inflates.

⚠ WARNING

The airbag system can only be triggered once.

- If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always have work involving the curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by your

5GM012723ST

authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.

- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
- Never attach objects to the cover or in the deployment zone of a Side Curtain Protection® airbag.
- Always make sure that the airbag deployment zones are clear at all times. Never let anything or object, a pet, or a person, including an infant or small child, be in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors. ◁

Child safety and child restraints

Introduction

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a collision or other accident also apply to children → page 36, *Safety belts*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in accidents than are adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they must use restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20–35 mph (30–56 km/h), the forces acting on a 13 pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the effective weight of the child would suddenly increase to more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

All children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings in the section of this Manual that begins on → page 71, *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*. Infants and other children who are properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint that is for their size and age can benefit from the protection that supplemental side airbags provide in some kinds of crashes.

For more information, please see information provided by the:

— National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), currently at: http://www.safercar.gov (for the USA)

— Transport Canada Information Centre, currently at: http://www.tc.gc.ca (for Canada)

Consult the child restraint manufacturer's instructions to be sure the seat is right for your child's size → page 71, *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this Manual.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this Manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

⚠ DANGER

Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.

- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
- If you have, in exceptional circumstances, nevertheless decided to install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not

come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on, immediately install the rearward-facing child restraint on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected right away by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

WARNING

Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child restraint or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law. For example, the use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing is in the way that prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, or electronic games device). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  - If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  - Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  - Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
  - If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always buckle the child restraint firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child restraint can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See → page 36, *Safety belts*, → page 44, *Airbag sys-*

5GM012723ST

tem, and → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation. ◁

Child restraints – Overview

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⚠ on page 64.

All children and especially infants must be properly restrained in a child restraint appropriate for their size and age whenever riding in a vehicle. Their safety also requires that the child restraint be properly installed. There are many car seat choices on the market. You can use the information below to help you choose a car seat that best meets your child's needs.

Type of child restraint	Applies to
Rear-facing child restraint	**Birth to 12 months:** Your child under age 1 should always ride in a rear-facing car seat. There are different types of rear-facing car seats: – Infant-only seats can only be used rear-facing. – Convertible and all-in-one car seats typically have higher height and weight limits for the rear-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rear-facing for a longer period of time.
Rear-facing child restraint before moving to a forward-facing child restraint	**1–3 years:** Keep your child rear-facing as long as possible. It's the best way to keep him or her safe. Your child should remain in a rear-facing car seat until he or she reaches the top height or weight limit allowed by the car seat's manufacturer. Once your child outgrows the rear-facing car seat, your child is ready to travel in a forward-facing car seat with a harness and tether.
Forward-facing child restraint	**4–7 years:** Keep your child in a forward-facing car seat with a harness and tether until he or she reaches the top height or weight limit allowed by the car seat's manufacturer. Once your child outgrows the forward-facing car seat with a harness, it's time to travel in a booster seat, but still in the back seat.
Booster seat	**7–12 years:** Keep your child in a booster seat until he or she is big enough to fit in a safety belt properly. For a safety belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie snugly across the shoulder and chest and not cross the neck or face. Remember: your child should still ride in the back seat because it's safer there.

Today's child restraints are designed to be secured to the vehicle either with the standard 3 point lap and shoulder belt or with the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages. Many child restraints also require the use of a top tether strap. Depending on your state or country, top tether straps may also be required by law. The top tether strap reduces the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, to help reduce the risk of head injury if the child hits the vehicle interior.

Your vehicle has the following installation options in the rear seats:

Child restraint installation	Rear seats
LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages	Anchorages available for the 2 outboard seating positions.
Top tether anchorages	✓
Safety belts with the switchable locking feature	✓

The LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorage attachment points are on the lower part of the rear seat backrest for the 2 outboard seating positions. The circular markings on the lower anchorage points

help you to locate the lower anchorages → page 80 , → fig. 44.

How to tell if the child restraint is properly installed

- The child restraint is flush with both the seat cushion and the seat backrest, unless a small gap between the child restraint and the seat backrest is allowed by the child restraint manufacturer.
- The child restraint does not hang over the edge of the vehicle seat by more than the generally accepted 20% of the child restraint. Always follow the overhang limits allowed by the child restraint manufacturer.
- The child restraint is centered in the seating position and is not installed at an angle.
- The child restraint does not move forward or sideways by more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).
- The child restraint does not contact or push against any of the safety belt buckles, because this can cause damage to the buckles and make the buckles unusable or unsafe.
- The child restraints do not interfere with each other and each remains fully functional and accessible to properly restrain and protect each child.
- The child restraint is installed with LATCH/UAS or the vehicle safety belt according to the weight limits stated on the child restraint and the child restraint's top tether is used as instructed by the child restraint manufacturer.

More information:

- Important safety instructions for using child restraints → page 69
- Using a child restraint on the rear seat → page 71
- Infant seats → page 72
- Convertible child restraints → page 74
- Booster seats and safety belts → page 76
- Installing child restraints with a safety belt → page 78

Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⚠ on page 64.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front "Advanced Airbag System" that complies with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and with Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low risk" requirements for 3 to 6 year-old children (as defined in the standard) on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur in these collisions, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag automatically for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child restraint. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

The vehicle's Advanced Airbag System has a capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat cushion that can detect the presence of a baby or a child in a child restraint system on this seat.

The capacitive passenger detection system measures the capacitance of the child and the child restraint and a child blanket on the front passenger seat. The capacitance due to the presence of a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket on the front passenger seat is related to the child restraint system resting on the seat. The capacitance of a child restraint system varies depending on the type of system and specific make and model.

The electrical capacitance of the various types, makes, and models of child restraints specified by

5GM012723ST

the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in the relevant safety standard are stored in the Advanced Airbag System control unit together with the capacitances typical of infants and a 1 year-old child. When a child restraint is used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system with the data stored in the electronic control unit.

Child restraints and Advanced Airbags

No matter what child restraint you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 (FMVSS 213) or, if you live in Canada, Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 (CMVSS 213). Also make sure that the child restraint you are using has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system inside the front passenger seat, that the passenger front airbag is switched off, and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different "footprints," the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for Advanced Airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific types, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A. Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B. Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century Smart Fit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013 PAW and base 22-999 WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C. Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler SafeSeat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. ◁

Important safety instructions for using child restraints

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⚠ on page 64.

Fig. 38 Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.

Proper use of child restraints greatly reduces the risk of injury in a collision or other kind of accident!

All children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

Always use the right child restraint for each child and always use it properly.

LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages secure the child restraint system in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation. If you decide to install a child restraint system using the standard safety belt instead of the LATCH/UAS anchorages for the respective seating position, be sure to always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child restraint and how to restrain the child in the child restraint.

When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child restraint, you must activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to help prevent the child restraint from moving → page 71, *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*.

Do not use the switchable locking feature when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.

Push the child restraint down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).

Important additional information about installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat:

If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings in the section of this Manual that begins on → page 71, *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*.

There are also additional adjustments that must be made in order to be able to properly install a child restraint on the front passenger seat:

Set the safety belt upper anchorage for the front passenger seat so that the available safety belt is long enough to properly install the child restraint. Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's installation instructions → ⚠.

Move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the seat's up and down adjustment range and to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint and make sure the backrest is in the upright position → ⚠.

Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

⚠ DANGER

Never install rearward-facing child restraints or infant carriers on the front passenger seat.

- A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints and infant carriers on the rear seat.

⚠ WARNING

Not using a child restraint, using the wrong child restraint, or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

5GM012723ST

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must always be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle.
  - An unrestrained or improperly restrained child can be injured or killed by being thrown against the inside of the vehicle or by being ejected from it during a sudden maneuver or impact.
  - An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is at much greater risk of injury or death by being struck by an inflating airbag.
- Commercially available child restraints are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard FMVSS 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  - When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  - Volkswagen does not recommend using child restraints that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
- Always check that the child restraint has been properly installed.
  - Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side.
  - Always make sure the child restraint does not hang over the edge of the vehicle seat by more than the generally accepted 20% of the child restraint. Always follow the overhang limits allowed by the child restraint manufacturer.
  - Always make sure that the child restraint is securely installed and cannot move forward or sideways more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).
  - Always make sure that the child restraint is not installed at an angle.
  - Always make sure that the child restraint does not contact or push against any safety belt buckles, because this can cause damage to the buckles and make the buckles unusable or unsafe.
  - Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child restraints and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
- For safety reasons, children under 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1.45 meters) may not wear standard safety belts. Children must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
- Never let more than one child occupy a child restraint.
- Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  - Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  - The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by another passenger.
  - The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child.

- Always install child restraints on the rear seat.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child restraint or carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law. For example, the use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possi-

ble before installing the forward-facing child restraint.

— Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.

— Always make sure that nothing is in the way that prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.

— Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.

— Never place additional items (such as laptop, CD player, or electronic games device) on the seat that can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system and can cause injury in a crash.

— If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.

— Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

- Always buckle the child restraint firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child restraint can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See → page 36, *Safety belts*, → page 44, *Airbag system*, and → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on, perform the checks described → page 47, *PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. ◁

Using a child restraint on the rear seat

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⚠ on page 64.

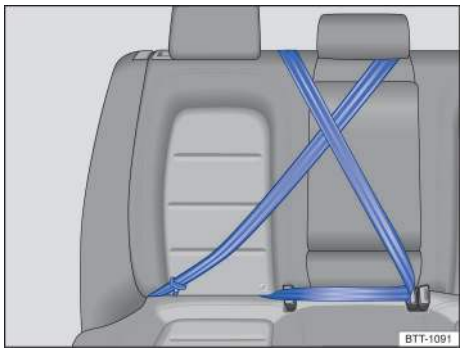


Fig. 39 Keep unused safety belts away from children in child restraints.

Important special steps when installing a child restraint with LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages or with the vehicle safety belt.

You must take special precautions when installing a LATCH/UAS child restraint behind the front passenger or driver seats. Always route the center safety belt and the unused safety belt for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed securely out of the child's reach. Securing the safety belts will help prevent a child from playing with an unused safety belt and becoming entangled with it → fig. 39.

Securing the unused safety belts out of the child's reach

Secure an unused safety belt to help prevent a child from playing with and becoming entangled in the safety belt. The method for securing an unused safety belt depends on the seating position.

Securing an unused safety belt for an outboard seating position:

— Route the safety belt around the head restraint for the center seating position → fig. 39.

— Make sure the safety belt is out of the child's reach, so that the child cannot grab and play with it.

— Make sure that the safety belt does not block the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages. This could prevent you from correctly installing a child restraint with the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages.

5GM012723ST

— Do **not** activate the switchable locking feature. Otherwise it will be very difficult to wind the safety belt back into its normal position. You should **not** hear a “clicking” sound when the safety belt retracts.

Securing an unused safety belt for the center seat:

— Buckle the safety belt → fig. 39.

— Pull the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt all the way out of the retractor to activate the switchable locking feature. You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the retractor.

— Let the safety belt fully retract and then pull on it to make sure the switchable locking feature is active and the safety belt is properly fastened and tight so that the child cannot grab and play with the safety belt.

When a child safety seat is secured on the rear bench, adjust the position of the front seat to provide the child with sufficient space. Therefore, adjust the front seat to the size of the child safety seat and the child. Consider the proper seating position of the passenger → ⚠.

When child restraints are not needed, be sure to remove the safety belt(s) from around the head restraint(s), unbuckle the center safety belt, and return all safety belts to their normal stored positions so that they will be available for regular use.

How to tell if the child restraint is properly installed

— The child restraint is flush with both the seat cushion and the seat backrest, unless a small gap between the child restraint and the seat backrest is allowed by the child restraint manufacturer.

— The child restraint does not hang over the edge of the vehicle seat by more than the generally accepted 20% of the child restraint. Always follow the overhang limits allowed by the child restraint manufacturer.

— The child restraint is centered in the seating position and is not installed at an angle.

— The child restraint does not move forward or sideways by more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).

— The child restraint does not contact or push against any of the safety belt buckles, because this can cause damage to the buckles and make the buckles unusable or unsafe.

— The child restraint is installed with LATCH/UAS or the vehicle safety belt according to the weight limits stated on the child restraint and the child restraint’s top tether is used as instructed by the child restraint manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of the reach of children in child restraints such as by properly routing them around the head restraint adjacent to the seating position where the child restraint is installed.

NOTICE

The outboard safety belts may become damaged if they are secured improperly.

- Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the unused safety belt around the head restraint adjacent to the seat where a child restraint has been installed. Otherwise it will be very difficult to wind the safety belt back into its normal position.
- Only pull the unused safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint. If the safety belt is pulled out too far, the switchable locking feature will be activated.
- When installing a child restraint, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child restraint and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated. ◁

Infant seats

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⚠ on page 64.

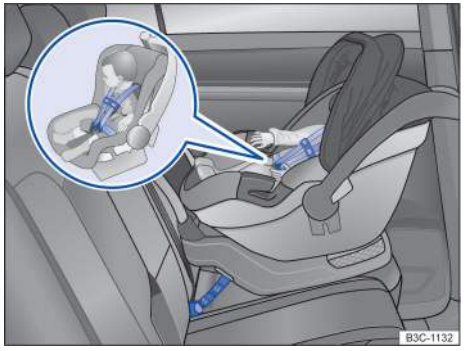


Fig. 40 Example of a rearward-facing infant seat properly installed on the rear seat.

The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recommends that all infants should ride in rear-facing car safety seats (in which the child faces the back of the vehicle) starting with their first ride home from the hospital. All infants and toddlers (generally up to age 3) should ride in a rear-facing car safety seat as long as possible – or until they reach the highest weight or height allowed by their child restraint's manufacturer. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a collision. Rear-facing child restraints can be used safely only on the rear seat of the vehicle → fig. 40.

Before installing a child restraint on the front passenger seat, be sure to follow the special instructions and heed the warnings → page 67, *Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System* and → page 52, *The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat*.

— When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child restraint (except a booster seat), you must activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to help prevent the child restraint from moving → page 71, *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*. Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint.

— Attach the Top Tether strap or straps to the tether anchorage for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed with either the LATCH/UAS system or with a safety belt → page 83, *Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap*.

— Follow the manufacturer's instructions for positioning the handle of the car seat when it is installed in the vehicle.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child restraint. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

You must take special precautions when installing a child restraint with the vehicle safety belt or with LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages behind the front passenger seat or behind the driver seat. Always route the center safety belt and the unused safety belt for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed securely out of the child's reach. Securing the safety belts will help prevent a child from playing with an unused safety belt and becoming entangled with it → page 71, *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*, → fig. 39.

DANGER

Not using a child restraint, using the wrong child restraint or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- Never install rearward-facing child restraints or infant carriers on the front passenger seat, even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child restraint and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints and infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rearward-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. These restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances, but the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child restraint at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected right away by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See → page 36, *Safety belts*, → page 44, *Airbag system*, and → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.

WARNING

A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of the reach of children in child restraints such as by properly routing them around the head restraint adjacent to the seating position where the child restraint is installed.

NOTICE

- Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the unused safety belt around the head restraint adjacent to the seat where a child restraint has been installed.

5GM012723ST

- Only pull the unused safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint.
- When installing a child restraint with a safety belt, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child restraint and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated.

Convertible child restraints

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⚠ on page 64.

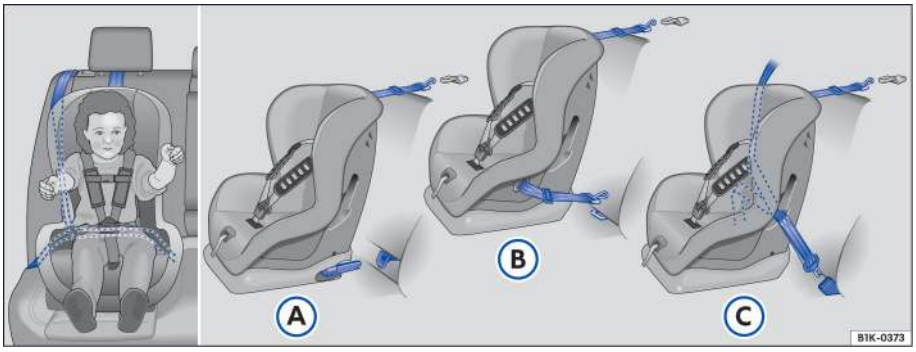


Fig. 41 All convertible child restraints have lower anchors and a top tether. Figures Ⓐ and Ⓑ show how to correctly install a LATCH/UAS seat. Figure Ⓒ shows the set up of a seat using the vehicle's safety belt system.

Children between 1 and about 7 years old must always be properly restrained in a child restraint certified for their size and weight → fig. 41.

Once your child outgrows the rear-facing car seat (generally up to age 3), your child is ready to travel in a forward-facing car seat with a harness. Keep your child in a forward-facing car seat with a harness until he or she reaches the top height or weight limit allowed by your car seat's manufacturer.

Before installing a child restraint on the front passenger seat, be sure to follow the special instructions and heed the warnings → page 67, *Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System* and → page 52, *The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat*.

— When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child restraint, you must activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to help prevent the child restraint from moving → page 71, *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*.

— Push the child restraint down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).

— Make sure that the child restraint is centered in the seating position and is not installed at an angle.

— The child restraint must not contact or push against any of the safety belt buckles, because this can cause damage to the buckles and make the buckles unusable or unsafe.

— Fasten the harness webbing that is part of the child restraint system securely and pull it tight so that you can only slip one finger underneath the shoulder belt portion at the child's chest.

— Attach the Top Tether strap to the tether anchorage for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed with either the LATCH/UAS system or the safety belt → page 83, *Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child restraint. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

You must take special precautions when installing a child restraint with the vehicle safety belt or with LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages behind the

front passenger seat or behind the driver seat. Always route the center safety belt and the unused safety belt for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed securely out of the child's reach. Securing the safety belts will help prevent a child from playing with an unused safety belt and becoming entangled with it → page 71, *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*, → fig. 39.

DANGER

Not using a child restraint, using the wrong child restraint or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances, but the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child restraint at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected right away by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See → page 36, *Safety belts*, → page 44, *Airbag system*, and → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.

WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Forward-facing child restraints installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child restraint or carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law. For example, the use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing is in the way that prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, or electronic games device). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  - If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.

5GM012723ST

— Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

— Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

— If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child restraint at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

- Always buckle the child restraint firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child restraint can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.

WARNING

A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of the reach of children in child restraints such as by properly routing them around the head restraint adjacent to the seating position where the child restraint is installed.

NOTICE

- Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the unused safety belt around the head restraint adjacent to the seat where a child restraint has been installed.
- Only pull the unused safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint.
- When installing a child restraint with a safety belt, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child restraint and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated. ◁

Booster seats and safety belts

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⚠ on page 64.

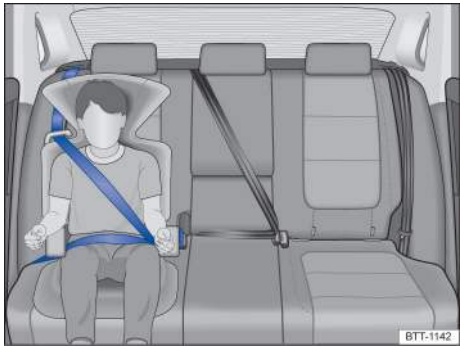


Fig. 42 Child properly restrained in a booster seat on the rear seat.

Children between about 8 to 12 years old are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1.45 meters) tall. Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the strong parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a collision.

— Do not use the switchable locking feature when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.

— Always position the shoulder portion of the safety belt midway over the child's shoulder. If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.

— Always make sure that the shoulder portion is snug across the shoulder and chest and never rests against or across the child's neck or face.

— Always make sure that the child can wear the lap belt portion across the upper thighs and never over the stomach or abdomen.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's 3 point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the

lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's 3 point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly across the upper thighs. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats and keep them in a booster seat until they are big enough to fit in a safety belt properly. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Keep your child in a booster seat until he or she is at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1.45 meters) tall AND your child is:

— tall enough to sit without slouching; and

— able to keep his or her back against the vehicle seat; and

— able to keep his or her knees naturally bent over the edge of the vehicle seat; and

— able to keep his or her feet flat on the floor; and

— able to sit in that position during the entire trip.

The way the safety belt passes over the child's body is important for their safety and protection in a crash. Always make sure you child can wear the safety belt properly:

— The lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the stomach.

— The shoulder belt must lie snugly across the shoulder and chest, and never cross the neck or face.

— Never let a child put the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back, because it could cause severe injuries in a crash.

Always check belt fit on the child in every vehicle. A booster seat may be needed in some vehicles and not in others. If the safety belt does not fit properly, the child must continue to use a booster seat. Regardless of whether the child is using a booster or is able to properly wear the standard safety belt properly without a booster seat, keep your child in the back seat. Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

Even Advanced Airbags can injure children when they inflate. A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injuries.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially children, who must be in the front seat under exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

You must take special precautions when installing a booster seat with the vehicle safety belt behind the front passenger seat or behind the driver seat. Always route and secure the unused center safety belt to help prevent a child from playing with the unused safety belt and becoming entangled in it → page 71, *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*, → fig. 39.

⚠ WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- Never use the switchable locking feature when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- Always make sure to position the shoulder portion of the 3 point belt over the middle of the child's shoulder.
- Never let the shoulder portion of the safety belt rest against or across the neck, face, chin, or throat of the child.
- Always make sure the lap belt portion of the 3 point belt is worn snugly across the upper thighs. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.
- Never let a child put the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back, because it could cause severe injuries in a crash.

5GM012723ST

- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in a collision or other emergency situation.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example, the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during a collision can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described → page 47, *PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the seating positions on the rear seat if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See → page 36, *Safety belts*, → page 44, *Airbag system*, and → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of the reach of children in child restraints such as by properly routing them around the head restraint adjacent to the seating position where the child restraint is installed.

◁

Installing child restraints with a safety belt

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⚠ on page 64.

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger seat must be locked with the switchable locking feature to properly secure child restraints.

Child restraints are designed to be secured to the vehicle either with the 3 point lap and shoulder belt or with LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages. The child restraint may also have a Top Tether strap, which must be used if required by the child restraint manufacturer or by law → page 83, *Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap*.

Regardless of the kind of child restraint that you use, always make sure that the child restraint is properly secured in the vehicle; otherwise the child could be seriously injured in a crash. Always follow legal requirements regarding the installation of child restraints.

Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on a rear seat → ⚠.

Switchable locking feature

Whenever a child restraint (except a booster seat) is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that the safety belt webbing cannot unreel → page 79, *Activating the switchable locking feature*. The switchable locking feature lets you lock the belt so that a child restraint can be properly installed and, for example, so that it cannot tip to the side when the vehicle goes around a corner.

Installing the child restraint on a rear seat

Always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle → ⚠.

— Make sure that the child restraint is centered in the seating position and is not installed at an angle.

— Make sure that the child restraint does not contact or push against any of the safety belt buckles, because this can cause damage to the buckles and make the buckles unusable or unsafe.

— Always make sure the child restraint does not hang over the edge of the vehicle seat by more than the generally accepted 20% of the child restraint. Always follow the overhang limits allowed by the child restraint manufacturer.

— Route the safety belt around or through the child restraint using the proper path for the safety belt as specified by the child restraint manufacturer.

— Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.

— Make sure that the red release button faces away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.

— Remove all slack from the lap belt portion of the safety belt and hold it tightly against the child restraint.

— Push the child restraint down with your full weight to make sure that the child restraint will be properly installed with the safety belt really tight.

— Activate the belt's switchable locking feature → page 79, *Activating the switchable locking feature*.

— Pull on the safety belt to make sure the safety belt is properly fastened and tight.

— Check the child restraint for proper installation by pulling on the child restraint at the place where the vehicle's safety belt goes into the child restraint. The child restraint should not move forward or sideways by more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).

Special instructions for installing child restraints if the child restraint must be installed on the front seat

Always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle → ⚠.

Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on a rear seat → ⚠. If in **exceptional circumstances** you must install the child restraint on the front seat, be sure to follow the special instructions and heed the WARNINGS below.

— Make sure the front seat backrest is in the upright position.

— Move the front passenger seat to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible.

— Set the front passenger's safety belt height adjuster so that available safety belt length is sufficient to properly install the child restraint.

— Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.

— Route the safety belt around or through the child restraint using the proper path for the safety belt as specified by the child restraint manufacturer.

— Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.

— Make sure that the red release button faces away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.

— Remove all slack from the lap belt portion of the safety belt and hold it tightly against the child restraint.

— Push the child restraint down with your full weight to make sure that the child restraint will be properly installed with the safety belt really tight.

— Activate the belt's switchable locking feature → page 79, *Activating the switchable locking feature*.

— Pull on the safety belt to make sure the safety belt is properly fastened and tight.

— Check the child restraint for proper installation by pulling on the child restraint at the place where the vehicle's safety belt goes into the child restraint. The child restraint should not move forward or sideways by more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).

— Make sure that the child restraint is centered on the seat and is not installed at an angle.

— After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat and that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light signals the correct front passenger front airbag status. Please be sure to read the additional important information and heed the WARNINGS about the Advanced Airbag System and the function of the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light in this Manual.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

Activating the switchable locking feature

— Slowly pull the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt **all the way** out of the retractor.

— While keeping your weight on the child restraint, guide the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and is tightened against the child restraint.

— You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel of the safety belt retractor. Test the switchable locking feature by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able

to pull the belt out of the retractor. The switchable locking feature is now active.

Deactivating the switchable locking feature

The switchable locking feature for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

— Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.

— Guide the safety belt back by hand so that it rolls easily onto the retractor and the trim around the retractor will not be damaged.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the switchable locking feature for child restraints.

If the switchable locking feature should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the switchable locking feature is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child restraint, except a booster seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child restraint in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child restraint firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child restraint can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seat backrest with the child restraint attached to it could fly forward in a collision or other emergency situation.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle → page 64, *Child safety and child restraints*. Special precautions apply when installing a child restraint on the front passenger seat → page 52, *The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat*, and → page 67, *Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System*, and → page 69, *Important safety instructions for using child restraints*.

WARNING

Improperly installed child restraints increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the switchable locking feature for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.

NOTICE

When installing a child restraint, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child restraint and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated. ◁

Securing the child restraint with LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⚠ on page 64.

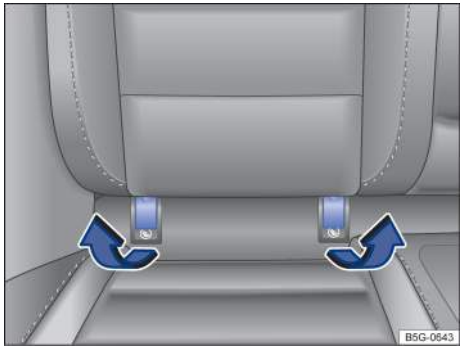


Fig. 43 On the rear outboard seat backrests: Removing the covers (if equipped) on the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages.

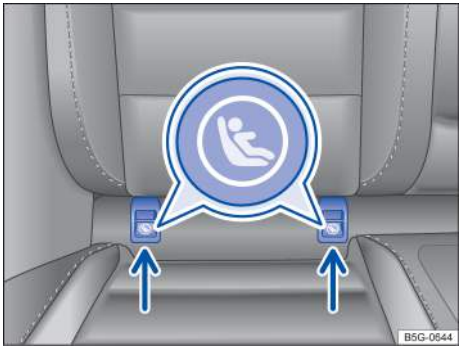


Fig. 44 On the rear outboard seat backrests: Markings on the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages.

LATCH is used in the United States and stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children. In Canada, UAS (Universal Anchorage System) is used to describe the combination of top tether straps and lower anchorages.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999 must have LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages.

The LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorage attachment points are on the lower part of the rear seat backrest for the 2 outboard seating positions. Each lower universal anchorage point may have a cover. The circular markings on the anchorage points help you to locate the lower anchorages → fig. 44 (arrows). If necessary, remove the covers → fig. 43 to access the lower anchorage points and stow the covers in a clean, secure location for future use.

LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages secure the child restraint system in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

Remember that the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with these lower universal anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorage attachments can still be installed with vehicle safety belts according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. You must never mount two child restraint systems to one LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorage point at the same time. For instance, you must not install a child restraint with LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorage points on one of the outboard seating positions and then use the inboard anchorage to also install a child restraint in the center of the rear seat that itself is not equipped with LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorage points.

The child restraint must not contact or push against any of the safety belt buckles to help prevent damage to the buckles, which can make the buckles unusable or unsafe.

There are 2 ways to attach an appropriate child restraint to the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages:

Rigid connectors on bars at the back of the child restraint:

— Make sure the seat backrest of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.

— Release or deploy the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer or by law) to secure the seat → page 83, *Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap*.

— Guide the upper tether strap under the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).

— Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.

— Attach the connectors onto the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages.

— Make sure you hear the child restraint click securely into place.

— Tighten the top tether strap (if there is one) to secure the seat → page 83, *Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap*.

— Pull on both sides of the child restraint once you've installed it to make certain it is secure and properly attached.

Releasing

— Release the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer or by law).

— Release the lower latch from the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Hooks attached to adjustable straps (hook-on connectors)

— Make sure the seat backrest of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.

— Attach the hook-on connectors with the spring catch release onto the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorage so that the connectors lock into place.

— Pull on the connector attachments to make sure that it is properly attached to the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorage.

— Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

— Release or deploy the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer or by law) to secure the seat → page 83, *Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap*.

— Guide the upper tether strap under the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).

— Guide the tether strap between the rear seat back and the luggage compartment cover.

— Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage and pull the top tether strap tight.

— After you have installed the child restraint, pull on both of the adjustable straps on the child restraint and pull also on the tether strap to make certain the seat is secure and properly attached.

Releasing

— Loosen the tension on the hook-on connector straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

— Release the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer or by law).

— Depress the spring catch on the hook.

— Hold the spring catch in the depressed position.

— Move the hook in the direction of the vehicle floor so that there is enough space to release the connector from the lower anchorage.

You must take special precautions when installing a child restraint with the vehicle safety belt or with LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages behind the front passenger seat or behind the driver seat. Always route the unused center seat safety belt and the unused safety belt for the seating position where the LATCH/UAS child restraint is being installed around the rear head restraint behind the child restraint to help prevent a child from playing with the unused belt and becoming entangled in it.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH/UAS system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

- Always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraints and proper use of tether straps as well as the LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH/UAS lower universal anchorage point.
- These anchors were developed only for child restraints using the LATCH/UAS system.
- Never attach other child restraints, belts, luggage or other things to the LATCH/UAS anchorages.
- Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click, the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle or be ejected from the vehicle.

NOTICE

A child restraint may damage the seat upholstery or the safety belt buckles if installed improperly or left on the seat when not in use.

- When installing, make sure that the child restraint does not contact or push against any of the safety belt buckles, because this can cause damage to the buckles and make the buckles unusable or unsafe.

Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints. Only pull the safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint. ◁

Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⚠ on page 64.

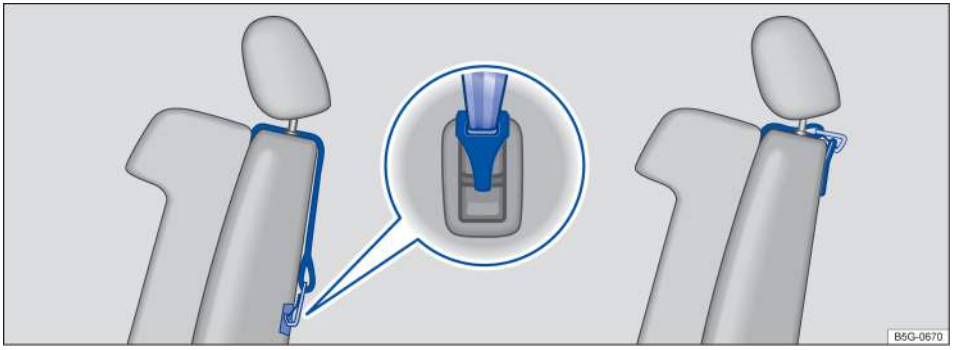


Fig. 45 Example of a mounted upper tether strap: The version on the left shows an outer seating position. The version on the right shows the center seating position.

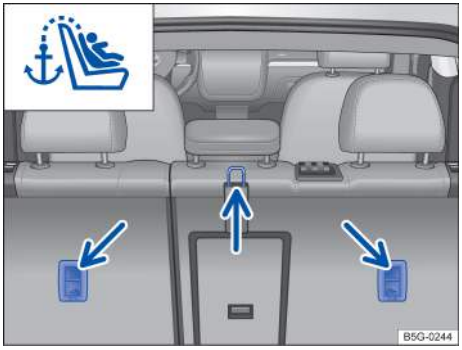


Fig. 46 Anchorages for the top tether strap on the back of the rear seat.

The Top Tether strap reduces the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash; this helps to reduce the risk of head injury.

Installing the Top Tether strap

— Release or deploy the Top Tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions → ⚠.

— Remove the luggage compartment cover, if necessary.

— Locate the tether anchor behind the rear seat backrest → fig. 46.

— Outer seating position: Guide the upper tether strap under the outer rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary). *For child restraints with V-tether straps:* Always make sure that the head restraint guide rods do not interfere with any part of the top tether strap.

— Center seating position: Guide the upper tether strap under the center rear head restraint only when it is pushed all the way up. If the tether strap hook is too big to pass under the center head restraint, push the head restraint all the way down and guide the strap over the center head restraint.

— Guide the tether strap between the rear seat backrest and the luggage compartment cover.

— Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage → fig. 46.

— Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook is engaged.

— Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

— Move the head restraint back into the original position, if necessary → page 104, *Seats and head restraints*.

Releasing the tether strap

— Loosen the tension on the tether strap following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

— Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

5GM012723ST

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint when installing it in your vehicle.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law. For example, the use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.
- Improper use of top tether straps and anchors can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never attach two child restraint systems to one top tether strap or top tether anchorage.
- Never attach a child restraint tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
- Never use child restraint top tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the Top Tether anchorages.

NOTICE

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats. ◁

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⚠ on page 64.

The following are some sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

Safety authorities advise that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

Transport Canada Information Centre

Tel.: 1-800-333-0371

Tel.: 1-613-998-8616 (Ottawa)

http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)

http://www.nhtsa.gov
http://www.safercar.gov
National SAFE KIDS Campaign

Tel.: 1-202-662-0600

http://www.safekids.org
SafetyBeltSafe U.S.A.

Tel.: 1-800-745-SAFE or 1-800-745-7233 (English)

Tel.: 1-800-747-SANO or 1-800-747-7266 (Spanish)

http://www.carseat.org
Volkswagen Customer CARE

Tel.: 1-800-822-8987 ◁

In an emergency

Introduction

WARNING

A vehicle breakdown in traffic is dangerous and creates a great risk for you, your passengers, and others.

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to park and, if necessary, lock all doors in an emergency. Turn on the emergency flashers and set up another warning device about 25 yards (25 meters) behind the vehicle to warn approaching traffic.
- Never park the vehicle where the hot exhaust system or catalytic converter could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves alone in the vehicle when locking the doors. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures. ◁

Protecting yourself and the vehicle

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 84.

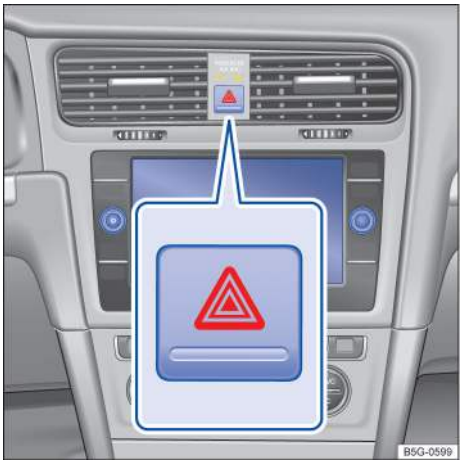


Fig. 47 In the center of the instrument panel: Button for the emergency flashers.

Obey all legal requirements regarding protecting a broken-down vehicle. For example, turning on the emergency flashers and wearing a safety vest are mandatory in many countries.

Checklist

For your own safety and that of your passengers, carry out the following steps in the order listed → ⚠:

1. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from traffic and on a suitable surface → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 84.
2. Switch on emergency flashers by pressing the ⚠ button → fig. 47.
3. Shift the transmission to Park **(P)** (automatic or DSG) or Neutral (manual only) → page 148, *Automatic and DSG® transmission*.
4. Apply the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving → page 178, *Using the parking brake (Golf, Golf GTI)*.
5. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button and remove the key from the vehicle → page 141, *Starting and stopping the engine*.
6. Have all passengers exit and go to a safe location away from moving traffic, such as behind a guard rail.
7. Take all vehicle keys with you when leaving your vehicle.
8. Set up a warning triangle or other warning device in order to alert other motorists and cyclists.
9. Let the engine cool down and get expert assistance if necessary.

If the emergency flashers are on, use the turn signal lever to indicate a direction or lane change, for example when the vehicle is being towed. This temporarily interrupts the emergency flashers.

Switch on the emergency flashers when:

— Traffic suddenly slows down or stops in front of you to warn those approaching from behind.

— In any emergency situation.

— If the vehicle breaks down.

— When being towed.

Always obey traffic laws that govern the use of emergency flashers where you are driving.

If the emergency flashers are not working, a different method – as permitted by law – must be used to alert other motorists and cyclists to the breakdown.

⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

NOTICE

To help prevent damage to the vehicle if you should have to push it a short distance by hand, never push against spoilers, lights, body panels, windows, or similar parts. Concentrating force on these parts of the vehicle can cause expensive damage that may not always be obvious right away.

The vehicle battery will be drained if the emergency flashers are on for a long time – even if the ignition is switched off. ◁

5GM012723ST

Opening and closing

Vehicle key set

Remote control vehicle key functions

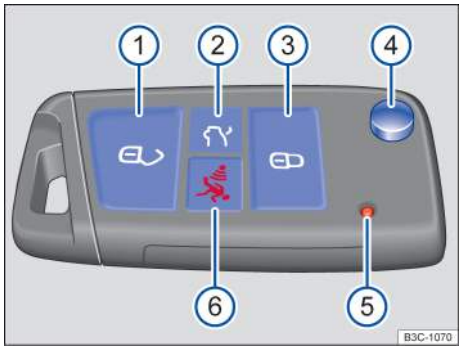


Fig. 48 Remote control vehicle key with panic button.

Key to fig. 48:

1. Unlock the vehicle
2. Unlock the trunk lid
3. Lock the vehicle
4. Key bit release
5. Indicator light
6. Panic button

The remote control vehicle key can unlock and lock the vehicle from a distance → page 90, *Doors and power locking system*.

The remote transmitter and battery are inside the remote control vehicle key. The receiver is inside the passenger compartment. The operating range of the remote control vehicle key for a fresh battery is several yards (meters) around the vehicle.

Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the outside

- *To unlock:* Press the button on the remote control vehicle key.
- *To lock:* Press the button on the remote control vehicle key.
- *To unlock the trunk lid:* Press the button on the remote control vehicle key.

The vehicle key unlocks or locks the vehicle only when the battery in the remote control vehicle key is not too weak, and the remote control vehicle key is within a few yards/meters of the vehicle.

- All turn signals flash *once* to confirm that the vehicle has been locked. If you press the lock button a second time, the horn also beeps as an additional confirmation. The horn beep (acoustic confirmation) can be disabled in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.
- All turn signals flash *twice* to confirm that the vehicle has been unlocked.

Folding the key bit in or out

- *To fold the key bit out:* Press button → fig. 48 (4) to release the key bit and fold it out.
- *To fold the key bit in:* Press the button (4) and push the key bit in until it clicks.

Indicator light in the remote control vehicle key

If a button on the remote control vehicle key is pressed briefly, the indicator light (5) will flash once briefly. If you push and hold a button, it flashes repeatedly. If the indicator light does not come on, the battery inside the key must be replaced → page 87, *Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery*.

Panic button

Press the panic button → fig. 48 (6) only in emergencies! After pushing the panic button, the horn will sound and the turn signals will flash. Press the panic button again or press the button on the remote control vehicle key to switch off the panic feature.

WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. It can be used to start the engine and operate vehicle systems such as the power windows, leading to serious personal injury. Children or other unauthorized persons could also lock the doors and the trunk lid.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the remote control vehicle key. This could leave people trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are

much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.

- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.

NOTICE

The remote control vehicle keys contain electrical components. Protect them from damage, moisture and rough handling.

Do not press the buttons on the remote control vehicle key unless you want to use the function in question. Since terrain and conditions vary, pressing a button on the remote control vehicle key when it is not necessary may unlock the vehicle or set off the panic alarm, even if you think you are out of range.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is on → page 322, *Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems*. ◁

Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery

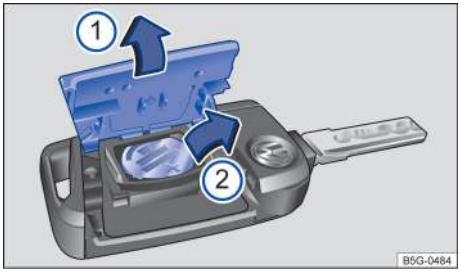


Fig. 49 Remote control vehicle key: Opening the battery compartment cover and removing the old battery.

The battery is in the back of the remote control vehicle key under a cover → fig. 49 (1).

Key to fig. 49:

(1) Cover
(2) Battery

Volkswagen recommends having the battery in the remote control vehicle key changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility → (!).

When changing the battery, pay attention to the correct polarity and use the same type of battery.

Replacing the battery

— Unfold the key bit on the remote control vehicle key → page 86, *Remote control vehicle key functions*.

— Remove the cover on the back of the remote control vehicle key → fig. 49 (1) in the direction of the arrow using a suitable object such as a coin → (!). This action may require some force.

— Use a thin object to pry the battery out of the battery compartment → fig. 49 (2).

— Position the new battery with the + side facing up and press the battery carefully into the battery compartment (opposite direction of the arrow) → (!).

— Position the cover as shown and press it down (opposite direction of the arrow) until you hear it click into place.

DANGER

20 mm button cells and other lithium batteries will cause serious personal injury and even death within a short time if swallowed.

- Always keep remote control vehicle key fobs with batteries, spare batteries, as well as dead button cell and larger 20 mm batteries out of the reach of children.
- Get medical attention immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed.

NOTICE

- Changing the battery improperly can damage the remote control vehicle key.
- Using the wrong battery can damage the remote control vehicle key. Replace a dead battery with a new one that has the same voltage, size, and specifications.
- Make sure the plus and minus poles of the battery are correctly positioned.

Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally responsible manner and keep them out of the reach of children.

Batteries of the type used in your remote control vehicle key may contain **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – see http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. Obey

5GM012723ST

all legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of these batteries. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you. ◁

Synchronizing the remote control vehicle key

If you cannot lock or unlock the vehicle with the remote control vehicle key, synchronize the vehicle key as follows or replace the vehicle key battery → page 87, *Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery*:

— Stand next to the vehicle.

— Press the button on the remote control vehicle key two times in quick succession.

OR:

— Unfold the key bit on the remote control vehicle key → page 86, *Remote control vehicle key functions*.

— Remove the cap from the door handle on the driver door → page 92, *Manually unlocking and locking the driver door*.

— Stand next to the vehicle.

— Press the button on the remote control vehicle key.

— Manually unlock the vehicle using the key bit → page 92, *Manually unlocking and locking the driver door*. The synchronization is complete.

— Reinstall the cap. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

If the remote control vehicle key does not lock or unlock the vehicle

Things between the remote control vehicle key and vehicle, bad weather, as well as a weak battery can reduce the operating range. Remote control vehicle key functions can also be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle that use the same frequency range (such as radio equipment or mobile phones).

OR: The power locking system may have switched off for a brief period to help keep it from being overloaded.

— Close the driver door.

— **OR:** Synchronize the vehicle key → page 88, *Synchronizing the remote control vehicle key*.

If the indicator light in the vehicle key does not flash

If the indicator light in the remote control vehicle key does not come on when the button is pressed, the battery inside the key must be replaced → page 87, *Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery*.

If remote control vehicle keys need to be replaced

The vehicle identification number is required to get a replacement key or an additional remote control vehicle key.

Each new vehicle key contains a microchip and must be coded with the data from the vehicle's electronic immobilizer. A vehicle key will not work if it does not contain a microchip or contains a chip that is not coded, even if the key bit was cut correctly.

You can obtain additional or duplicate remote control vehicle keys from authorized Volkswagen dealers, authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities, and from certain independent repair facilities and locksmiths which are qualified to make remote control vehicle keys.

Each vehicle key must be programmed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or certain independent repair facilities in order for it to work with your vehicle.

To find the nearest qualified independent repair facility, locksmith, or Volkswagen dealer which can cut and code replacement vehicle keys, call the VW Customer Care Hotline at 1-800-822-8987 or visit http://www.vw.com and search for "replacement keys."

Canadian customers can contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Canada Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987. ◁

Keyless Access with push-button start

Introduction

Your vehicle may be equipped with Keyless Access with push-button start, a keyless starting and locking system that unlocks and locks the vehicle without active use of a remote control vehicle key. All you have to do is touch a sensor surface on one of the front outside door handles or press the Volkswa-

gen emblem on the trunk lid when a valid remote control vehicle key is within range.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is on → page 322, *Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems*. ◁

Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access

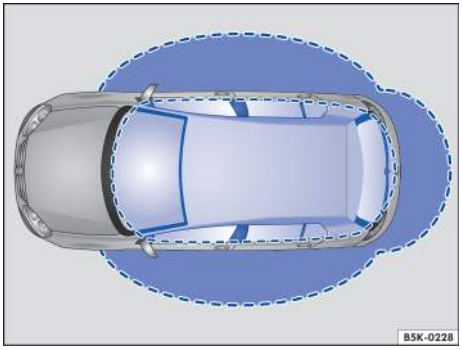


Fig. 50 Ranges of the Keyless Access system. Outside the vehicle: Unlocking range. Inside the vehicle: Starting range.

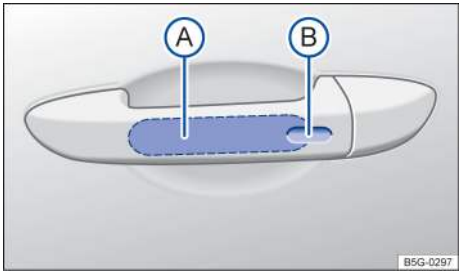


Fig. 51 Keyless Access system: Unlocking and locking sensors on the outside door handle.

Key to fig. 51:

Ⓐ Unlocking sensor
Ⓑ Locking sensor

Unlocking the vehicle

— Grasp the door handle of the driver or front passenger door so that you touch the unlocking sensor surface → fig. 51 Ⓐ.

— Open the door.

All turn signals flash *twice* to confirm that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If the vehicle is unlocked, it will lock again after a short time if you do not open one of the doors or the trunk lid.

Locking the vehicle

Always switch off the engine and ignition and take the vehicle key with you.

— Close the driver door.

— Touch the lock sensor surface in the door handle on the driver or front passenger door → fig. 51 Ⓑ *one time*. The vehicle is locked. The door being locked must be closed.

All turn signals flash *once* to confirm that the vehicle has been locked.

Unlocking and locking the trunk lid

If the vehicle is locked and a valid remote control vehicle key is within range → fig. 50 of the trunk lid, it unlocks automatically when opened.

If the vehicle is completely unlocked, the trunk lid will **not** lock automatically when it is closed.

Temporarily deactivating Keyless Access

To help prevent the vehicle from being unlocked and started by an unauthorized person, Keyless Access can be temporarily deactivated.

— Lock the vehicle with the button on the remote control vehicle key.

— Within 5 seconds, touch the lock sensor surface on the door handle on the driver or front passenger door → fig. 51 Ⓑ.

— Keyless Access is now temporarily deactivated.

— To check that Keyless Access is deactivated, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle. The door should not open.

The vehicle can only be unlocked with the remote control vehicle key. Keyless Access is automatically reactivated after the vehicle has been unlocked.

Convenience features

Your vehicle may be equipped with the convenience closing feature.

To use the convenience closing feature to close all power windows and the power sunroof, hold your finger on the lock sensor surface on the outside of the door handle → fig. 51 Ⓑ for a few seconds until the windows and the power sunroof close.

Remove your finger from the lock sensor surface to stop the function.

5GM012723ST

Pinch protection is active during convenience closing of the windows and the power sunroof.

To help make sure that the vehicle stays locked after you press the locking sensor on the door handle, the unlocking function on that door handle switches off for about 2 seconds after locking the vehicle.

A driver information message may appear in the instrument cluster display if there is a Keyless Access system malfunction. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

A driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display if there is no remote control vehicle key inside the vehicle or if the system does not recognize the remote control vehicle key. The key may not be recognized, for example, if it is covered by something that interferes with the signal (such as a briefcase), or if the remote control vehicle key battery is weak. Electronic devices such as mobile phones can also interfere with the signal.

If the automatic or DSG transmission is not in Park **(P)** position, the electronic steering column will not lock and the vehicle will not lock via sensors in the front door handles or the remote control vehicle key.

Depending on the vehicle settings, the entire vehicle will unlock when you touch the unlocking sensor surface twice in a row, even if a single door was already unlocked. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

If Keyless Access does not work

Dirt or road salt on the door handles can affect the way the door handle sensors work.

— Clean the door handle sensors → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

If all turn signals flash four times

To help prevent you from locking yourself out, the vehicle will not lock immediately in the following situation:

— When you press the lock button on the remote control vehicle key when a passenger door or the trunk lid is still open.

— **AND** you leave the remote control vehicle key you just used inside the vehicle when you close all doors and the trunk lid.

The vehicle does not fully lock. All turn signals flash *four* times. Take the remote control vehicle key out of the vehicle and lock the vehicle again.

Automatic deactivation of sensors

If the vehicle has not been unlocked or locked for a longer period of time, the sensors in the door handles are automatically switched off.

If a sensor on the door handle of a locked vehicle is touched too often, for instance by a bush or hedge that rubs against the vehicle, that sensor may be switched off for a short time.

To reactivate the sensors:

— Unlock the vehicle using the button on the remote control vehicle key.

NOTICE

The door handle sensor surfaces can be activated by a strong stream of water or steam if a valid vehicle key is within range of the vehicle.

- If at least one power window is opened and the sensor is continuously activated, the convenience closing feature will automatically close the windows. ◁

Doors and power locking system

Introduction

The power locking system lets you unlock and lock all doors, the trunk lid, and the fuel filler flap.

The doors can be locked manually if the remote control vehicle key or the power locking system is not working → page 92, *Manually unlocking and locking the driver door*.

The power locking system works properly only when all doors and the trunk lid are completely closed. When the driver door is open, the vehicle *cannot* be locked with the remote control vehicle key.

For vehicles equipped with Keyless Access with push-button start, the vehicle can be locked *only* if the ignition is switched off and the driver door is closed.

If a door is not closed properly, the vehicle icon appears in the instrument cluster display indicating a door is open. **Stop!** Open and close the door again.

The vehicle icon may still be displayed even after the ignition is switched off. The instrument cluster dis-

play goes out a short time after the vehicle has been locked.

WARNING

A door that is not closed properly may open suddenly when the vehicle is moving and cause severe injuries.

- Stop immediately in a safe place and close the door.
- Make sure that the door is safely and completely latched when closed. The closed door must be flush with the surrounding auto body parts.
- Open or close doors only if no one is in the way.

WARNING

A door kept open with the door stop may close in strong winds or on inclines and cause injuries.

- Always hold doors by the door handle while opening and closing.

WARNING

Improper use of power locks can result in serious personal injury.

- The power locking switch locks all doors. Locking the doors from the inside can help prevent unintended door opening during a collision and can also prevent unwanted entry from the outside. Locked doors can, however, delay assistance to vehicle occupants and rescue from the outside in an accident or other emergency.
- Never leave children or anyone who cannot help themselves behind in the vehicle. All doors can be locked from the inside with the power lock button. This could leave people trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.
- Never allow passengers to remain in a locked vehicle. In an emergency any person still inside the vehicle might not be able to get out.

NOTICE

When locking or unlocking the vehicle manually, remove parts carefully and install them again correctly to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Indicator light in the driver door

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice and on page 90.

The indicator light for the power locking system is in the driver door → page 8, *Driver door overview*.

If the vehicle is locked: The red LED light flashes for about 2 seconds in short intervals, then slower.

The indicator light does *not* flash if the vehicle was locked with the power locking switch in the driver door → page 92, *Power locking and unlocking switch*. ◁

Automatic locking and unlocking

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice and on page 90.

You can change certain power locking system settings in the Vehicle settings menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Automatic locking (Auto lock)

The vehicle locks automatically when it reaches a speed of about 10 mph (15 km/h). When the vehicle is locked, the indicator light comes on in the power locking switch.

Automatic unlocking (Auto unlock)

Auto unlock works only if the vehicle has been automatically locked with the Auto lock feature. When one of the following conditions is met, the doors will unlock automatically.

— The vehicle is not moving and the ignition is switched off or the key is removed from the ignition.

— **OR:** The selector lever is in park **(P)**.

— **OR:** You open a door from inside the vehicle.

5GM012723ST

— **OR:** After the airbags inflate in a collision → page 95, *Tips and troubleshooting*.

The indicator light goes out in the power locking switch when the doors unlock → page 92, *Power locking and unlocking switch*.

Automatic unlocking after airbag inflation allows emergency responders to access the vehicle.

Depending on the settings for the power locking system that have been set in the Infotainment system, it may be necessary to press the button on the remote control vehicle key twice to unlock all doors and the trunk lid → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*. ◁

Power locking and unlocking switch

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice and on page 90.

Fig. 52 In the driver and front passenger doors: Power locking switch.

Key to fig. 52:

Unlock the vehicle.

Lock the vehicle.

The power locking switch works whether the ignition is switched on or off but only when *all* doors are closed.

If the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key, the power locking switch is deactivated.

If the vehicle is locked from the inside with the power locking switch:

— The yellow indicator light in the power locking switch comes on to indicate that all doors are locked → fig. 52.

— If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm, the system is **not** turned on.

Doors can be unlocked and opened separately from inside the vehicle by pulling the door handle to open the door. The rear passenger door handles need to be pulled twice to open the door. The indicator light goes out. The unopened doors and trunk lid remain locked and cannot be opened from the outside.

An open driver door will not be locked. This helps keep the driver from being locked out of the vehicle. ◁

Manually unlocking and locking the driver door

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice and on page 90.

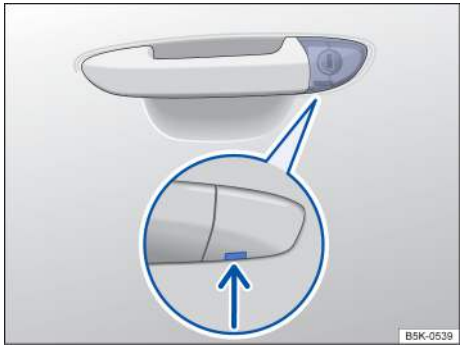


Fig. 53 Driver door: Concealed lock cylinder.

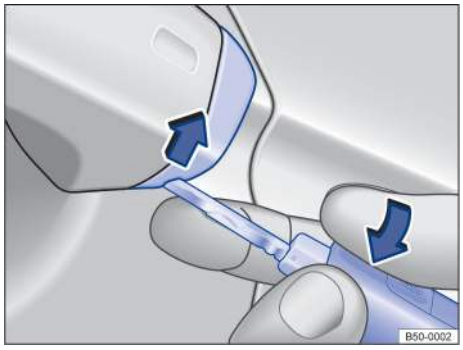


Fig. 54 Driver door handle: Removing the lock cylinder cover.

When locking the vehicle manually, all doors are locked. To unlock the vehicle manually, turn (counterclockwise) to the unlocking position. When the vehicle is unlocked manually, only the driver door is

unlocked. Note the instructions for the anti-theft alarm system → page 95, *Anti-theft alarm system*.

— Unfold the key bit from the remote control vehicle key → page 86, *Vehicle key set*.

— If the vehicle has a concealed lock cylinder, insert the key bit from below into the opening of the cover cap on the driver door → fig. 54 (arrow) and lift the cover cap off. Grasping the door handle and pulling slightly makes it easier to remove the cap.

— Insert the key bit into the lock cylinder of the driver door and unlock or lock the door. If the larger side of the vehicle key touches the door handle during locking or unlocking, either pull the door handle slightly or reinsert the vehicle key in the lock cylinder with the opposite side facing up.

— Reinsert the cover cap from top to bottom and press until it clicks into place. Grasping the door handle and pulling slightly makes it easier to reinstall the cap.

Keyless Access → page 89, *Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access* is not activated if the vehicle is locked manually.

Special considerations when unlocking manually

— If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, the alarm will sound when the driver door is opened → page 95, *Anti-theft alarm system*.

— Switch on the ignition to switch off the alarm.

The electronic immobilizer recognizes a valid remote control vehicle key when the ignition is switched on and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

The driver door can still be unlocked and opened separately from inside the vehicle by pulling the door handle to open the door. The rear passenger door handles need to be pulled twice to open the door.

The anti-theft alarm system, when installed, is not activated when the vehicle is locked manually with the key bit → page 95, *Anti-theft alarm system*. ◁

Manually locking the passenger doors

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 90.

Fig. 55 On the front side of the rear passenger door: Manual lock, covered by a rubber seal.

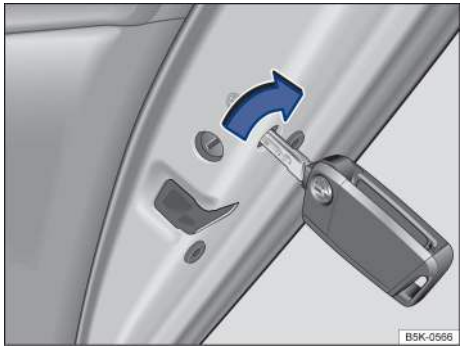


Fig. 56 On the front side of the rear passenger door: Locking the vehicle with the key bit in the vehicle key.

The passenger door and rear doors can each be locked manually so that they cannot be opened from outside the vehicle. This will **not** activate the anti-theft alarm system, when installed.

— Open the door.

— Remove the rubber seal on the front side of the door. The seal is marked with a lock → fig. 55.

— Unfold the key bit from the remote control vehicle key → page 86, *Remote control vehicle key functions*.

— Insert the key bit into the slot → fig. 56 and turn to lock. On the passenger side doors, turn the key

5GM012723ST

clockwise. On the driver side rear door, turn the key counterclockwise.

— Reinsert the rubber seal and completely close the door.

— Make sure that the door is locked.

— Repeat the procedure for other doors if necessary.

— Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

A door that has been locked manually will be unlocked again if the vehicle is unlocked or the door is opened from the inside.

The vehicle doors can still be unlocked and opened separately from inside the vehicle by pulling the door handle to open the door. ◁

Child safety lock

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 90.

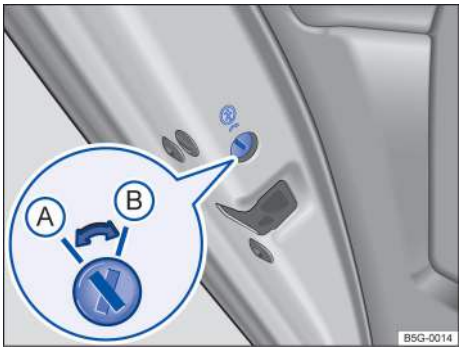


Fig. 57 In the rear driver side door: Child safety lock Ⓐ deactivated, Ⓑ activated.

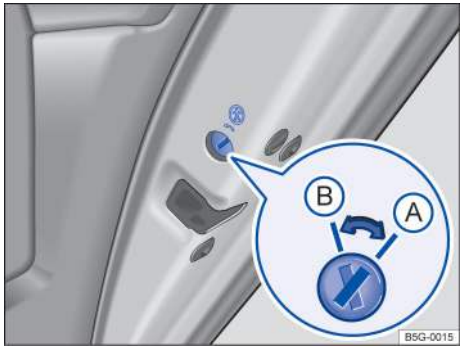


Fig. 58 In the rear passenger side door: Child safety lock Ⓐ deactivated, Ⓑ activated.

Slot position → fig. 57 or → fig. 58:

Ⓐ Child safety lock deactivated.
Ⓑ Child safety lock activated.

The child safety lock keeps the rear doors from being opened from the inside, so that children cannot open them accidentally.

When the child safety lock is activated, the rear doors can only be opened from the outside.

Activating or deactivating the child safety lock

— Unlock the vehicle and open the respective rear door.

— Unfold the key bit from the remote control vehicle key.

— Using the key bit, move the slot into the desired position.

⚠ WARNING

When the child safety lock is activated, that rear door cannot be opened from the inside.

- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves, in the vehicle when locking the doors. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 90.

If the red indicator light in the driver door lights up continuously

If the red LED light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds in short intervals, then lights up continuously for about 30 seconds, there is a power locking system malfunction.

— See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

If the turn signals do not flash to confirm locking

If you try to lock the vehicle and the turn signals *do not* flash to confirm locking:

— At least one of the doors or the trunk lid is open.

If the vehicle locks itself automatically

If the vehicle was unlocked with the remote control vehicle key and the door or the trunk lid has not been opened within several seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again. This feature helps prevent you from leaving the vehicle unlocked unintentionally.

Locking with a second vehicle key

If a vehicle with Keyless Access is locked from the outside using a second valid vehicle key, any key located inside the vehicle cannot start the engine → page 141, *Starting and stopping the engine*. A key that was inside the vehicle when it was locked from the outside can be reactivated by pressing the 🔒 button on the deactivated key.

Locking the vehicle after airbag inflation

If the airbags are activated during a collision, the entire vehicle is unlocked. Depending on the severity of the damage, the vehicle can be locked after a collision when the airbags have deployed.

— Switch the ignition off.

— Open and close a door once.

— Press the 🔒 button on the power locking switch or on the remote control vehicle key. ◁

Anti-theft alarm system

Your vehicle may be equipped with an anti-theft alarm system or pre-equipped for anti-theft alarm system installation. If the vehicle is pre-equipped for installation of the anti-theft alarm system, the alarm system can be retrofitted by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The anti-theft alarm system makes it more difficult for someone to break into or steal the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated when the vehicle is locked by pressing the lock button on the remote control vehicle key.

When is the alarm triggered?

The anti-theft alarm system sounds and the turn signals flash for up to 5 minutes if the following occurs with respect to the locked vehicle:

— A door unlocked mechanically with the vehicle key bit is opened.

— Forcibly opening a door.

— Forcibly opening the engine hood.

— Forcibly opening the trunk lid.

— Switching on the ignition with an invalid or deactivated key (a short alarm may sound).

— Disconnecting the 12 Volt vehicle battery.

Deactivating the alarm

— Unlock the vehicle with the unlock button 🔓 on the remote control vehicle key.

— **OR:** Switch on the ignition with a valid remote control vehicle key.

— *For vehicles with Keyless Access:* Grasp one of the front door handles when a valid vehicle key is in range.

After the alarm has stopped and the vehicle is opened again in the same or a different area that is protected by the alarm, the alarm is triggered again. For example, the alarm will sound again if the trunk lid is opened after one of the doors has been opened.

The anti-theft alarm system is **not** activated when the vehicle is locked with the power locking switch 🔒 on the inside of the driver or front passenger doors.

If the driver door is mechanically unlocked using the vehicle key bit, only the driver door is unlocked, not the entire vehicle. Switching on the ignition deactivates the anti-theft alarm system and activates the power locking switch. To unlock the doors, use the power locking switch or remote control vehicle key.

If the vehicle battery is dead or weak, the anti-theft alarm system will not work properly. ◁

5GM012723ST

Trunk lid

Introduction

The trunk lid is unlocked and locked together with the doors.

In vehicles with Keyless Access, the trunk lid is unlocked automatically → page 89, *Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access*.

If the trunk lid is not closed properly, the vehicle icon appears in the instrument cluster display indicating the trunk lid is open. **Stop!** Open the trunk lid and then close it again.

The vehicle icon may still be displayed even after the ignition is switched off. The instrument cluster display goes out a short time after the vehicle has been locked.

WARNING

Accidents and severe personal injuries can result if you unlock, open, or close the trunk lid when someone is in the way.

- Only open or close the trunk lid if no one is in the way.
- Never close the trunk lid by pushing on the rear window with your hand. The rear window could break and cause injuries.
- After closing the trunk lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked so that it cannot open suddenly when the vehicle is moving. The closed trunk lid must be flush with the surrounding auto body parts.
- Always keep the trunk lid closed while driving to help keep poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle.
- Never open the trunk lid when a luggage rack is installed and loaded. If, for example, there are bicycles on a carrier on the trunk lid, it is possible that the trunk lid will be difficult to open. An open trunk lid may fall on its own because of the additional weight. If necessary, prop open the trunk lid. Remove the weight from the luggage rack first.
- Close and lock the trunk lid and all doors when the vehicle is not in use. First, make sure that no one is left inside the vehicle.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially when the trunk lid is open. A child could crawl into the vehicle and pull the trunk lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.
- Never leave children or anyone who cannot help themselves behind in the vehicle. They may lock the vehicle with the vehicle key or the power locking switch and lock themselves in.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Never let anyone ride in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

If the trunk lid is not closed properly, it may open suddenly when the vehicle is moving and cause severe injuries.

- Stop immediately in a safe place and close the trunk lid.
- Always make sure the trunk lid is securely latched after you close it.

NOTICE

Before opening or closing the trunk lid, make sure there is enough room to do so, for example, when the vehicle is in a garage.

NOTICE

Never use the gas-pressure strut to hold or clamp a load in place. This can damage the trunk lid and make it impossible to close.

NOTICE

Never use the rear windshield wiper or the rear spoiler to fix a load in place. This can damage the trunk lid and cause the windshield wiper or spoiler to be torn off. ◁

Opening and closing the trunk lid

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 96.

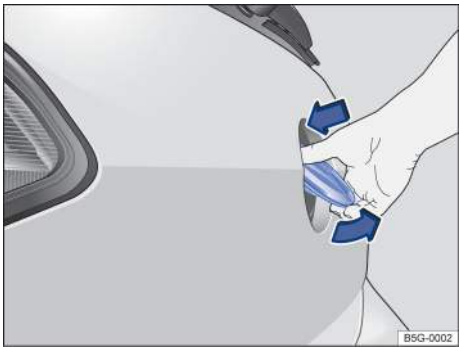


Fig. 59 Opening the trunk lid from the outside.

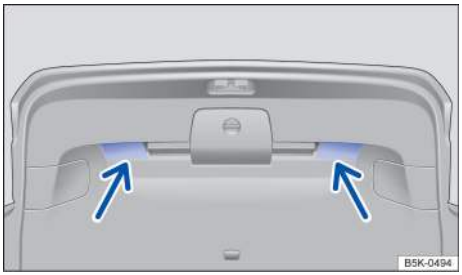


Fig. 60 Open trunk lid: Recessed grips for closing the trunk lid.

Always remove anything secured to a luggage rack mounted onto the trunk lid before opening the trunk lid → ⚠.

Unlocking and opening the trunk lid

— If the vehicle is locked, press the button on the remote control vehicle key → fig. 48 to unlock the trunk lid.

— To open the trunk lid, press the top of the Volkswagen emblem with your thumb → fig. 59 and move the top of the emblem down. Then grasp the bottom part of the emblem and pull upward to lift the trunk lid.

Closing the trunk lid

— Grasp one of the recessed grips in the trunk lid trim → fig. 60 (arrows).

— Pull the trunk lid down and close it securely so that the latch engages.

— Check the trunk lid to make sure it is securely latched.

The trunk lid can be locked only when it is securely closed and latched.

A closed but unlocked trunk lid automatically locks when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

Improper and unsupervised unlocking or opening of the trunk lid can cause severe injuries. Never open the trunk lid when someone is in the way.

- If a bicycle or luggage rack is installed on the trunk lid, it may be hard to see that the trunk lid is unlatched. An unlatched trunk lid may open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

Improper or unsupervised closing of the trunk lid can cause severe injuries. Never close the trunk lid when someone is in the way.

- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially with the trunk lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle and pull the trunk lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold depending on the season. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness or death, particularly to small children.
- When closing the trunk lid, be careful to remove your hands out of the path of the trunk lid in time.

ⓘ NOTICE

Before opening or closing the trunk lid, make sure there is enough room to do so, for example, when the vehicle is in a garage.

If you unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key, but do not open either a door or the trunk lid within several seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again. This feature helps prevent you from leaving the vehicle unlocked unintentionally. ◁

5GM012723ST

Opening the trunk lid from inside the luggage compartment

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 96.

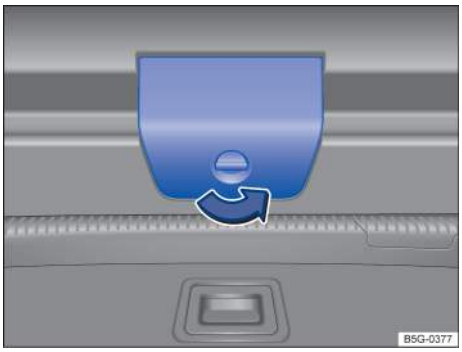


Fig. 61 Inside the luggage compartment: Cover for the trunk lid release.

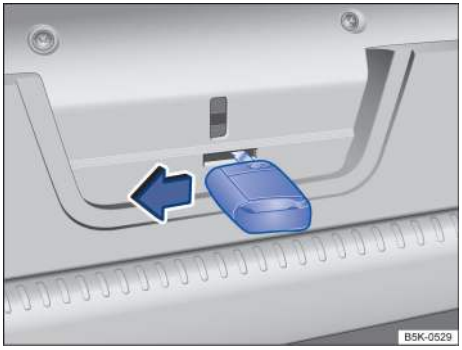


Fig. 62 Inside the luggage compartment, behind the cover: Opening the trunk lid.

The trunk lid can be opened manually if the vehicle battery is drained or if there is a fault in the locking system.

— If necessary, fold the rear seat backrest forward → page 106, *Rear seats*.

— Remove luggage to reach the trunk lid from the inside.

— Unlock the cover by turning the knob in the direction of the arrow → fig. 61. Pull the cover toward you to open.

— Unfold the key bit from the vehicle key fob → page 86, *Vehicle key set*.

— Insert the key bit into the slot in the trunk lid trim and press the release lever in the direction of the arrow → fig. 62 to unlock the trunk lid. At the same time, push the trunk lid out until it opens. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 96.

If all turn signals flash four times

To help prevent you from locking yourself out, vehicles with Keyless Access will not lock immediately in the following situation:

— When you press the lock button on the remote control vehicle key when a passenger door or the trunk lid is still open, and

— You leave the remote control vehicle key you just used inside the vehicle when you close all doors and the trunk lid.

The vehicle does not fully lock. All turn signals flash *four* times. Take the remote control vehicle key out of the vehicle and lock the vehicle again.

If the trunk lid is stiff

At temperatures below +32 °F (0 °C), the trunk lid may be difficult to open after you unlock it. ◁

Power windows

Opening and closing power windows

Using the power window switches

The power window switches are in the vehicle doors.

— *Opening:* Press the switch.

— *Closing:* Pull the switch.

— *Stopping automatic movement:* Press/pull the respective switch again.

— *Activating the safety switch for the rear windows:* Press the safety switch in the driver door to deactivate the power windows in the rear doors. The yellow indicator light in the switch comes on.

You can still use the power windows for several minutes after the ignition is switched off as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened. When the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition and the driver door has been opened, the power windows cannot be opened or closed.

One-touch opening and closing

The one-touch feature automatically opens or closes a power window all the way. The window switch does not have to be held.

For one-touch opening: Press the switch for the window down briefly as far as it goes.

For one-touch closing: Pull the switch for the window up briefly as far as it goes.

Stopping automatic movement: Pull/press the switch again.

Convenience opening and closing

Your vehicle may be equipped with the convenience opening and closing feature, which lets you open and close the windows and the power sunroof when the ignition is switched off:

— *Convenience opening from inside the vehicle:* Push down and hold the switch for the driver window until all windows open and the sunroof tilts.

— *Convenience closing for vehicles with Keyless Access:* Hold your finger on the lock sensor surface on the outside of the door handle for a few seconds until the windows and the sunroof close → page 89, *Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access*. All turn signals flash when the windows and sunroof are completely closed.

— Release the switch or remove your finger from the lock sensor surface to stop convenience opening or closing.

You can configure settings for the convenience opening feature in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of power windows can result in serious personal injury.

- Never let anyone get in the way of a power window when closing it.
- When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that no one, especially children, remains in the vehicle. The windows will not open in case of an emergency.
- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. You can still use the power windows for several minutes after the ignition is switched off as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.
- Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle – particularly if the ignition is on or a remote control vehicle key is also in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the remote control vehicle key makes it possible to lock the vehicle, start the engine, turn on the ignition, and operate the windows.
- Always use the safety switch when children are in the back seat to disable the rear power windows and keep them from being opened and closed.

NOTICE

If you leave the windows open, rain or other precipitation may enter the vehicle from outside and can damage the vehicle interior.

If the power windows malfunction, the one-touch feature, as well as pinch protection may not work properly. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility right away.

Convenience closing only works when the one-touch feature is active.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Power window pinch protection

Pinch protection can help reduce the risk of pinching injuries when closing a power window → ⚠. If one-touch window closing meets resistance or there is something in the way, the window will stop and go down again.

— Check why the window did not close.

— Try one-touch window closing again.

— If the window meets resistance a second time, so that it stops and goes back down, one-touch closing is deactivated for about 10 seconds.

— If you pull the power window button up all the way and hold it during this 10 second interval, the window will close **without pinch protection** → ⚠.

Closing the window without pinch protection

— Try to close the window again within 10 seconds by holding the switch. **Pinch protection is turned off for a short distance in the window track!**

— If closing takes longer than about 10 seconds, pinch protection is turned on again. The window stops again if there is resistance.

— If the window still will not close, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

5GM012723ST

⚠ WARNING

Without pinch protection, power windows will close with enough force to cause serious personal injury.

- Always be careful when closing power windows.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way when overriding pinch protection to close power windows!
- Pinch protection cannot prevent fingers or other parts of the body from being pressed against the window frame; injuries may result.

Pinch protection is also active during convenience closing of the windows and the power sunroof → page 99, *Power window pinch protection*. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

If the one-touch feature does not work

If the vehicle battery is disconnected or dies when the windows are not completely closed, the one-touch feature will not work and must be reactivated after the vehicle battery has been recharged or replaced:

— Switch on the ignition.

— Close all windows and doors.

— Pull the switch for the respective window up and hold it for at least 2 seconds in this position.

— Release the switch, pull up and hold again. The one-touch feature is now reactivated.

The one-touch feature can be reactivated for one or more windows at the same time. ◁

Power sunroof

Opening or closing the power sunroof

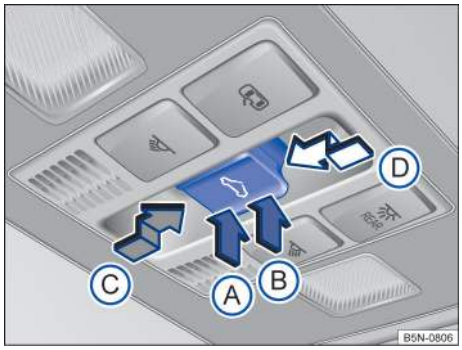


Fig. 63 In the headliner: Power sunroof switch.

Depending on equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with a Panoramic sliding and tilting sunroof.

The switch → fig. 63 has two detents for each switch position (Ⓐ, Ⓑ, Ⓒ, and Ⓓ).

Tilting, opening, and closing the power sunroof

— *Tilt the power sunroof:* Press the rear area of the switch Ⓑ upward to the first detent. Briefly press the switch to the second detent to tilt the sunroof with the one-touch feature.

— *Close the tilted sunroof:* Press the front area of the switch Ⓐ upward to the first detent. Briefly press the switch to the second detent to close the tilted sunroof with the one-touch feature.

— *Stop the one-touch feature during tilting/closing:* Press the button again at position Ⓐ or Ⓑ.

— *Open the power sunroof:* Press the switch rearward Ⓒ to the first detent. Briefly press the switch to the second detent to open the roof with the one-touch feature.

— *Close the power sunroof:* Press the switch forward Ⓓ to the first detent. Briefly press the switch to the second detent to close the sunroof with the one-touch feature.

— *Stop the one-touch feature during opening/closing:* Press the switch again at Ⓒ or Ⓓ.

Opening and closing the sunshade

The sliding sunshade must be opened and closed manually. Use the handle at the front of the shade

to slide it to the desired position. It does not open or close automatically with the power sunroof.

WARNING

Improper use of the power sunroof can result in serious personal injury.

- Always make sure that no one is in the way of the power sunroof when it is closing.
- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.
- Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle – particularly if the ignition is on or a remote control vehicle key is also in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the remote control vehicle key makes it possible to lock the vehicle, start the engine, turn on the ignition and operate the sunroof.
- You can still open or close the power sunroof for several minutes after you switch off the ignition, as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.

NOTICE

- To help prevent damage, remove ice and snow from the sunroof before opening or tilting it in winter weather.
- Always close the sunroof before leaving the vehicle or if it begins raining. If the sunroof is open or tilted, rain could enter the vehicle interior and cause extensive damage to the electrical system. This could result in further vehicle damage.

Remove leaves and other objects from the sunroof guiderails regularly either by hand or using a vacuum cleaner.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Convenience opening and closing of the power sunroof

Convenience opening and closing

Your vehicle may be equipped with the convenience opening and closing feature, which lets you open and close the windows and the power sunroof when the ignition is switched off:

— *Convenience opening from inside the vehicle:* Push down and hold the switch for the driver window until all windows open and the sunroof tilts.

— *Convenience closing for vehicles with Keyless Access:* Hold your finger on the lock sensor surface on the outside of the door handle for a few seconds until the windows and the sunroof close → page 89, *Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access*. All turn signals flash when the windows and sunroof are completely closed.

— Release the switch or remove your finger from the lock sensor surface to stop convenience opening or closing.

You can configure settings for the convenience opening feature in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*. ◁

Pinch protection for the power sunroof

Pinch protection can help reduce the risk of pinching injuries when closing the power sunroof → ⚠. If the power sunroof closing meets resistance or there is something in the way, the power sunroof opens again immediately.

— Check why the power sunroof did not close.

— Try to close the power sunroof again.

— If the power sunroof cannot close, the power sunroof will open again immediately. For a few seconds after the sunroof has opened, it can be closed without pinch protection.

Closing the power sunroof without pinch protection

— Press the button → fig. 63 within about 5 seconds after the sunroof has stopped and hold it in the direction of the arrow Ⓓ at the second detent until the power sunroof closes completely.

— **The power sunroof will now close without pinch protection!**

— If the power sunroof still will not close, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

WARNING

Without pinch protection, the power sunroof will close with enough force to cause serious personal injury.

- Always be careful when closing the power sunroof.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way when overriding the pinch protection to close the power sunroof!

5GM012723ST

- Pinch protection cannot prevent fingers or other parts of the body from being pressed against the edge of the roof; injuries may result.

Pinch protection is also active during convenience closing of the windows and the power sunroof → page 101, *Convenience opening and closing of the power sunroof*.

If the power sunroof malfunctions, pinch protection may not function properly. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

If the power sunroof does not close

— You must switch on the ignition to operate the power sunroof. After switching off the ignition, you can still open or close the power sunroof for several minutes as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.

— If your power sunroof will not close properly, do not try to close it yourself, doing so can cause serious and expensive damage that will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty. Special knowledge and tools are required to close the power sunroof if it will not close on its own. To help prevent damage to the sunroof, have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility help you close and repair the power sunroof. ◁

Steering wheel

Adjusting the steering wheel position

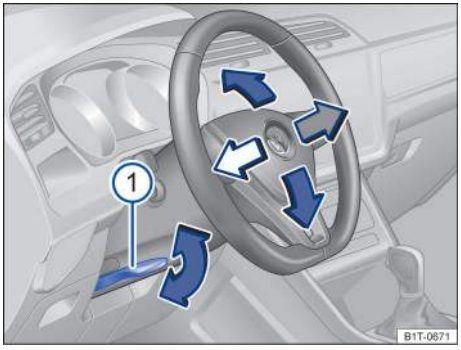


Fig. 64 Manual adjustment for the steering wheel position.

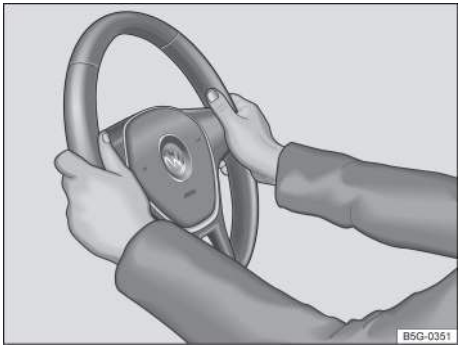


Fig. 65 Steering wheel: 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions.

The steering wheel can be adjusted up and down (blue arrows) or forward and back (white and gray arrows) → fig. 64.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is not moving.

— Push down on the lever → fig. 64 (1).

— Adjust the steering wheel so that it can be held with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions on the outside of the steering wheel rim and with the arms slightly bent at the elbow → fig. 65.

— Pull the lever up firmly until it is flush with the steering column → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the steering wheel adjustment feature can result in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always pull the lever → fig. 64 (1) firmly upward after adjusting the steering wheel so that the steering wheel does not change position suddenly while the vehicle is moving.
- Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. If you find that you need to adjust the steering wheel while driving, stop the vehicle in a safe place and make the proper adjustment.
- Never adjust the steering wheel so that it points toward your face. Always make sure that the steering wheel points toward your chest. Otherwise, the airbag system cannot protect you properly in the event of a crash.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions → fig. 65 to help reduce the risk of serious personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys. ◁

5GM012723ST

Seats and head restraints

Driver and front passenger seats

Introduction

WARNING

Always adjust seat, safety belts, and head restraints properly before driving and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.

- Push the passenger seat as far back as possible. Always be sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent.
- If these requirements cannot be met for physical reasons, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to see whether adaptive equipment is available.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other places inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms, and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the driver's airbag to help protect you in a collision.
- Never drive with backrests reclined or tilted back farther than necessary to drive comfortably. The farther back the backrests are tilted, the greater the risk of injury caused by incorrect positioning of the safety belts and improper seating position.
- Never drive with the front seat passenger backrest tilted forward. If the front airbag deploys, the front backrest can be forced backward and injure passengers on the rear seat.
- Sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel and the instrument panel.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest with the front seats properly adjusted. Never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Rear seat passengers who are not properly seated and restrained are more likely to be seriously injured in a crash.

WARNING

Improper adjustment of the seats can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle. In addition, you will not be in the correct seating position while adjusting the seats.
- Adjust the front seat height, angle and longitudinal direction only if the seat adjustment area is clear.
- The adjustment of the front seats must not be restricted by things in the footwell in front or behind the seats.

WARNING

Improper use of seat covers can lead to an accidental activation of the electrical seat controls and can cause the front seats to move unexpectedly while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others. Furthermore, the electrical components of the front seats could be damaged.

- Never attach seat covers to the electrical seat controls.
- Never put seat covers or replacement upholstery on the front seats that have not been approved by Volkswagen for your specific vehicle.

WARNING

Some kinds of cigarette lighters can be lit unintentionally, or crushed causing a fire that can result in serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Always make sure that there are no lighters in the seat tracks or near other moving parts before adjusting the seats.
- Before closing a storage compartment, always make sure that no cigarette lighter can be activated, crushed, or otherwise damaged.
- Never leave a cigarette lighter in a storage compartment, on the instrument panel, or in other places in the vehicle. Heat buildup in the pas-

senger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. High temperatures could cause the cigarette lighter to catch fire.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged objects and items on clothing and belts (such as belt clips, mobile phone cases, zippers, rivets, and rhinestones) can damage upholstery material and fabric trim.

- To help prevent damage, do not let such items come into direct contact with the upholstery and fabric trim. ◁

Electrical controls on the driver and front passenger seats

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 104.

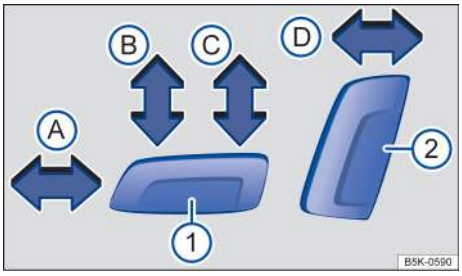


Fig. 66 Driver seat: Electrical controls to move the seat backward or forward, and adjust seat cushion height and backrest angle (if equipped).

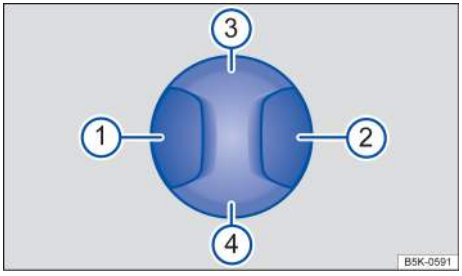


Fig. 67 Lumbar support control (if equipped).

If your vehicle is equipped with electrical controls for the front seats, the controls on the front passenger seat either mirror those on the driver seat or there may be different combinations of electrical and manual controls.

There may be manual and electrical controls on the same seat.

Electrical seat controls

Press the switch in the direction of the arrow → fig. 66:

1. Ⓐ: Slide the seat forward or back.
   Ⓑ: Adjust the seat cushion angle.
   Ⓒ: Raise or lower the seat cushion.
2. Ⓓ: Adjust the backrest angle.

Lumbar support controls (if equipped)

Press the switch in the corresponding area → fig. 67:

1. Adjust the curve of the lumbar support (forward).
2. Adjust the curve of the lumbar support (back).
3. Adjust the height of the lumbar support (up).
4. Adjust the height of the lumbar support (down).

WARNING

Improper use of electrical seat controls can cause serious personal injuries.

- The front seats in your vehicle can be electrically adjusted even when the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition or, on a vehicle with Keyless Access, even if there is no key in the vehicle.
- Never leave children and persons who need help in the vehicle alone because the unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments can result in serious personal injury.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way while the front seats are being adjusted, or while calling up the stored memory settings for the front seats. In an emergency, stop automatic seat adjustment by pressing a seat adjustment switch.

NOTICE

To help prevent damage to electrical parts in the seat, do not kneel on the front seats or apply concentrated pressure to a small area of the seat or backrest.

If the vehicle battery is too weak, the electrical seat adjustment controls may not work.

5GM012723ST

When entering and exiting the vehicle, be careful not to come into contact with any switches that could change the seat adjustment. ◁

Manual controls on the driver and front passenger seats

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 104.

Fig. 68 Driver seat: Manual seat adjustment controls.

The manual controls on the front passenger seat either mirror those on the driver seat or there may be different combinations of manual and electrical controls, depending on vehicle equipment.

The illustration and information in this section describes all possible seat controls. The number of controls may vary depending on the version of the seat.

There may be manual and electrical controls on the same seat → page 105, *Electrical controls on the driver and front passenger seats*.

Manual seat controls

Key to fig. 68:

① Adjust the lumbar support. Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

② Adjust the backrest angle. Lean forward and turn the adjuster wheel forward or backward. If the vehicle has an electrical control for adjusting the backrest angle, see → fig. 66 ②.

③ Adjust the seat height. Move the lever several times up or down.

④ Move the front seat forward or back. Pull the lever up and move the front seat. The front seat must lock in place after the lever is released! ◁

Rear seats

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

Improper adjustment of the rear seats can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Adjust the rear seats only when the vehicle is stopped, since the seat could otherwise move unexpectedly when the vehicle is moving.
- Adjust the rear seats only if no one is in the way.
- Always guide the backrest down by hand and never let it fall into place on its own.

⚠ WARNING

Some kinds of cigarette lighters can be lit unintentionally, or crushed causing a fire that can result in serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Before closing a storage compartment, always make sure that no cigarette lighter can be activated, crushed, or otherwise damaged.
- Never leave a cigarette lighter in a storage compartment, on the instrument panel, or in other places in the vehicle. Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. High temperatures could cause the cigarette lighter to catch fire.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Sharp-edged objects and items on clothing and belts (such as belt clips, mobile phone cases, zippers, rivets, and rhinestones) can damage upholstery material and fabric trim.

- To help prevent damage, do not let such items come into direct contact with the upholstery and fabric trim. ◁

Folding the rear seat backrest forward and back into place

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 106.

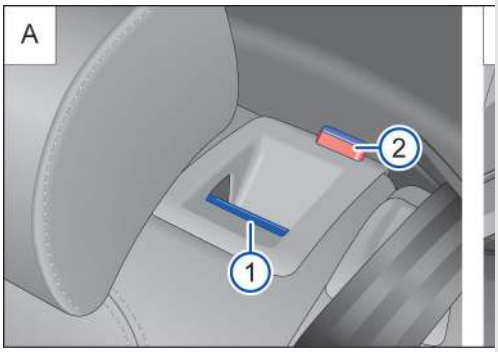


Fig. 69 A: Rear seat backrest: Release button (1) and red mark on the indicator (2). B: Seat backrest folded forward.

The rear seat backrest is divided into two sections. Each section of the rear seat backrest can be folded down individually to increase luggage space.

Folding the rear seat backrest forward

— Push the head restraints as far down as they will go → page 107, *Head restraints*.

— Pull the release button → fig. 69 (1) forward to release the rear seat backrest.

— Fold the rear seat backrest forward.

The rear seat backrest is unlocked if the red mark → fig. 69 (2) can be seen on the indicator.

When the rear seat backrest is folded forward, no person or child may ride on the rear seat.

Folding the rear seat backrest back into place

— Fold the rear seat backrest back until it latches securely → ⚠. The red mark on the indicator → fig. 69 (2) should no longer be visible.

— The rear seat backrest must be securely latched into place for the safety belts on the rear seats to provide optimal protection.

⚠ WARNING

Improper folding and improper latching of the rear seat backrest can cause serious personal injury.

- Always make sure there are no people or animals in the area around the rear seat backrest when folding it forward.
- Never fold the rear seat backrest forward or back when the vehicle is moving.
- When folding the rear seat backrest into the upright position, make sure that the safety belt does not get caught or damaged.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts out of the way when folding the rear seat backrest forward or back.
- Each rear seat backrest must be securely latched in the upright position so that the safety belts on the rear seats can provide protection. This is particularly the case for the middle seat on the rear seat bench.
- If a seat is used with an unsecured backrest, the passenger will move forward together with the rear seat backrest during sudden braking, driving maneuvers, or in a collision.
- If the red mark on the indicator → fig. 69 (2) is visible, this indicates that the backrest is not latched into place. Always check to make sure that the red mark is not visible whenever the rear seat backrest is in the upright position.
- No one, including children, may ride on the rear seats if the rear seat backrest is folded down or not correctly latched.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Objects in the footwell, on, or under the rear seats may be damaged when the backrest is folded forward and back. Always remove objects before folding the backrest forward.
- Before folding the rear seat backrest forward, adjust the front seats so that the rear seat's head restraint or backrest cushion will not touch the front seats. ◁

Head restraints

Introduction

All seats are equipped with head restraints.

There are notches in the head restraint guide rods so that the head restraint can lock into place in different positions. Only properly installed head restraints can lock into place at the adjustment range notches. In order to help prevent inadvertent removal of the head restraints after installation, there are stops at the top and bottom of the adjustment range.

5GM012723ST

Proper head restraint adjustment

Adjust head restraints so that the upper edge of the head restraint is at least at eye level or higher. Position the back of the head as close as possible to the head restraint.

Adjusting the head restraint for shorter people

Push the head restraint down as far as it will go, even if this means the person's head is still below the top edge of the head restraint. A small gap may remain between the head restraint and the backrest when the head restraint is all the way down.

Adjusting the head restraint for taller people

Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision.

- Never drive or let a passenger ride in the vehicle until the head restraints are installed and properly adjusted to help minimize the risk of neck injury in a crash.
- Each head restraint must be adjusted according to the occupants' size so that the upper edge is even with the top of the person's head, but no lower than eye level. Always sit so that the back of your head is as close as possible to the head restraint.
- Never adjust head restraints while driving.

NOTICE

When removing or reinstalling the head restraint, make sure that the head restraint does not strike the headliner or other parts of the vehicle. The headliner or other parts of the vehicle could otherwise be damaged. ◁

Adjusting the head restraints

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 107.

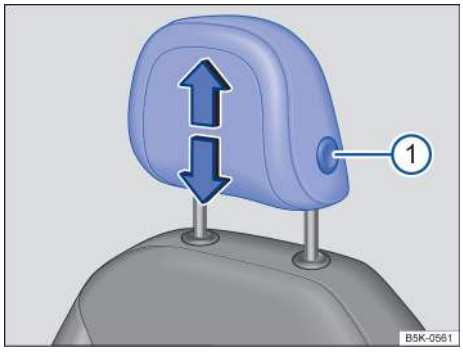


Fig. 70 Adjusting the front head restraints.

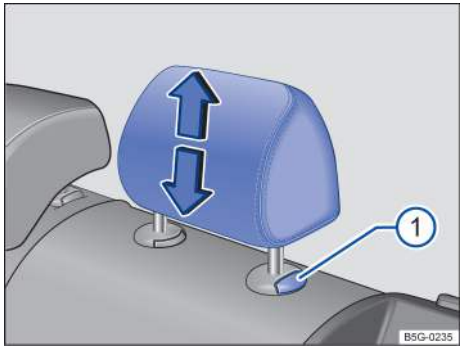


Fig. 71 Adjusting the rear head restraints.

Adjusting the height of the head restraints

— While pressing the button → fig. 70 ① or → fig. 71 ①, pull the head restraint up or push it down in the direction of the arrow → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 108.

— The head restraint must lock securely in position. ◁

Removing and reinstalling the head restraints

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 107.

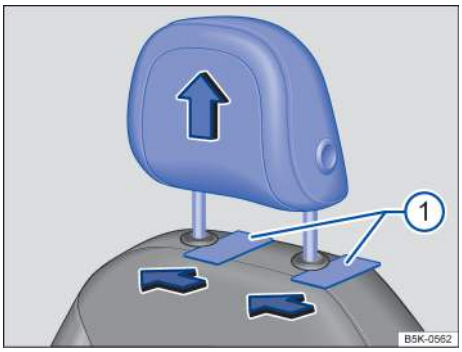


Fig. 72 Removing the front head restraints.

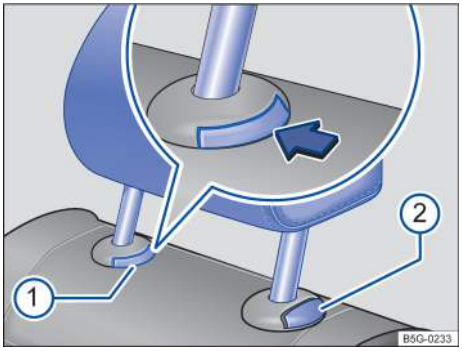


Fig. 73 Removing the rear head restraints.

Removing the front head restraints

— Sit in the back seat behind the head restraint you want to remove.

— Push the head restraint all the way down → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 108. Recline the backrest with the head restraint so that there is enough overhead clearance to remove it.

— Slide a flat object, such as a plastic credit card, underneath the right side of the cap (left side if sitting behind the head restraint) on the right-hand seat guide rod → fig. 72 ① to unlock the head restraint.

— Push the flat object (plastic card) in against the guide rod to depress a release button located under the cap (not visible).

— Use one hand to hold the release button in with the flat object. With your other hand, lift the same guide rod slightly to expose a notch in the rod at the bottom (can be seen and felt with fingers). The right-hand guide rod is now released.

— To release the left-hand guide rod, press the flat object in (towards guide rod) and hold.

— Pull the head restraint out completely.

Reinstalling the front head restraints

— Position the head restraint properly over the head restraint guides of the respective seat backrest and insert the head restraint rods into the guides.

— Push the head restraint down.

— Adjust the head restraint according to the occupant's size → page 107, *Head restraints*.

Removing the rear head restraints

— Unlock the backrest of the rear seat bench and fold it forward → page 107, *Folding the rear seat backrest forward and back into place*.

— Pull the head restraint all the way up → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 108.

— Push button → fig. 73 ① in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position.

— At the same time press button ② while a second person pulls out the head restraint completely.

— Fold the backrest of the rear seat bench back so that it locks securely.

Reinstalling the rear head restraints

The rear center head restraint is designed only for the center seat on the rear bench. Therefore, only install the center head restraint in the center position.

— Unlock the backrest of the rear seat bench and fold it forward → page 107, *Folding the rear seat backrest forward and back into place*.

— Position the head restraint properly over the head restraint guides of the respective seat backrest and insert the head restraint rods into the guides.

— Push the head restraint down while pressing button → fig. 73 ②.

— Fold the backrest of the rear seat bench back so that it locks securely.

— Adjust the head restraint according to the occupant's size → page 107, *Head restraints*. ◁

5GM012723ST

Seat functions

Introduction

WARNING

Improper use of seat adjustment controls can cause severe personal injuries.

- Always sit properly at all times before starting to drive and while the vehicle is moving. Make sure all passengers, especially children, are properly seated whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from moving parts and adjustment areas of the seats.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Center armrests

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 110.

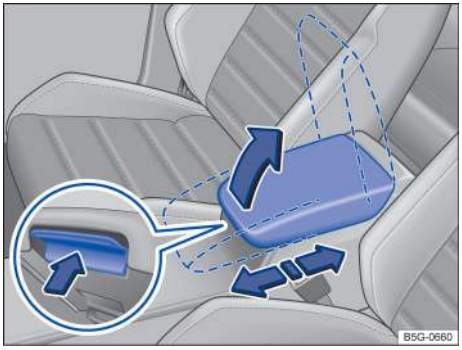


Fig. 74 Front center armrest.

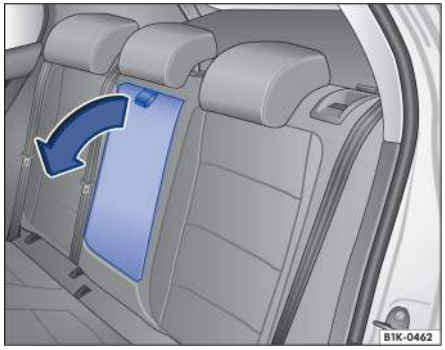


Fig. 75 Folding down the rear center armrest (arrow).

Front center armrest

There may be a storage compartment between the front seats → page 196, *Storage areas*.

— To adjust the height of the center armrest, push the release button (magnified view), and *lift* the center armrest up to a comfortable position in the direction of the large arrow → fig. 74.

— To *lower* the center armrest, first lift it all the way up. Then you can push the center armrest all the way down until it latches in place.

— To *move* the center armrest forward and backward, pull it forward in the direction of the small arrow, or slide it backward until it clicks into place.

Rear center armrest

There may be a fold-down armrest in the backrest of the center rear seat → fig. 75.

— To *fold down*, pull the loop in the direction of the arrow → fig. 75.

— To *fold up*, push the center armrest up as far as it will go.

WARNING

When completely open or improperly adjusted, the center armrest can restrict the driver's arm movement and cause crashes and serious personal injury.

- Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.
- Never let a passenger, especially a child, ride on the center armrest. Improper seating position can increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.
- Never put hot drinks or other liquids in the cup holders without secure lids on the beverage containers. Liquids can spill when the vehicle is

moving as well as during braking or other sudden maneuvers. ◁

5GM012723ST

Lights

Turn signals

Switching turn signals on and off

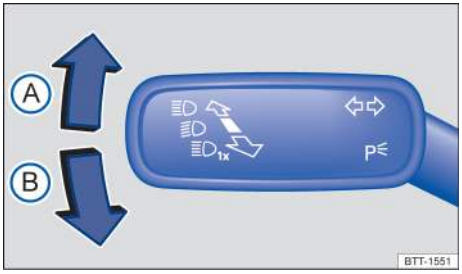


Fig. 76 To the left of the steering wheel: Turn signal and high beam lever.

— Switch on the ignition.

— Move the turn signal and high beam lever → fig. 76 to position:

Ⓐ Right turn signal ⇨.

Ⓑ Left turn signal ⇦.

— Move the lever back to the home position to switch the turn signal off.

If you do not hear an acoustic sound when the turn signal is switched on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

3-blink turn signal (convenience indicating)

Move the turn signal lever up or down slightly, just to the point of resistance, and then let it go. If you have the 3-blink turn signal (convenience indicating) feature switched on in the Infotainment system, the turn signal flashes three times.

To cancel convenience indicating before the turn signal flashes three times, immediately move the turn signal lever in the opposite direction to the point of resistance and release it.

If the feature is switched off, the turn signal will blink as long as you hold the lever up or down, and go out when you release the lever.

The 3-blink turn signal (convenience indicating) can be switched on and off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

⚠ WARNING

Using the turn signals improperly, not using the turn signals, or forgetting to turn off the turn signals can confuse other drivers and lead to an accident and serious personal injury.

- Always use a turn signal before changing lanes, overtaking another vehicle, or turning.
- Turn off the turn signal after changing lanes, overtaking another vehicle, or turning.

The turn signals work only when the ignition is switched on. The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is switched off → page 85, *Protecting yourself and the vehicle*.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Vehicle lighting

Switching lights on and off

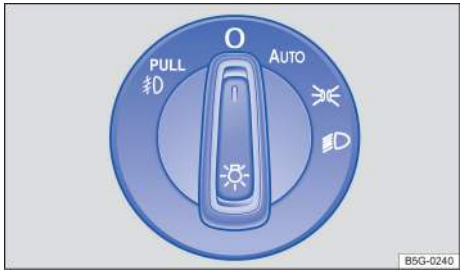


Fig. 77 Headlight switch next to the steering wheel (with fog lights and automatic headlights, if equipped).

Always obey local vehicle lighting laws.

The driver is always responsible for the correct headlight settings.

Switching lights on

— Switch on the ignition.

— Turn the light switch to the appropriate position:

AUTO The automatic headlights or the daytime running lights (DRL) are switched on → ⚠. See → page 113, *Lights – features*.

Parking lights and taillights switched on. The symbol in the light switch lights up green.

Headlights and taillights switched on.

For information on fog lights, see → page 113, *Switching the fog lights on and off*.

Switching lights off

— Switch off the ignition.

— Turn the light switch to the **0** position to switch all lights completely off.

— When the ignition is off, some lights may stay on depending on the position of the light switch:

0 The lights are switched off.

AUTO Coming Home and Leaving Home features (orientation lighting) may be switched on.

Parking lights and taillights switched on.

Low beams switched off. The parking lights and taillights will stay on as long as the key is in the ignition, or for vehicles with Keyless Access, the driver door is closed.

Daytime running lights (DRL)

The daytime running lights can help to increase the visibility of your vehicle during the day.

Separate lamps or LEDs are installed in the headlights or in the front bumper for the daytime running lights (DRL).

The daytime running lights switch on whenever the ignition is switched on and the light switch is in position **0**, **AUTO**, or .

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the low-light sensor switches the low beams as well as the instrument and switch lighting on and off automatically.

Daytime running lights (DRL) parking feature

In some models, you can switch off the daytime running lights (DRL) while parked.

Function	Action
Switching the DRL off:	– Switch the ignition on. – Turn the light switch to the **0** position. – Set the parking brake.
Switching the DRL back on:	– Release the parking brake.

WARNING

Crashes and other accidents can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists. Daytime running lights and parking lights are not bright enough to let you see ahead or be seen by others when it is dark.

- Always switch on the low beam headlights at dusk, when it is dark, and whenever the weather is bad or visibility is poor.
- Never use daytime running lights (DRL) to see where you are going. DRL are not bright enough to light up the roadway and be seen by other motorists. You will not be able to see far enough ahead for safety, especially at dusk or when it is dark. Always switch on the low-beam headlights at dusk or when it is dark.
- The taillights do not come on when the daytime running lights are switched on and the headlight switch is in position **0** or **AUTO**. A vehicle without taillights on cannot be seen by others in bad weather, at dusk, or when it is dark.
- If automatic headlights (**AUTO**) are switched on, the low-beam headlights still may not be switched on in fog or heavy rain. You have to switch on the low-beam headlights yourself. ◁

Switching the fog lights on and off

If the vehicle is equipped with fog lights, you can switch on the fog lights with the light switch in the following positions: **AUTO** and → fig. 77.

— *To switch on the fog lights:* Pull the light switch out to the detent.

— *To switch off the fog lights:* Push the switch back in.

— To then turn off the headlights, turn the switch to position **0**.

The indicator light in the headlight switch shows that the fog lights are switched on.

When the automatic headlights **AUTO** and the fog lights are switched on, the low beams also switch on, whether or not the low-light sensor registers darkness. ◁

Lights – features

Parking lights

If the ignition is switched off and the vehicle is locked from the outside with the headlight switch in the position, the parking lights in both headlights come on together with both taillights.

If the vehicle is not locked from the outside when the ignition is switched off, the continuous parking lights on both sides of the vehicle will turn on automatically after approximately 10 minutes to reduce the load on the 12 V vehicle battery

Automatic headlights (AUTO)

Your vehicle may be equipped with automatic headlights (**AUTO**), which are a convenience feature only

5GM012723ST

and cannot always recognize all lighting and driving situations.

If the light switch is in the **AUTO** position, both vehicle lighting and instrument and switch lighting are automatically switched on and off in the following situations → ⚠ in *Switching lights on and off* on page 113:

— *Automatic activation:* If the low-light sensor registers darkness, for example, when driving through a tunnel or at dusk **OR** when the rain sensor recognizes rain and switches the windshield wipers on.

— *Automatic deactivation:* If sufficient brightness is registered **OR** the windshield wipers have not moved for several minutes.

You can adjust the level of darkness the vehicle must register before automatically switching on the headlights in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*. You can also turn the automatic activation of the headlights with the rain sensors on and off via this menu.

Cornering lights

Your vehicle may have cornering lights, which are either integrated into the headlights or the fog lights under the front bumper. At speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h), the cornering light on one side of the vehicle will come on automatically when you turn a corner. If you turn to the right, the right cornering light comes on; turn left and the left cornering light comes on. The light dims and goes out when the steering wheel is straightened out again.

When you move the selector lever to reverse **(R)**, the cornering lights on both sides of the vehicle may come on so that you can see the area around the vehicle better when backing up.

The cornering lights work only when the headlights are on. If you are using automatic headlights (headlight switch in the **AUTO** position → page 112, *Switching lights on and off*), they work only when the headlights have been automatically switched on. The cornering lights do not come on when the headlight switch is in the **0** position.

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)

Some vehicles equipped with LED headlights also have an Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS), which works only when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position and only at speeds above about 6 mph (10 km/h). The swivel-mounted lamps automatically help improve road illumination during cornering.

In vehicles with Driving Mode Selection, the selected driving mode can affect the turning of the lights. For example, in the **Eco** driving mode, the AFS is deactivated → page 157, *Driving Mode Selection*.

In some models, the headlights will turn independently, even when driving straight ahead. They can adjust automatically, depending on the weather conditions and the speed of the vehicle to better light up the road ahead. The bulbs return to their original position after a short period of time, depending on the vehicle speed.

On vehicles equipped with AFS, the feature can be switched on and off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Acoustic warning when lights are not switched off

In the following situation, a warning chime will sound if you switch off the ignition and open the driver door. This is to remind you that lights are still on.

— Light switch in position ≡D.

NOTICE

Leaving the parking lights on when the ignition is switched off can drain the vehicle battery. ◁

Switching the continuous parking lights on both sides of the vehicle on and off

When the parking lights are switched on, both headlights will turn on as well as sections of the taillights.

Switching on the continuous parking lights on both sides of the vehicle:

— When the ignition is switched on, turn the light switch to the ≡D position.

— Switch the ignition off.

— Lock the vehicle from the outside.

Automatic parking light deactivation

The vehicle detects that the 12-volt vehicle battery is low and switches off the parking lights or continuous parking lights early enough to ensure that the engine can still be started, but not until at least two hours have passed.

If the battery does not have enough capacity for the parking lights to run for two hours, the 12-volt vehicle battery may drain enough that the engine is no longer able to start.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is stopped without enough lighting so that the vehicle cannot be seen or is difficult for others on the road to see, this can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always stop the vehicle safely and with enough lighting. Follow the applicable legal regulations. ◁

Coming Home and Leaving Home features (orientation lighting)

Your vehicle may be equipped with Coming Home and Leaving Home features, which light up the area around the vehicle when entering or exiting the vehicle in the dark.

The Coming Home and Leaving Home features are controlled automatically by a low-light sensor.

Switching on the Coming Home feature

— Switch off the ignition.

The Coming Home feature is switched on when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position and the low-light sensor registers *darkness*.

The Coming Home lighting switches on when the driver door is opened. The *switch-off delay period* starts once the last vehicle door or the trunk lid is closed.

Switching off the Coming Home feature

— The Coming Home feature switches off automatically after the preset delay period is over.

— **OR** If a vehicle door or the trunk lid is still open about 30 seconds after activation.

— **OR** The light switch is turned to the **0** position.

— **OR** The ignition is switched on.

Switching on the Leaving Home feature

— Unlock the vehicle.

The Leaving Home feature is switched on when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position and the low-light sensor registers *darkness*.

Switching off the Leaving Home feature

— The Leaving Home feature switches off automatically after the preset delay period is over.

— **OR** When the vehicle is locked.

— **OR** The light switch is turned to the **0** position.

— **OR** The ignition is switched on.

The length of time the lights stay on can be adjusted or the feature can be activated and deactivated in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

If the Coming Home feature is switched on and the driver door is opened, no warning chime will sound to alert you that the lights are still on. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

Vehicle lighting not working

The yellow indicator light comes on.

Light bulb of the exterior vehicle lighting not working.

— See an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop to replace the light bulb that isn't working.

Rain and light sensor malfunction

The yellow indicator light comes on.

The headlights will not switch on or off automatically when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position → page 120, *Rain sensor*.

— Switch the ignition off and back on.

— If the indicator light comes on again and stays on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The turn signal indicator light blinks twice as fast

The green indicator light blinks twice as fast if a turn signal is not working on the vehicle.

— Check the turn signals on the vehicle.

If the headlights are not properly adjusted

The headlight range cannot be manually adjusted. If you believe the headlights are not properly adjusted or are not sure, have them checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights or other warnings can result in a collision and serious personal injury.

5GM012723ST

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, turn on the emergency flashers, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.
- Never park the vehicle in areas where the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system could come into contact with dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, oil, or other material that can catch fire.
- A broken-down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.

WARNING

Headlights that are aimed too high because of the way the vehicle is loaded can blind and distract other drivers. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure the headlights are adjusted to loading conditions so that they do not blind others.

WARNING

If the automatic leveling feature of the headlights does not work properly or at all, the headlights could blind and distract other drivers. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.

- Have headlight range adjustment checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

In cool or humid weather, the insides of the headlights, the rear lights, and turn signals can temporarily fog up. This is normal and does not affect the service life of the vehicle's lighting system. ◁

High beams

Switching high beams on and off

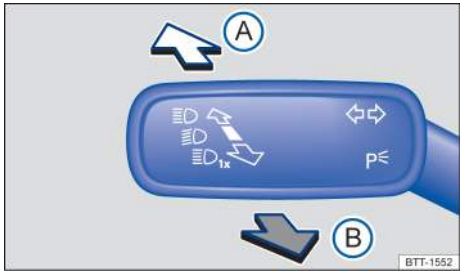


Fig. 78 To the left of the steering wheel: Turn signal and high beam lever.

— Switch on the ignition.

— Switch on the headlights.

— Move the turn signal and high beam lever from the center position to the following position → fig. 78:

Ⓐ High beams switched on.

Ⓑ Operate the headlight flasher or switch off the high beams. The *headlight flasher* turns on the high beams as long as the lever is pulled and manually held in the pulled position.

When the high beams or headlight flasher is switched on, the blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

High-beam control (Light Assist)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Light Assist automatic high beam control system → page 116, *High-beam control (Light Assist)*.

WARNING

Improper use of high beams can distract and blind others, causing accidents and serious injuries. ◁

High-beam control (Light Assist)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Light Assist automatic high beam control system.

Light Assist high beam control

Light Assist switches the high beam headlights on at speeds above about 37 mph (60 km/h), depending on the surroundings and traffic conditions, and off again at speeds below about 18 mph (30 km/h),

within the limits of the system → ⚠. The system is controlled by a camera mounted in the rearview mirror base.

Light Assist generally detects well-lit areas such as towns and switches the high beam headlights off when driving through these areas.

Switching Light Assist on

— Switch the ignition on and turn the light switch to the **AUTO** position.

— Push the turn signal lever forward (out of the home position) → page 116, *Switching high beams on and off*.

When Light Assist is switched on, the indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display. When the high beams are switched on, the blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

Switching Light Assist off

— When the high beam headlights are on, pull the turn signal lever back to the home position.

— **OR:** Turn the light switch to a position **other than AUTO**.

— **OR:** When the high beam headlights are **not** on, push the turn signal lever forward to switch the high beam headlights on manually. Light Assist switches off.

— **OR:** Switch the ignition off.

Adjusting Light Assist sensitivity

Light Assist has two sensitivity levels.

— *Increase sensitivity:* Push the turn signal forward from the home position and hold for about 15 seconds. The indicator light in the instrument cluster display flashes 3 times to confirm the increased sensitivity level.

— *Reset sensitivity to the factory setting:* Push the turn signal lever forward from the home position a second time and hold for about 15 seconds. The indicator light in the instrument cluster display flashes (quickly) 3 times. **OR:** Turn the ignition off and back on again.

Light Assist system limits

The following conditions can prevent Light Assist from switching the high beam headlights off in time or from switching them off at all:

— Poorly lit roads with highly reflective signs.

— If there are others on the road with insufficient lighting, such as pedestrians or bicycles.

— In tight curves, when traffic is partially hidden, on steep hills, or in valleys.

— On roads with a center barrier where the driver can clearly see oncoming traffic above the barrier, for example, a truck driver.

— In fog, snow, or heavy rain.

— When there is dust or sand in the air.

— If the windshield is damaged in the area of the camera.

— If the camera's visual field is fogged over, dirty, or covered by a sticker, snow, or ice.

— If the camera is not working properly or the power is interrupted.

⚠ WARNING

Never let the increased convenience provided by Light Assist tempt you into taking extra risks. The system is not a substitute for careful and attentive driving.

- Always be prepared to control the headlights yourself and to adapt them to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Light Assist may not detect all traffic situations correctly and function may be restricted in certain situations.
- If the camera's area of view is dirty, covered, or damaged, Light Assist may not work properly. Changes to the vehicle lighting system, such as by adding additional headlights, can also change the way the systems work.

NOTICE

To help the Light Assist system function properly, note the following:

- Always keep the windshield in front of the camera clean and free of snow and ice; do not cover the camera's field of view.
- Check the windshield for damage in the area of the camera.

The illuminated display on an electronic device, for example, an external navigation device, may prevent the Light Assist system from functioning properly. ◁

5GM012723ST

Interior lighting

Instrument panel and switch lighting

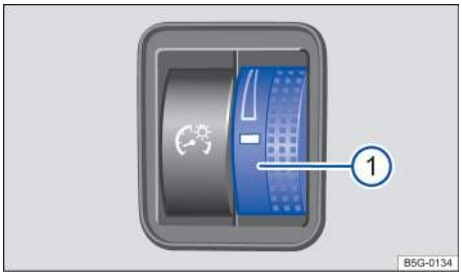


Fig. 79 To the left of the steering wheel: Thumbwheel to adjust instrument panel lighting (1).

Instrument cluster and switch brightness

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument cluster and switch lighting by turning the thumbwheel → fig. 79 (1).

On appropriately equipped vehicles, you can also adjust other interior lights in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

The brightness of the instrument panel lighting changes in response to a change in lighting around the vehicle, for example, when driving through a tunnel.

The instrument cluster lighting is on when the lights are turned off and the ignition is on. As the lighting around the vehicle fades, the instrument cluster lighting will also fade and eventually turn off. This is to remind the driver to turn on the low beams. ◁

Interior and reading lights

REAR Rear interior lights on.

Press the button to turn the door contact feature on and off. When the feature is switched on, the interior lights come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or a door is opened. The lights go out about 20 seconds after you close the doors; they also go out when you lock the vehicle or switch on the ignition.

Reading lights on or off.

Glove and luggage compartment lights

The glove and luggage compartments may have lights that come on automatically when they are opened and go off when they are closed.

Ambient (background) lighting

Depending on vehicle equipment, your vehicle may have ambient lighting in the doors and footwells, which comes on when the ignition and the headlights are switched on.

On appropriately equipped vehicles, you can adjust the brightness of the ambient lighting in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

The interior and reading lights go out when you lock the vehicle or a few minutes after you remove the vehicle key from the ignition. This helps to prevent unnecessary drain on the vehicle battery. ◁

Vision

Windshield wipers and washer

Windshield wiper lever

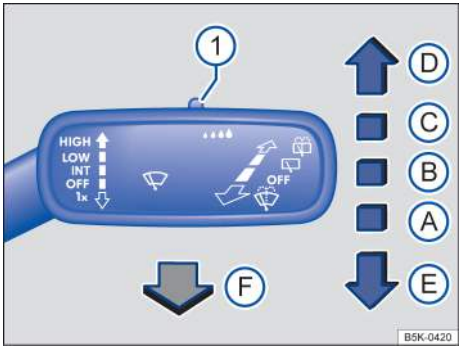


Fig. 80 Operating the front windshield wipers.

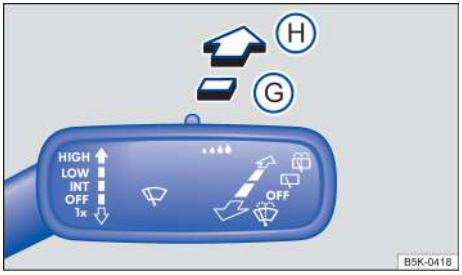


Fig. 81 Operating the rear wiper.

The windshield wipers work only if the ignition is switched on and the engine hood is closed.

Move the lever to the desired position → fig. 80 , → ⓘ:

Ⓐ **OFF** Wiper switched off.

Ⓑ **INT** Intermittent wiping for the front windshield. Rain sensor active (if equipped).

Ⓒ **LOW** Slow wiper speed.

Ⓓ **HIGH** Fast wiper speed.

Ⓔ **1x** One-tap wiping – brief wiping. Hold the lever down longer to wipe more often.

Ⓕ Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to activate the front windshield washers, then release.

① Switch for adjusting the windshield wiper interval settings (vehicles without a rain sensor) or the sensitivity of the rain sensor (vehicles with a rain sensor).

Move the lever to the desired position → fig. 81 , → ⓘ:

Ⓖ Intermittent wiping for the rear window. The wiper wipes about every 6 seconds.

Ⓗ Press the lever forward as far as it will go to activate the rear window washers, then release to stay in intermittent wiping mode (position Ⓖ). Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to turn the rear wiper off.

If the front wipers are on, the rear wiper switches on automatically when backing up.

— This feature can be turned on and off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

WARNING

Windshield washer fluid without enough frost protection can freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.

- Use the windshield washer system with enough frost protection for winter temperatures.
- Never use the windshield wipers/washers when it is freezing without first defrosting the windshield. The washer solution may freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.

WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always replace wiper blades that are worn, damaged, or do not keep the windshield clear → page 228, *Windshield wiper blades*.

NOTICE

To help prevent damage to the wiper blades and the wiper motor when it is cold outside, always make sure that blades are not frozen to the windshield before switching on the ignition. Using the service position can be helpful in cold weather so the wipers do not freeze to the windshield → page 228, *Windshield wiper service position*.

- If the ignition is switched off while the wipers are running, the wipers will continue at the same wiping speed when the ignition is switched on again. Frost, ice, snow, leaves, and other objects on the windshield can damage the wipers and the wiper motor.
- Remove snow and ice from the wipers before you begin driving.

- If the wiper blades freeze to the windshield, loosen them carefully. Volkswagen recommends using a deicing spray.

NOTICE

Never switch on the windshield wipers when the windshield is dry because the windshield can be scratched.

When the vehicle is not moving, the wiper speed changes temporarily to the next lower speed.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Windshield wiper functions

Heated washer nozzles (if equipped)

When the ignition is switched on, the heat applied to the washer nozzles is automatically regulated depending on the outside air temperature. The heating thaws frozen washer nozzles, but not the fluid supply hoses.

Wiper performance during intermittent wiping

Speed-dependent interval control: The higher the vehicle speed, the faster the wipers move. ◁

Rain sensor

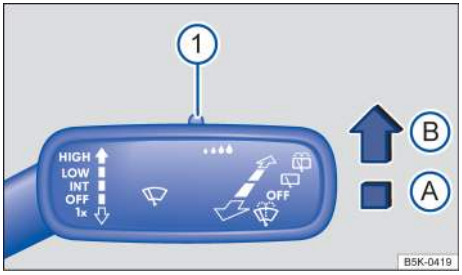


Fig. 82 Windshield wiper lever: Adjusting the rain sensor (1) (if equipped).

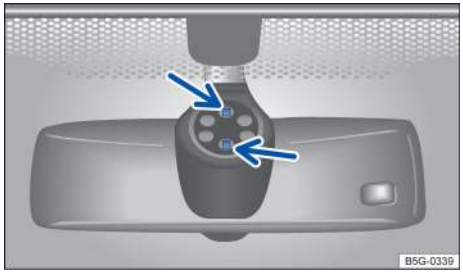


Fig. 83 Inside the front windshield above the inside mirror: Sensitive rain sensor surface (arrows).

When switched on, the rain sensor automatically shortens or lengthens the time between wiping intervals depending on how hard it is raining → ⚠.

Activating and deactivating the rain sensor

Push the lever to the desired position → fig. 82:

- Position (A): Rain sensor off (windshield wiper lever home position).
- Position (B): Rain sensor active - automatic wiping as needed.

After switching the ignition off and back on again, the rain sensor stays on and works again when the wiper lever is in position (B).

The automatic wipe function of the rain sensor can be turned on and off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*. ◁

Setting the rain sensor's sensitivity

The rain sensor's sensitivity can be adjusted manually → fig. 82 (1), → ⚠.

- Move switch to the right – high sensitivity.
- Move switch to the left – low sensitivity.

WARNING

The rain sensor cannot always recognize rain and activate the wipers.

- Switch the wipers on manually when water on the windshield reduces visibility. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

Windshield washer fluid level too low

Your vehicle may be equipped with a yellow indicator light that comes on when the windshield washer fluid level is low.

Refill windshield washer reservoir at the next opportunity → page 245, *Windshield washer fluid*.

Rain and light sensor malfunction

The wipers do not switch on automatically if it rains, and the yellow indicator light comes on.

— Switch the ignition off and on again.

— If the indicator light comes on again and stays on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility → page 120, *Rain sensor*.

Windshield wiper malfunction

The wipers do not wipe and the yellow indicator light comes on.

— Switch the ignition off and on again.

— If the indicator light comes on again and stays on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility → page 120, *Rain sensor*.

If there are changes in the way the rain sensor works

The rain sensor may misread what is happening in the *detection zone of its sensitive rain-sensor surface* → fig. 83 (arrows) and not work for a number of reasons, which may include:

— **Worn out wiper blades:** Worn out wiper blades may leave a film of water or wiping streaks; this can cause the wipers to run longer, to wipe more often, or to wipe continuously at high speed.

— **Insects:** Insects hitting the windshield may trigger the wipers.

— **Salt streaks:** Salt streaks on the windshield from winter driving can cause wiping more often or continuously on glass that is almost dry.

— **Dirt:** Caked-on dust, wax, any other buildup on the windshield (lotus effect), or car-wash detergent residue can lower the rain sensor's sensitivity and cause it to react too slowly or not at all. Clean the rain sensor's sensitive surface → fig. 83 (arrows) regularly and check the wiper blades for wear or damage.

— **Crack or chip in the windshield:** If a stone hits and chips the windshield while the rain sensor is on, this will trigger a wiper cycle. After that, the rain sensor will recognize the change and recalibrate itself to respond to the sensitive surface's reduced detection zone. Depending on the size of the chip, the sensor's reaction pattern may or may not change.

To remove wax and coats of polish safely, Volkswagen recommends using an alcohol-based windshield cleaner.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights or other warnings can result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

If there is something on the windshield, the wiper will try to wipe it away. If it continues to block the wiper, the wiper will stop moving. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper on again. ◁

Mirrors

Introduction

The outside mirrors and the inside mirror help you see and adapt your driving to traffic behind you. Remember that the inside and outside rearview mirrors will not show everything behind you. There can be blind spots. Blind spots can be significantly larger if the mirrors are not properly adjusted.

For your driving safety, it is important that you properly adjust the outside mirrors and the inside mirror before you start driving → ⚠.

Looking in the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror does not allow the driver to see the entire side and rear area of the vehicle. The area that cannot be seen is known as the blind spot. There may be another vehicle, pedestrian, or object in the blind spot.

WARNING

Adjusting mirrors when the vehicle is moving can cause driver distraction, accidents, and serious personal injury.

- Always adjust the rearview mirrors when the vehicle is not moving.
- Always be aware of what is happening around the vehicle when changing lanes, passing, turn-

5GM012723ST

ing, or parking. Another vehicle, pedestrian, or object could be in your blind spot.

- Always make sure mirrors are properly adjusted and the view to the rear is not reduced by moisture, ice, snow, or other things.

⚠ WARNING

Self-dimming rearview mirrors contain an electrolyte fluid which can leak if the mirror glass is broken. Electrolyte fluid can irritate the skin, eyes, and respiratory system.

- Repeated or prolonged exposure to electrolyte fluid can irritate the respiratory system, especially among people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Get fresh air immediately by leaving the vehicle or, if that is not possible, open windows and doors all the way.
- If electrolyte fluid gets into the eyes, flush them thoroughly with large amounts of clean water for at least 15 minutes; medical attention is recommended.
- If electrolyte fluid contacts skin, flush affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash affected area with soap and water; medical attention is recommended. Thoroughly wash affected clothing and shoes before reuse.
- If swallowed, and the person is conscious, rinse mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a medical professional.

! NOTICE

Broken glass in the self-dimming rearview mirrors can cause electrolyte fluid leakage. Liquid electrolyte leaked from a broken mirror glass will damage any plastic surfaces it comes in contact with. Clean up spilled electrolyte fluid immediately with clear water and a sponge.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Inside mirror

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ! on page 121.

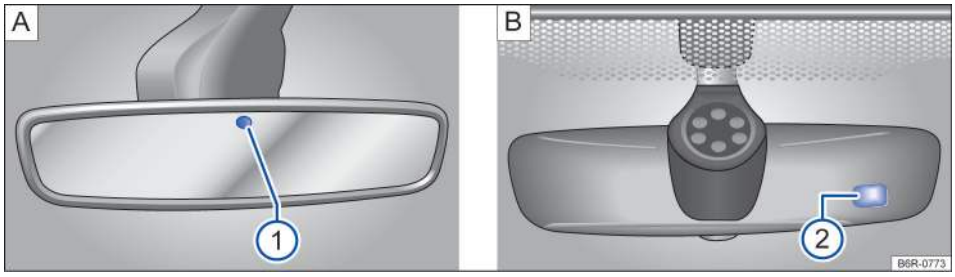


Fig. 84 On the windshield: Self-dimming rearview mirror (design may vary depending on vehicle equipment).

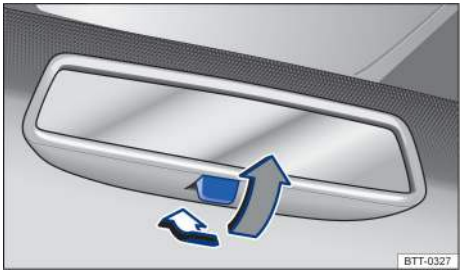


Fig. 85 On the windshield: Manually adjustable rearview mirror.

Adjust the inside mirror to make sure that there is good visibility through the rear window.

For example, visibility through the rear window could be impaired if there is a sunshade on the rear window or clothing on the luggage compartment cover, or if the rear window is covered with ice, snow, or dirt.

Self-dimming rearview mirror (if equipped)

When the ignition is switched on, the sensors on the mirror measure the amount of light shining into the vehicle from the rear → fig. 84 (1) and from the front → fig. 84 (2) of the vehicle.

If the ignition is on, the mirror *automatically* darkens depending on the amount of light shining into the vehicle.

If the light striking the sensor is filtered or blocked (such as by a sunshade), the self-dimming inside mirror will not work properly or may not work at all. Do not attach external navigation devices to the windshield or in the vicinity of the self-dimming inside mirror as these devices can also influence the sensors → ⚠.

The self-dimming feature is deactivated when you shift the transmission to reverse or switch on the interior lights or the reading light.

Manually adjustable inside mirror

Home position: Lever on the bottom edge of the mirror points forward.

To adjust to non-glare visibility, move the lever so that it points down → fig. 85.

⚠ WARNING

The illuminated display on an electronic device, for example, an external navigation device, may disrupt the self-dimming function of the rearview mirror, which may cause a crash and serious injuries.

- If the self-dimming function malfunctions, you may not be able to use the rearview mirror to help judge the distance between traffic or other objects behind you.

Outside mirrors

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 121.

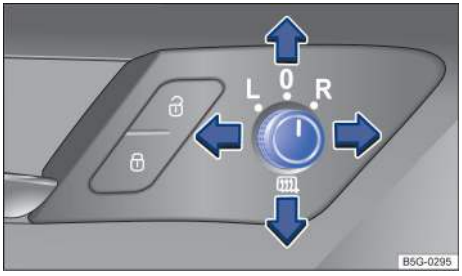


Fig. 86 In the driver door: Adjusting knob for the outside mirrors.

Adjusting the outside mirrors

— Switch on the ignition.

— Turn the rotary knob in the driver door → fig. 86 to the desired position:

	Switch on outside mirror heating. Heats only at outside air temperatures below +68 °F (+20 °C). Outside mirror heating works with maximum heat for about 2 minutes.
L	Adjust the left outside mirror by pressing the knob to left/right and up/down.
R	Adjust the right outside mirror by pressing the knob to left/right and up/down.
0	Neutral position. No heating or adjustment possible.

Activating the exterior mirror features

Some exterior mirror features can be switched on and off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment

5GM012723ST

system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*:

Synchronous mirror adjustment (if equipped)

The synchronous mirror adjustment feature simultaneously adjusts the right outside mirror when the left outside mirror is adjusted.

— Turn on the synchronous mirror adjustment feature in the Infotainment system, if necessary.

— Turn the outside mirror adjusting knob to the **L** position.

— Adjust the left outside mirror. The right (passenger) outside mirror will automatically adjust at the same time.

— If needed, correct the position of the right mirror by turning the adjusting knob to the **R** position.

Self-dimming outside mirror on the driver side (if equipped)

The self-dimming outside mirror on the driver side works automatically with the self-dimming inside mirror → page 122, *Inside mirror*.

WARNING

Improper use of the folding outside mirrors can cause personal injury.

- Always make sure that nobody is in the way when folding the mirrors in or out.
- Make sure that you do not get your finger caught between the mirror and the mirror base when moving the mirrors.

WARNING

Incorrectly estimating distances with the right outside mirror can cause collisions and serious injury.

- The right outside mirror has a convex (curved) surface. This widens your field of vision. But vehicles or other objects seen in a convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are.
- If you use the right outside mirror to judge distances from vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause a crash and serious injuries.
- Whenever possible, use the inside mirror to more accurately judge distance and size of vehicles or other objects seen in the convex mirror.
- Always make sure you have a clear view to the rear of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Always fold in the outside mirrors when taking the vehicle through an automatic car wash.

To help reduce fuel consumption, use outside mirror heating only when needed.

If power mirror adjustment does not work, the outside mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edges of the mirror surface. ◁

Sun protection

Sun visors

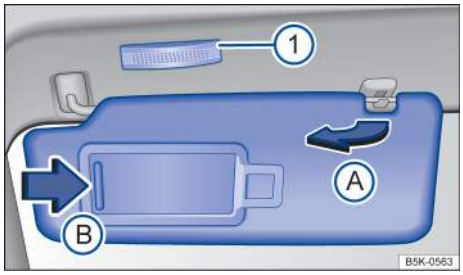


Fig. 87 Sun visor.

Adjusting the sun visors

— Flip the sun visor down toward the windshield.

— Lift the sun visor out of the retaining clip → fig. 87 Ⓐ.

— Swivel the sun visor toward the door.

On some vehicles, you can slide the sun visor toward the rear of the vehicle after swiveling it toward the door.

Vanity mirror and lighting

A vanity mirror is behind a cover in the sun visor. When you slide the cover open → fig. 87 Ⓑ, the light → fig. 87 ① comes on.

The light goes out in the following situations:

— The cover is pushed closed.

— The sun visor is flipped up again.

— The sun visor is moved lengthwise or is not fully pushed in.

WARNING

Sun visors and sunshades can reduce visibility.

- Always stow sun visors and sunshades when not needed to block sun glare.

The vanity mirror light goes out after several minutes. This helps to prevent unnecessary drain on the vehicle battery. ◁

5GM012723ST

Climate control

Heating and air conditioning

Introduction

Your vehicle may have the following equipment:

— Manual air conditioning

— Climatronic

The **manual air conditioning** and the **Climatronic** climate control system help to cool and dehumidify the air. The systems are most effective when the windows and sunroof are closed.

On vehicles with Climatronic climate control, Climatronic information appears in the Climatronic display and/or on the screen of the factory-installed Infotainment system. If the box in the function key is checked ☑, the function is switched on.

Air vents

To help ensure sufficient heating, cooling, and ventilation in the passenger compartment, never close the air vents completely → page 9, *Driver side overview*.

— To open and close the air vents, turn the respective thumbwheel in the desired direction. When the thumbwheel is turned all the way toward position ▶, the air vent is closed.

— Use the lever on the vent grille to adjust the airflow direction.

Additional air vents are in the instrument panel, in the footwells, as well as in the rear area of the passenger compartment.

Some models also have an adjustable air vent inside the glove compartment → page 197, *Glove compartment*.

Dust and pollen filter

The dust and pollen filter reduces the entry of pollutants into the passenger compartment.

The dust and pollen filter must be replaced at the intervals recommended in → *Warranty and Maintenance* so that the air conditioner can work properly.

If the effectiveness of the filter decreases prematurely due to operating the vehicle where the outside air is heavily polluted, the dust and pollen filter should be replaced more frequently than indicated.

⚠ WARNING

Poor visibility increases the risk of collisions and other accidents that cause serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure all windows are clear of ice, snow and condensation for good visibility to the front, sides, and rear.
- Always make sure you know how to properly use the climate control system as well as the rear window defroster that you will need for good visibility.
- Wait until you have good visibility before driving off.
- Never use air recirculation for long periods of time. When the air conditioner is off and recirculation mode is on, condensation can quickly form on the windows and greatly reduce visibility.
- Always switch off recirculation mode when it is not needed.

⚠ WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces driver alertness, which can cause accidents, collisions and serious personal injury.

- Never switch off the fan for a long period of time and never use air recirculation for a long period of time because no fresh air will enter the passenger compartment.

NOTICE

- If you think the air conditioner is not working properly or may be damaged, switch it off to help prevent more damage. Have the air conditioner checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Air conditioner repair requires specialized knowledge and special tools. Volkswagen recommends that you see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Do not smoke when air recirculation is switched on. Smoke drawn into the ventilation system can leave residue on the evaporator and on the dust and pollen filter, resulting in permanent odors whenever the air conditioner is switched on.
- The heating elements for the rear defroster are on the inside of the rear window. Do not put stickers over the heating elements on the inside of the rear window and never clean the inside of the windows with corrosive, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents, materials, or chemicals that could damage the heating elements.

NOTICE

Do not place food, medications, or other temperature-sensitive things in front of the air vents. Food, medications, and other things that are sensitive to

heat or cold can be damaged or made unusable by the air flow from the vents.

The air coming out of the vents flows through the passenger compartment and through the air vents in the luggage compartment. Do not cover these slots with clothing or other things.

If the air conditioner is switched off, the fresh outside air will not be dehumidified. To help keep the windows from fogging over, Volkswagen recommends leaving the air conditioner (compressor) switched on. Press the A/C button. The indicator light in the button must light up.

When it is very hot and humid outside, **water condensation** can drip from the air conditioner evaporator and form a puddle under the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

Keep the air intake slots in front of the windshield free of ice, snow, and leaves in order to maintain proper functioning of the heating and ventilation systems.

Maximum heating output and defrosting performance are not possible until the engine has reached operating temperature.

Emergency starting and starting the engine with a very weak vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, driver personalization, and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Overview of the climate controls

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 126.

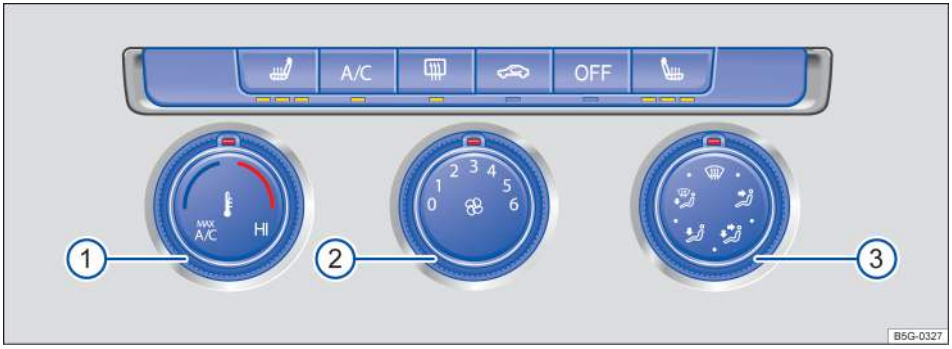


Fig. 88 In the center console: Manual controls.

5GM012723ST

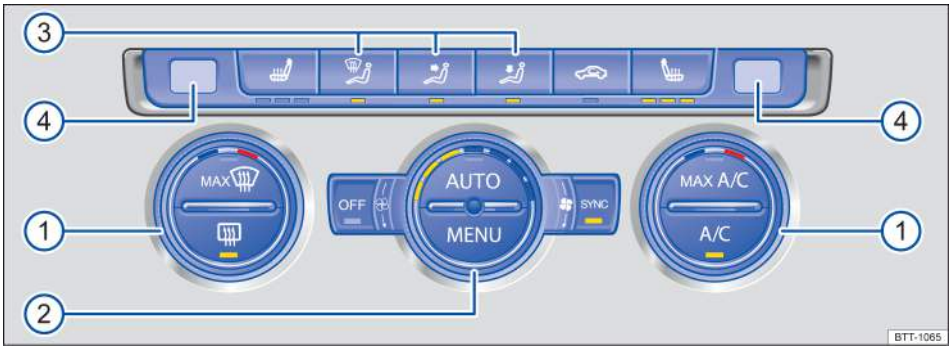


Fig. 89 In the center console: Climatronic controls.

If a function is switched on, an indicator light in or under the button lights up.

MENU – Settings in the Infotainment system (Climatronic only)

Press the MENU button in the Climatronic controls to open the air conditioning settings in the Infotainment system. Tap the corresponding function key to switch a function on or off, or to select a submenu.

The current air conditioning settings are displayed in the upper section of the screen, for example, the temperatures that are currently set for the driver and passenger sides. Blue arrows indicate that cool air is flowing from the vents, while red arrows indicate that warm air is flowing from the vents.

The following menu items may be available, depending on vehicle equipment.

General settings submenu:

— Tap the function key to set the air recirculation mode, depending on equipment.

Climate control settings submenu:

— Tap the function key to access options for adjusting the fan speed, switching the air conditioner on and off (**A/C**), adjusting the air distribution, and switching air recirculation mode on or off.

Presets submenu:

— Tap the function key in the upper left corner to access the **Presets** submenu, which includes options for automatic temperature control (**AUTO**), maximum air conditioner cooling (**MAX A/C**), or for maximum defog/defrost (**MAX**).

Switching the system off

— Press the OFF button.

— *Manual air conditioning:* Turn the fan knob to **0** → fig. 88 (2).

— *Climatronic:* Turn the fan knob as far left as it will go → fig. 89 (2)

— **OR:** Press the MENU button on the Climatronic controls → fig. 89 (2) to open the Climatronic menu in the Infotainment system and switch the system off.

If the system is switched off, the indicator light in or under the OFF button lights up.

SYNC – Synchronizing the temperature settings (Climatronic only)

— Press the SYNC button on the Climatronic controls to apply the temperature settings for the driver side to the passenger side.

— **OR:** Press the MENU button on the Climatronic controls and tap the SYNC function key on the screen.

If the indicator light in the SYNC button lights up, the temperature settings for the driver side also apply to the passenger side. Pressing the SYNC button or turning the temperature knob on the passenger side switches the feature off. The indicator light in the button goes out.

Automatic climate control and allergen filter (if equipped)

On appropriately equipped vehicles, the automatic climate control and allergen filter can help reduce the entry of pollutants and allergens into the passenger compartment with an additional filter.

When the feature is active, the climate control system's air recirculation mode switches on to the highest level possible without the windows fogging up, depending on the interior humidity and outside temperature. The air recirculation mode is automatically regulated and features continuous adjustment to help prevent driver and passenger fatigue → page 130, *Air recirculation*.

— Press the MENU button on the Climatronic controls.

— Tap the Air Care function key on the Infotainment system screen.

— Switch the feature on and off by tapping the Active function key.

AUTO – Automatic regulation (Climatronic only)

— Press the AUTO button to switch on automatic regulation. The indicator light in the button lights up.

Automatic regulation controls temperature, fan speed, and air distribution. If you change the fan speed or air distribution manually, the automatic regulation switches off.

A/C – Air conditioner

— Press the A/C button on the manual or Climatronic controls to switch the air conditioner on or off.

— **OR** *Climatronic:* Press the MENU button in the Climatronic controls, open the climate control settings submenu, and tap the A/C function key on the Infotainment system screen.

The air is dehumidified when the air conditioner is switched on.

MAX A/C – Maximum cooling

— *Manual air conditioning:* Turn the temperature knob → fig. 88 (1) all the way to the left (MAX A/C position).

— *Climatronic:* Press the MAX A/C button for maximum air conditioner cooling. The air recirculation and cooling system are switched on automatically, and the air distribution is automatically set to position .

/ – Temperature

— *Manual air conditioning:* Turn the temperature knob → fig. 88 (1) to set the temperature.

— *Climatronic:* Turn the outside knobs → fig. 89 (1) to set different temperatures for the driver and passenger sides. The displays above the knobs (4) show the set temperature.

– Seat heating (if equipped)

— Press the or buttons to switch the seat heating on or off → page 131, *Seat heating*.

— Press the button repeatedly until the desired heating level is set.

...– Fan speed

— Turn the middle knob → fig. 88 (2) or → fig. 89 (2) to adjust the fan speed.

— **OR** *Climatronic:* Press the MENU button in the Climatronic controls, open the climate control settings submenu, and tap the function keys on the Infotainment system screen.

Climatronic: LEDs in the knob light up to indicate the current fan speed. When automatic regulation (AUTO) is switched on, the fan speed is not indicated in the knob.

– Air recirculation mode

— Press the button to switch on air recirculation → page 130, *Air recirculation*.

— **OR** *Climatronic:* Press the MENU button in the Climatronic controls, open the climate control settings submenu, and tap the function key on the Infotainment system screen.

Air distribution

— *Manual air conditioning:* Turn the knob → fig. 88 (3) to direct air flow in the desired direction.

— *Climatronic:* Press the buttons → fig. 89 (3) to direct air flow in the desired direction. When automatic regulation (AUTO) is switched on, air flow is automatically adjusted to a comfortable level. Options vary, depending on equipment:

: Air distribution to the upper instrument panel outlets.

: Air distribution to the footwells.

: *Manual air conditioning:* Air distribution to the upper instrument panel outlets and footwells.

: *Manual air conditioning:* Air distribution to the windshield and footwells.

: Air distribution to the windshield.

– Defog/defrost

— *Manual air conditioning:* Turn the right knob to position → fig. 88 (3) to defrost the windshield as quickly as possible. The cooling system switches on automatically to dehumidify the air. When the defrost function is switched on, the air recirculation mode cannot be switched on.

— *Climatronic:* Press the MAX button → fig. 89 (1) to defrost the windshield as quickly as possible. The incoming outside air is directed to the windshield, and air recirculation automatically switches off. Humidity is removed from the air at temperatures above about +35 °F (+1.5 °C), and the blower is set to a high speed.

5GM012723ST

– Rear window defroster

— Press the button to defrost the rear window. The rear window defroster works only when the engine is running and switches off automatically after 10 minutes or less.

Recommended settings for manual air conditioning

— Switch off the air recirculation.

— Set the fan to 1 or 2.

— Turn the temperature knob to the center position.

— Open and adjust all air vents in the instrument panel.

— Turn the air distribution knob to the desired setting.

— Press the A/C button to turn on the air conditioner. The indicator light in the button lights up.

Recommended settings for Climatronic

— Press the AUTO button.

— Set the temperature to +72 °F (+22 °C).

— Open and adjust all air vents in the instrument panel → page 126, *Climate control*.

WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces alertness, which can cause accidents, collisions, and serious personal injury.

- Never switch off the fan for a long time because no fresh air will enter the passenger compartment.

NOTICE

To help prevent damage to the rear window defroster, do not place stickers over the heating lines inside the vehicle. ◁

Air recirculation

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice and on page 126.

Air recirculation mode helps prevent outside air from entering the vehicle interior.

In very hot outside temperatures, temporarily switch to manual air recirculation in order to cool the vehicle interior faster.

Switching manual air recirculation on and off

— Press the button in the climate controls to switch manual air recirculation on and off.

— **OR:** Press the MENU button in the Climatronic controls, open the climate control settings submenu, and tap the function key on the Infotainment system screen.

The indicator light under the button comes on when air recirculation mode is switched on.

Switching the automatic air recirculation mode on and off (if equipped)

In automatic air recirculation mode, fresh air enters the passenger compartment. If the system detects an increased concentration of pollutants in the outside air, it automatically switches to air recirculation. As soon as the pollutant level is back in the normal range, air recirculation is switched off. Unpleasant odors cannot be detected by the system.

— Press the MENU button on the Climatronic controls.

— Tap the general settings function key.

— Switch automatic recirculation mode on or off by tapping the Automatic air recirculation function key.

If the box in the function key is checked ☑, the automatic recirculation mode is switched on.

When does air recirculation mode switch off?

For safety reasons, air recirculation is switched off in the following situations → :

— *Manually:* If the air distribution knob is turned to (manual air conditioning) or the MAX button in the Climatronic controls or on the Infotainment system is pressed (Climatronic).

— *Automatically:* If a sensor detects conditions that could cause the windows to fog up.

WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces driver alertness, which can cause accidents, collisions and serious personal injury.

- Never use air recirculation mode over an extended period of time, since no fresh air will enter the passenger compartment.

- When the air conditioner is off and recirculation mode is on, condensation can quickly form on the windows and greatly reduce visibility.
- Always switch off recirculation mode when it is not needed.

NOTICE

Do not smoke when air recirculation is switched on. Smoke drawn into the ventilation system can leave residue on the evaporator and on the dust and pollen filter, resulting in permanent odors whenever the air conditioner is switched on.

Climatronic: When backing up and while the automatic wiper/washer is operating, air recirculation is briefly activated to help keep exhaust fumes from getting into the passenger compartment. ◁

Seat heating

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 126.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a seat heating feature for the front seats.

The seat heating switches off every time the ignition is switched off. If the ignition is switched back on, the seat heating on the driver and passenger seat may switch back on automatically to the previous setting.

Using seat heating

— *Switching on:* Press the [icon] or [icon] button. Seat heating is switched on to maximum.

— *Adjusting:* Press the [icon] or [icon] button repeatedly until the desired heating level is set.

— *Switching off:* Press the [icon] or [icon] button repeatedly until all indicator lights are off.

When should seat heating not be used?

Do not use the seat heating if any of the following conditions apply:

— If you or a passenger suffers from a low level of perceived pain or a lowered awareness of pain as from medication, paralysis, or chronic illness (e.g., diabetes) → ⚠.

— If the seat is not being used.

— If there is a child restraint installed on the seat.

— If these is a blanket or seat cover on the seat.

— If the seat is damp or wet.

— If the outside temperature or the temperature inside the passenger compartment is +77 °F (+25 °C) or higher.

WARNING

Certain medical conditions, such as paralysis and diabetes, and certain medications can increase the risk of serious burns when the seat heating feature is switched on.

- Vehicle occupants who have a low level of perceived pain or a lowered awareness of pain are at risk of serious burns to the back, buttocks, and legs that take a long time to heal or may never heal completely.
- Never use the seat heating feature if you or your passengers are at risk of being burned because of a medical condition. Take regular breaks and get out of the vehicle, particularly on long trips. Consult your doctor for advice regarding your specific condition.
- Never let exposed skin remain in contact with the seat upholstery when the seat heating is being used.

WARNING

A wet seat can cause the seat heating to malfunction and increase the risk of serious burns.

- Always make sure the seats are dry before using the seat heating.
- Never sit on the seat with wet clothes.
- Never put damp or wet things including clothes on the seat.
- Never spill liquids on the seats.

NOTICE

- To help prevent damage to electrical and other parts in the seat, do not kneel on the front seats or apply concentrated pressure to a small area of the seat or backrest.
- Liquids, sharp objects and things that do not let the heat in the seat escape into the air, including, for example, a child restraint, a blanket, or seat covers on the seat can damage seat heating.
- If you smell an odor, immediately shut off seat heating and have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never install leather upholstery on a vehicle with seat heating that originally had cloth upholstery. The seat heating elements for seats with cloth seats will overheat if the cloth upholstery is replaced with leather upholstery.

5GM012723ST

Switch off seat heating when it is not needed to help reduce unnecessary fuel consumption. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 126.

If the cooling system switches off automatically or will not switch on

The air conditioner only works when the engine is running and the outside temperature is above about +38 °F (+3 °C).

The air conditioner compressor switches off automatically when the engine is very warm.

— Switch on the fan.

— Check the fuse for the air conditioning system → page 231, *Replacing fuses*.

— If there is still cause for concern, have the air conditioner checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If the heating system does not switch on or does not work as expected

The heating and defrost features are most effective when the engine is warm.

— If there is a cause for concern, have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If the windows fog up

The windows can fog up if they are colder than the outside temperature and the air is very humid. Cold air absorbs less moisture than warm air, which is why windows fog up frequently in cold weather.

— Keep the air intake slots in front of the windshield free of ice, snow, and leaves so that the heating and ventilation systems can work properly and to help prevent the windshield from fogging up.

— Do not cover the air vents in the rear of the luggage compartment so that air can flow through the passenger compartment from front to rear.

— Press the MAX button to switch on the defog/defrost feature → page 127, *Overview of the climate controls*.

Maximum heating output and defrosting performance are not possible until the engine has reached operating temperature.

If the wrong temperature units are set

The inside and outside temperatures can be displayed in either Fahrenheit (F) or Celsius (C).

— Change the temperature units in the Vehicle settings menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

If there is water under the vehicle

When it is very hot and humid outside, **water condensation** can drip from the air conditioner evaporator and form a puddle under the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak. ◁

Driving

Information on driving safely and efficiently

Pedals

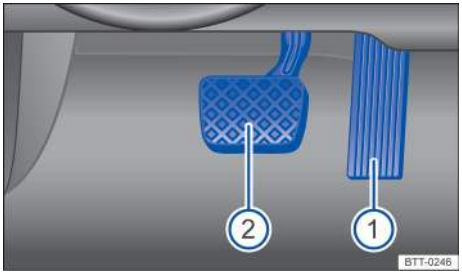


Fig. 90 In the driver footwell: Pedals in vehicles with automatic or DSG transmission.

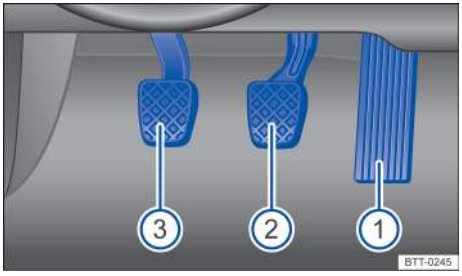


Fig. 91 In the driver footwell: Pedals in vehicles with manual transmission.

Key to fig. 90 and fig. 91:

① Accelerator pedal
② Brake pedal
③ Clutch pedal

All pedals must always be able to move freely in and out without interference from floor mats or other things.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and are held securely in place with floor mat fasteners to help prevent sliding.

WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can prevent the pedals from moving freely. This can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- Always fasten floor mats securely to the floor.
- Never put floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats.
- Always make sure that nothing can fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving.

NOTICE

Always make sure that the pedals are able to move freely and that nothing can interfere with them. If a brake circuit fails, more brake pedal travel will be needed to bring the vehicle to a stop. The brake pedal must be pressed farther and harder than normal. ◁

Gear recommendation

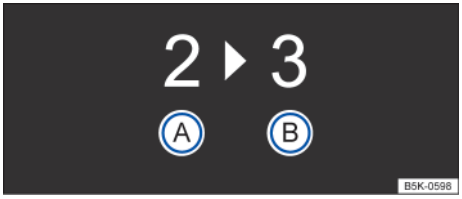


Fig. 92 In the instrument cluster display: Gear recommendation.

Key to fig. 92:

Ⓐ Current gear.
Ⓑ Recommended gear.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a gear recommendation feature. The gear recommendation displays a gear in the instrument cluster display that can help reduce fuel consumption.

For vehicles with an *automatic or DSG transmission*: The selector lever must be in the Tiptronic position → page 150, *Shifting with Tiptronic®*.

If the optimal gear is already selected, another gear is not recommended. Only the current gear is displayed.

WARNING

The gear recommendation is only intended to assist the driver to select a gear for optimum fuel economy. The gear recommendation cannot take road and traffic conditions into account.

5GM012723ST

- The driver is responsible for selecting the correct gear for the current driving conditions, such as when passing or when driving on hills.

Selecting the optimal gear can help to reduce fuel consumption.

The gear recommendation display turns off if you depress the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or move the selector lever out of the Tiptronic position (automatic or DSG transmission). ◁

Efficient driving style

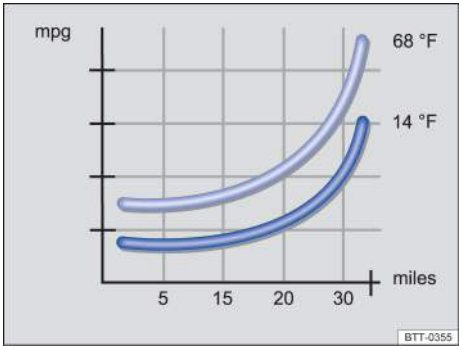


Fig. 93 Fuel consumption in miles per gallon (mpg) at two different outside air temperatures.

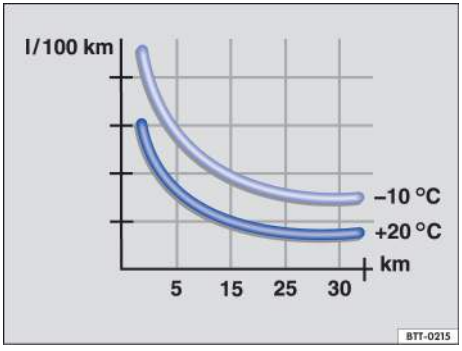


Fig. 94 Fuel consumption in l/100 km at two different outside air temperatures.

Drive defensively

Frequent braking and acceleration increase fuel consumption significantly. By watching the traffic, you can help avoid unnecessary braking and accelerating. If you keep enough distance from the car in front of you, you can maintain a more constant speed. Active braking and accelerating is then not necessarily required.

Use the cruise control when possible to help maintain a uniform driving style → page 160, *Cruise control*, or → page 162, *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*.

If possible, coast the vehicle to a stop, for example, when you can see that the next traffic light is red or about to turn red.

Avoid full throttle acceleration

Driving at higher speeds uses more fuel. The air resistance and the power needed to move the vehicle increases at high speeds, for example over about 80 mph (130 km/h).

Reduce idling

In situations where the vehicle will be stopped for a longer period of time, such as at a railroad crossing, switch off the engine.

In vehicles with the Start-stop system, the engine will switch off automatically in many cases → page 146, *Start-stop system*.

Refuel in moderation

A completely full tank raises the weight of the vehicle. A partially-filled tank is plenty, especially in city traffic.

Avoid traveling short distances

A cold engine uses a lot more fuel right after starting. It takes a few miles (km) before the engine is warmed up and fuel consumption is stabilized.

Under the same conditions, the vehicle consumes more fuel in winter than in summer. Therefore, avoid driving short distances unnecessarily and consolidate routes.

"Letting the engine run to warm up" is not only illegal in some places, but also technically not necessary and wastes fuel.

Perform regular maintenance

Regular maintenance is necessary for fuel-efficient driving and helps extend the life of the vehicle.

Adjust the tire pressure

The proper tire pressure helps reduce rolling resistance as well as fuel consumption. When purchasing new tires, always make sure that the tires are optimized for lower rolling resistance.

Adjust the tire pressure according to the figures on the tire pressure label → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.

Use low viscosity engine oil

Fully "synthetic," low viscosity engine oils that expressly comply with Volkswagen oil quality standards can help reduce fuel consumption. Low viscosity engine oils reduce the frictional resistance on the engine and are distributed more evenly and quickly, particularly when cold-starting the engine. The effect is particularly apparent in vehicles that frequently travel short distances.

Always ensure the right engine oil level is maintained and keep to the scheduled service intervals (engine oil changes).

Make sure the engine oil that you purchase expressly complies with Volkswagen oil quality standards and is the oil approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle.

Avoid unnecessary weight

The lighter the vehicle, the more economical and eco-friendly it will be. For example, an extra 220 lbs (100 kg) of weight increases fuel consumption by up to 1 pint per 60 miles (0.3 l/100 km). Remove unnecessary dead weight from the vehicle.

The more aerodynamic the vehicle, the less fuel it will consume. Remove unnecessary items, such as roof racks, from the vehicle.

Use extra electrical loads in moderation

Comfort inside the vehicle is important, but it is also important to use extra electrical loads, such as the air conditioner and seat heating, in an environmentally conscious manner.

Saving energy can be easy, for example:

- In hot outside temperatures, it may be helpful to ventilate the vehicle before driving and then to drive a short distance with the windows open. After that, switch on the air conditioner with the windows closed. Keep the windows closed when driving at high speeds. Open windows increase wind resistance and fuel consumption.
- Switch off electrical loads once they have served their purpose.

WARNING

Always adjust your speed and driving style to visibility, road, traffic, and weather conditions.

NOTICE

Never let the vehicle coast or roll down a hill in Neutral (N), especially when the engine is not running. The transmission will not be lubricated and will be damaged.

Find out about other ways to protect the environment. Think Blue.® is the international Volkswagen brand for sustainability and environmental compatibility.

Your Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility can provide you with additional information about correct maintenance and replacement parts that are particularly fuel efficient, for example new tires.

Under the same conditions, the vehicle consumes more fuel in winter than in summer. ◁

Think Blue. Trainer.

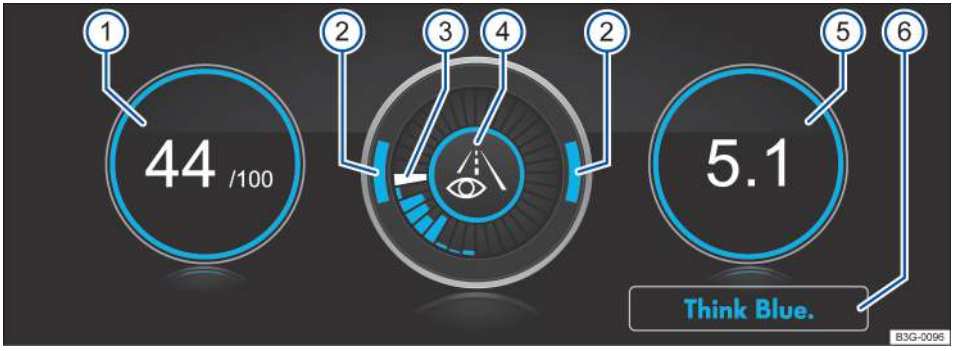


Fig. 95 Infotainment system screen: Think Blue. Trainer. (if equipped).

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Think Blue. Trainer. that analyzes your driving

5GM012723ST

while the vehicle is moving forward. It then generates a visual display which can help you to adopt a more fuel-efficient driving style.

Key to fig. 95:

1. The Blue Score is a rating of your driving style efficiency on a scale of 0 to 100. The higher the value displayed, the more efficient your driving style. A blue frame around the display indicates a fuel-efficient and consistent driving style. A gray frame indicates a less efficient driving style.

   You can touch the display to show the statistics for the last 30 minutes of the current trip. If the current driving time is less than 30 minutes, the values from the last trip are displayed in gray.
2. The position of the two arcs in the outer ring shows the acceleration. At a constant speed, the arcs appear in the central area. The arcs move up and down during braking and acceleration, respectively.
3. The white segment in the central ring shows the current evaluation status. It gradually moves clockwise about every 5 seconds, creating a blue segment each time. The blue segments in the central ring show driving style efficiency. The larger the blue segment, the more efficient the driving style during this period.
4. Various symbols in the inner ring provide feedback about the current driving style:

   : Think ahead while driving.

   3▸4: A different gear is recommended (larger number). Only applies to vehicles equipped with a gear recommendation feature.

   : The speed is not fuel-efficient.

   eco: The driving style is fuel-efficient.
5. The average fuel consumption is displayed in the units set by the driver, for example, Av. mpg or Av. l/100km. The value refers to the distance traveled since the start of the trip. A blue frame around the display indicates a fuel-efficient and consistent driving style. A gray frame indicates a less efficient driving style.

   You can touch the display to show the statistics for the last 30 minutes of the current trip. If the current driving time is less than 30 minutes, the values from the last trip are displayed in gray.
6. Tap the Think Blue. function key for additional tips on saving fuel.

Displaying the Think Blue. Trainer.

When the vehicle is not moving, press the MENU Infotainment button followed by the Vehicle, , and Think Blue. Trainer. function keys.

OR: Press the CAR Infotainment button until the Think Blue. Trainer. is displayed → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

⚠ WARNING

Never pay so much attention to the graphics shown on the screen that you fail to notice what is going on around you.

- Always pay close attention to what is happening around the vehicle. ◁

About the brakes

New brake pads do not provide full performance during the first 100 to 200 miles (200 to 300 km) and must first be "broken" in → ⚠. To some extent, you can make up for the somewhat reduced performance by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. But, **during the break-in period**, the stopping distance for hard braking and emergency braking will be longer until the brakes are fully broken in. Avoid hard braking and situations that might require hard braking (such as following other vehicles too closely) – especially during the break-in period.

Brake pad wear depends mostly on operating conditions and the way the vehicle is driven. If you do a lot of city and short-distance driving and/or have a sporty driving style, you should have the brake pads checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility more often than the regular service intervals.

Wet brakes (for example, after driving through water or washing the vehicle or after heavy rainfall) will not brake as well. Stopping distances will be longer when brake discs are wet or, in winter, even icy. Wet or icy brakes must be dried as soon as possible by carefully applying the brakes a couple of times while traveling at a relatively high speed. Make sure no-

body is behind you and that you do not endanger yourself or others → ⚠.

Brakes coated with road salt also react slower and need longer stopping distances. If there is salt on the roads and you are not braking regularly, brake carefully and gently from time to time to remove any salt coating from the brake discs and pads → ⚠.

Brake disc **corrosion** (rust) and **dirt** buildup on the brake pads are more likely to occur if the vehicle is not driven much or is driven only for short distances with little braking. If the brakes have not been used and there is some rust on the discs, clean the brake discs and pads once in a while by carefully braking a couple of times while driving at relatively high speed to help clean the brake discs and pads. Make sure nobody is behind you and that you do not endanger yourself or others → ⚠.

Brake booster

The brake booster works only when the engine is running. It increases the force on the brakes above and beyond the pressure put on the brake pedal by the driver.

If the brake booster is not working or if the vehicle has to be towed, you will have to push the brake pedal harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance and the resulting longer stopping distance → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or (!) does not go out, or lights up when driving, either the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle as soon as you can do so safely and get expert assistance → page 255, *Brake fluid*.
- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or (!) lights up at the same time as the ABS warning light **ABS** or (ABS), the ABS may not be working properly. This could cause the rear wheels to lock up relatively quickly during braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control.
- If you believe the vehicle is safe to drive, drive slowly and very carefully to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected. Avoid sudden hard braking and steering.
- If the ABS indicator light **ABS** or (ABS) does not go out, or if it lights up while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility as soon as possible.
- If the brake pads are worn or you notice changes in the way the vehicle brakes, immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the brake pads checked and, if necessary, replaced.

⚠ WARNING

New brake pads do not provide maximum braking performance.

- New brake pads do not have the best stopping power for the first 200 miles (300 km) and must be "broken in." You can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by putting more pressure on the brake pedal.
- Drive with extra care while the new brake pads are being broken in. This reduces the risk of collisions and serious personal injuries due to a loss of control over the vehicle.
- Never follow other vehicles too closely or put yourself into other situations that might require sudden, hard braking, especially when the brake pads have not been broken in.

⚠ WARNING

Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and even to fail leading to collisions and serious personal injury.

- Never "ride" the brakes or apply the brake pedal too often or too long.
- Riding the brakes will substantially reduce braking performance, increase stopping distance, and can cause complete brake system failure.

⚠ WARNING

Overheated brakes will reduce the vehicle's stopping power and increase stopping distances considerably.

- When driving downhill, the brakes have to work especially hard and heat up quickly.
- Before driving downhill, especially on hills that are long or steep, always reduce speed and shift into lower gear (manual, automatic, or DSG transmission). This will let the vehicle use engine braking and reduce the load on the brakes. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat and possibly fail. Only use the brakes when you need them to slow the vehicle down more or to stop.

5GM012723ST

- A damaged front bumper or a non-standard spoiler can reduce airflow to the brakes and make them overheat.

WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- Carefully apply the brakes to test them.
- Always dry brakes and clean off ice and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

WARNING

Driving when the brake booster is not working increases stopping distances and can cause accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Never let the vehicle coast when the engine is switched off.
- If the brake booster is not working (such as when the vehicle is being towed), a lot more pedal force is needed to slow down and stop.

NOTICE

- Never "ride" the brakes by keeping your foot on the brake pedal when you do not want to brake. Constant pressure on the brake pedal can make the brakes overheat. Riding the brakes will substantially reduce braking performance, increase stopping distance, and can cause complete brake system failure.
- Before driving downhill, especially on hills that are long or steep, always reduce speed and shift into lower gear (manual, automatic, or DSG transmission). This will let the vehicle use engine braking and reduce the load on the brakes. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat and possibly fail. Only use the brakes when you need them to slow the vehicle down more or to stop.

When the front brakes are serviced, you should have the rear brake pads inspected at the same time. The wear of all brake pads should be checked regularly by visually inspecting the pads through the openings in the wheel rims or from underneath the vehicle. If necessary, the wheels can be taken off for a more thorough inspection. See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for more information. ◁

Driving a loaded vehicle

For good handling when driving a loaded vehicle, please observe the following:

— Securely stow all luggage → page 213, *Stowing luggage*.

— Drive especially carefully and accelerate gently.

— Avoid sudden braking and driving maneuvers.

— Brake earlier than you would if you were not driving a loaded vehicle.

— If applicable, observe information about driving with a roof rack → page 218, *Roof rack*.

WARNING

Heavy loads can change the way your vehicle handles and increase stopping distances. Heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured can shift suddenly, causing loss of control and serious injury.

- Secure the load properly to keep it from shifting.
- Always remember when transporting heavy objects that they change the vehicle's center of gravity and also the way it handles.
  - — Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  - — Secure heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
  - — Secure luggage in the luggage compartment using suitable straps and the tie downs → page 216, *Tie-downs*. Also see → page 216, *Luggage compartment – features*.
- Always tie down heavy items securely with suitable straps.
- Securely latch the rear seat backrest in the upright position.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight can cause the vehicle to skid and handle differently.
- Always adapt speed and driving to the heavier load and the weight distribution in the vehicle. Take road, weather, traffic, and visibility conditions into account as well.
- Always accelerate gently and avoid sudden braking and driving maneuvers.
- Always brake earlier than you would if you were not driving a loaded vehicle. ◁

Driving with an open trunk lid

Driving with an open trunk lid can lead to serious personal injury. If you have to drive with an open trunk lid, make sure that all objects and the trunk lid itself are properly secured and take appropriate measures to keep toxic exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle.

WARNING

Driving with an unlatched or open trunk lid can lead to serious personal injury.

- Never transport objects larger than those that fit completely in the luggage compartment, because the trunk lid cannot be fully closed properly.
- After closing the trunk lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed and cannot open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.
- Always stow all objects securely in the luggage compartment. Loose objects can fall out of the luggage compartment and injure others on the road behind you.
- Drive carefully; anticipate what other drivers will do.
- Avoid abrupt or sudden acceleration, steering, or braking, because the unlatched trunk lid can move suddenly.
- Always mark objects sticking out from the luggage compartment clearly for others to see. Obey all applicable legal requirements.
- Never use the trunk lid to "clamp" or "hold" objects that stick out of the luggage compartment.
- Always remove any luggage rack or other rack mounted on the trunk lid (along with any luggage on the rack) before driving with an open trunk lid.

WARNING

Driving with an open trunk lid can cause poisonous carbon monoxide in the engine exhaust to get into the passenger compartment. Carbon monoxide causes drowsiness, inattentiveness, poisoning, and loss of consciousness. It can lead to accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Always keep the trunk lid closed while driving to help keep poisonous exhaust fumes from being drawn into the vehicle.
- Never transport objects that are too large to fit completely into the luggage area, because then the trunk lid cannot be fully closed.
- If you absolutely must drive with an open trunk lid, do the following to reduce the risk of carbon monoxide poisoning:
  - Close all windows and the power sunroof.
  - Switch off the climate control system's air recirculation feature.
  - Open all air vents in the instrument panel.
  - Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

NOTICE

The open trunk lid changes the vehicle length and height. ◁

Driving through water on roads

Note the following to help prevent vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

- Check the depth of the water before driving through it. The water **must not be any higher than** the bottom of the vehicle body → ⓘ.
- Do not drive faster than walking speed.
- Never stop the vehicle, and do not drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
- Oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
- Always manually deactivate the Start-stop system before driving through water → page 146, *Start-stop system*.

WARNING

After driving through water, mud, sludge, etc., the brakes react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- Always dry the brakes and clean off any ice coatings with a few careful applications of the brake. Make sure not to endanger other motorists or cyclists or disobey legal requirements.
- Avoid abrupt or sudden braking maneuvers immediately after driving through water.

NOTICE

- Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.
- Never drive through salt water. Salt causes vehicle corrosion. Thoroughly rinse with fresh water all vehicle parts that were exposed to salt water. ◁

5GM012723ST

Break-in period

A new engine must be carefully broken in during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all moving parts have been broken in.

Breaking in a new engine

For the first 600 miles (1000 km):

— Do not use full throttle.

— Don't let the engine speed get above 2/3 of the maximum speed.

From 600 to 1000 miles (1000 to 1600 km):

— Speed may *gradually* be increased to maximum permissible road and engine speed.

Engine life is influenced by how you drive the vehicle for the first 1000 miles (1600 km). Even afterwards, driving at moderate engine speeds, especially when the engine is cold, will tend to reduce engine wear and help the engine to last longer and go farther. But do not drive at an excessively low engine speed, either. Always downshift if the engine is not running smoothly.

New tires and brake pads

Note applicable requirements for breaking in new parts.

— New tires and replacement tires → page 260, *Tires and wheels*.

— Brakes → page 191, *Braking assistance systems*.

Breaking in a new engine gently will increase service life and reduce oil consumption. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

/ BRAKE Brake system malfunction

The red warning light comes on.

A text message may also appear in the instrument cluster.

— **Stop the vehicle immediately** in a safe place as soon as possible.

— If you believe the vehicle is safe to drive, immediately take it to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for repair. Drive slowly and very carefully, allow for the longer stopping distance, and be ready to push longer and harder on the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

If the vehicle braking performance changes

If the brake pads are worn or you notice changes in the way the vehicle brakes:

— Immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage. ◁

Starting and stopping the engine

Ignition switch

Fig. 96 In the ignition switch: Vehicle key positions for vehicles without Keyless Access.

If there is no vehicle key in the ignition, the steering column is locked.

Vehicle key position → fig. 96

- (0) Ignition switched off. Steering column lock engaged. The vehicle key can be removed.
- (1) Ignition is switched on. Steering column lock can be released.
- (2) Start the engine. When the engine starts, release the vehicle key. When released, the vehicle key returns to position (1).

WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows can be operated, leading to serious personal injury.
- Never let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the remote control vehicle key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle – particularly if the ignition is on or a remote control vehicle key is also in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the remote control vehicle key also makes it possible to start the engine, or turn on the ignition and operate the windows as well as other vehicle features.
- Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The steering wheel will lock and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.
- Only attach lightweight objects to the remote control vehicle key that weigh no more than a combined total of 3.5 oz (100 g).

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the ignition for a long time when the engine is not running will drain the vehicle battery.

- Always switch off the ignition and remove the key before leaving the vehicle.

Leaving the transmission selector lever for a long period of time in any position other than Park **(P)** when the ignition is switched off can drain the vehicle battery. ◁

5GM012723ST

Starter button

Fig. 97 In the lower center console: Starter button for the Keyless Access system.

For vehicles with Keyless Access with push-button start → page 90, *Doors and power locking system*, the vehicle can be started and stopped with the starter button in the lower center console → fig. 97.

The starter button can only be used when an authorized vehicle key is in the vehicle.

When leaving the vehicle, the electronic steering column lock is activated when the ignition is switched off and the driver door is opened → page 156, *Steering*.

Switching the ignition on and off

— Briefly press the starter button once without depressing the brake or clutch pedals → ⚠.

Automatic ignition switch-off for vehicles with the Start-stop system

The vehicle ignition switches off automatically after a short time when the vehicle is standing still, the Start-stop system is switched on → page 146, *Start-stop system*, and **ALL** of the following conditions are met at the same time:

— The driver safety belt is unbuckled.

— No pedal is depressed.

— The driver door is opened.

If the ignition is switched off automatically while the headlights are switched on ≡D, the parking lights stay on for about 30 minutes.

The parking lights can be switched off manually or will turn off when the vehicle is locked.

⚠ WARNING

Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.

- Do *not* depress the brake or clutch pedals when switching on the ignition, as the engine could otherwise start immediately.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Children or unauthorized persons may use it to lock the vehicle, start the engine, and operate vehicle systems such as the power windows, leading to serious personal injury.
- Never let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control vehicle key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle – particularly if the ignition is on or a remote control vehicle key is also in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the remote control vehicle key also makes it possible to start the engine, or turn on the ignition and operate the windows as well as other vehicle features.
- Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.

If the ignition is switched on or the engine is running and the driver door is opened, a chime sounds. The chime is also a reminder to switch off the engine and turn off the ignition before leaving and locking the vehicle from the outside.

Always switch off the engine and ignition before leaving the vehicle. Read and follow any information in the instrument cluster display.

Leaving the ignition on for a long time when the engine is not running will drain the vehicle battery and the engine may not start. ◁

Starting the engine

Starting the engine

Please perform these steps only in the order listed:

1. Depress the brake pedal and hold it down until step 4 is completed.
2. *Manual transmission:* Fully depress clutch pedal and hold until the engine has started. Make sure the gearshift lever is in neutral position.

   Automatic or DSG transmission: Make sure the transmission selector lever is in park **(P)** or neutral **(N)**.
3. *Vehicles without Keyless Access:* Briefly turn the vehicle key to position → fig. 96 (2) – do not depress the accelerator pedal.

   Vehicles with Keyless Access: Briefly press the starter button → fig. 97 – do not depress the accelerator pedal. An authorized vehicle key must be inside the vehicle in order to start the engine.
4. If the engine does not start, switch off the ignition and start again after about 1 minute.

   Vehicles with Keyless Access: Use the emergency start feature if necessary → page 145.
5. Release the parking brake when you are ready to start driving → page 178, *Parking brake*.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious personal injury when starting and running the vehicle's engine:

- Never start the engine or let it run in a confined or enclosed area. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never start the engine or let it run if oil, fuel, or other flammable substances are under, around, or have leaked from the vehicle, for example, due to vehicle damage.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running, especially when it is in gear. The vehicle could move suddenly or some other unexpected event could occur, resulting in property damage, fire, or personal injury.
- Never use starting assist fluids. Starting fluids can explode and can cause a "run-away" vehicle condition.

NOTICE

- You can damage the starter or the engine if you try to start the engine when the vehicle is still moving, or if you try to restart the engine right after switching it off.
- Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle acceleration, and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold.
- Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle. Unburned fuel can get into the catalytic converter and damage it. The steering column may also be locked. Jump-start the vehicle instead while following proper and safe procedures → page 233, *Jump-starting*.

Do not let your vehicle warm up while standing; instead, start driving right away after making sure that you have good visibility through all windows. This will help the engine reach operating temperature faster and keep down emissions.

Major consumers of electricity are temporarily switched off when the engine is being started.

If the remote control vehicle key battery is weak or dead, you may not be able to start the engine with the starter button. Use the emergency start feature → page 145.

After starting a cold engine, there may be increased operating noises for a few seconds. This is normal and harmless. ◁

Stopping the engine

Please perform these steps only in the order listed:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop → ⚠.
2. Depress and hold down the brake pedal until step 4 is completed.
3. *Automatic or DSG transmission:* Shift the transmission to Park **(P)**.
4. Set the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving → page 178, *Parking brake*.
5. *Vehicles without Keyless Access:* Turn the vehicle key to position → fig. 96 (0) in the ignition switch.

   Vehicles with Keyless Access: Briefly press the starter button → fig. 97. If the engine will not switch off, carry out the emergency shut-off procedure → page 145.
6. *Manual transmission:* Shift into 1st gear (vehicle on flat surface or pointing uphill) or Reverse **(R)** (vehicle pointing downhill).

Vehicles without Keyless Access: Removing the vehicle key from the ignition switches off electrical equipment and activates the steering column lock.

5GM012723ST

Vehicles with Keyless Access: Opening the doors switches off electrical equipment and activates the steering column lock.

If you leave the ignition on

If you leave the ignition on and open the driver door, a warning message may appear in the instrument cluster. In addition, you may also hear an acoustic warning. This warning reminds you to switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle → ⓘ in *Ignition switch* on page 141.

⚠ WARNING

Never stop the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash, and be seriously injured.

- The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not work when the ignition is switched off.
- The brake booster does not work when the engine is not running. More brake pedal pressure will be needed to stop the vehicle.
- The power steering system does not work when the engine is not running, and you will need more force to steer the vehicle.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter get very hot. They can cause fires and serious personal injury.

- Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Never apply additional anti-corrosion or underbody protection products to the vehicle heat shields.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious personal injury when you leave the vehicle.

- Always switch off the engine and ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Never let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.

NOTICE

If the vehicle has been driven hard for a long time, the engine could overheat when it is stopped. To reduce the risk of engine damage, let the engine idle in neutral (N) for about 2 minutes before you switch off the ignition.

After the engine has been switched off, the radiator fan in the engine compartment may keep running for several minutes, or may start running after the vehicle has been parked for a while, even if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle key has been removed. The radiator fan shuts off automatically when the engine has cooled down enough.

If the ignition is switched on or the engine is running and the driver door is opened, a chime sounds. The chime is also a reminder to switch off the engine and turn off the ignition before leaving and locking the vehicle from the outside. ◁

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer helps to prevent the engine from being started and driven with an unauthorized vehicle key.

There is a microchip inside the vehicle key. The chip deactivates the immobilizer automatically when an authorized vehicle key is inserted into the ignition switch or the starter button is pressed.

The electronic immobilizer is automatically activated when the remote control vehicle key is pulled out of the ignition switch. On vehicles with Keyless Access, the vehicle key must be outside the vehicle → page 89, *Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access*.

The engine can therefore only be started with an authorized and correctly coded genuine Volkswagen vehicle key. Coded vehicle keys are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers, authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities, and from certain independent repair facilities and locksmiths who are qualified to make these vehicle keys → page 86, *Remote control vehicle key functions*.

If an unauthorized vehicle key is used or the system malfunctions, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The vehicle cannot be operated with this key.

Using genuine Volkswagen keys helps minimize the risk of malfunctions.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is

on → page 322, *Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems*. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

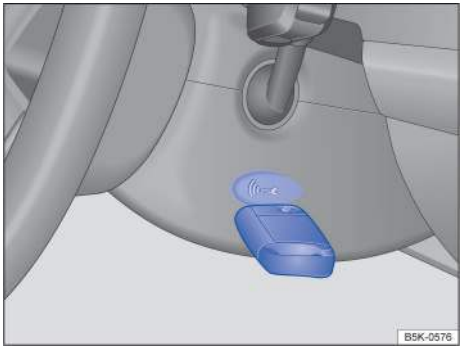


Fig. 98 Hold the remote control vehicle key to the right of the steering column: Emergency starting feature.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

EPC Engine control malfunction

The yellow indicator light comes on.

— Have the engine checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Engine speed (rpm) limited

The yellow indicator light comes on.

Engine speed (rpm) is automatically limited to help prevent the engine from overheating.

— Briefly take your foot off the accelerator.

The limited engine speed is shown in the instrument cluster.

Once the engine is no longer at a critical temperature, the engine speed limit is increased.

and EPC Engine speed limited

The yellow indicator lights come on.

The engine speed is limited due to a malfunction in the engine management system.

— Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the engine speed displayed, for example, when downshifting.

— Have the engine checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If you use the wrong vehicle key or cannot remove the key from the ignition switch

— *Automatic transmission*: Press the release button on the transmission selector lever and release. The vehicle key can now be removed.

— *DSG® transmission*: Move the selector lever to position **P** if the vehicle is stationary. If necessary, press the release button on the transmission selector lever.

— *Manual transmission*: Pull out the vehicle key.

If the engine does not stop

If the engine does not switch off by briefly pressing the starter button, emergency shut-off is necessary:

— Press the starter button twice within 3 seconds.

— **OR:** Press and hold the button longer than 1 second → ⚠ in *Stopping the engine* on page 144.

— The engine switches off automatically.

If a valid vehicle key is not detected

If an authorized remote control vehicle key is in the passenger compartment but is not detected, the remote control vehicle key battery may be weak or dead. You can still start the engine using the emergency start feature.

— *Automatic or DSG transmission:* Make sure the transmission selector lever is in the Park **(P)** position.

— Press and hold the brake pedal.

— Hold the remote control vehicle key to the right of the steering column trim immediately after pressing the starter button → fig. 98.

— The ignition automatically switches on and the engine starts.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage. ◁

5GM012723ST

Start-stop system

Fig. 99 In the lower center console: Button for the Start-stop system (if equipped).

Depending on equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with a Start-stop system that switches the engine off automatically when the vehicle comes to a stop. When needed, the engine switches back on automatically.

Switching the Start-stop system on

The feature is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on. The instrument cluster display shows current status information.

— Press and hold the brake pedal to stop. The engine switches off when the vehicle is not moving.

— Take your foot off the brake pedal or depress the accelerator to restart the engine.

Indicator lights

Start-stop available, automatic engine stop is active.

Start-stop not available **OR** Start-stop has switched the engine on automatically.

Requirements for the engine to automatically switch off

— The driver must be wearing their safety belt.

— The driver door must be closed.

— The engine hood must be closed.

— The engine must have reached minimum operating temperature.

— *For vehicles with Climatronic:* The temperature inside the vehicle must be within the pre-set temperature range and the humidity must not be too high.

— The windshield defrost function must not be switched on.

— The vehicle battery must be sufficiently charged.

— The vehicle battery temperature must not be too low or too high.

— The vehicle must not be on a steep incline.

— *Vehicles with DSG®:* The steering wheel must not be turned too sharply.

— The vehicle must not be in reverse gear **(R)**.

— The Park Assist system must not be active.

Requirements for the engine to automatically restart

The engine may restart automatically under the following conditions:

— If the vehicle interior becomes very hot or very cold.

— If the vehicle rolls forward or backward.

— If the vehicle battery voltage lowers.

— If the steering wheel is moved.

As a general rule, the engine always restarts automatically when the system detects that it is necessary.

Conditions that require a manual engine start

You must restart the engine manually if:

— The driver door is opened.

— The engine hood is opened.

— The driver safety belt is unbuckled.

Manually deactivating and activating the Start-stop system

— Press the button → fig. 99 to deactivate the system. If Start-stop has been deactivated, the indicator light in the button comes on.

— Press the button → fig. 99 again to reactivate the system.

Every time the button is pressed, the Start-stop system status is shown in the instrument cluster display.

If Start-stop switches the engine off, it will restart if you press the button.

Always manually deactivate Start-stop when driving through water.

⚠ WARNING

Never stop the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash, and be seriously injured.

- The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not work when the ignition is switched off.
- The brake booster does not work when the engine is not running. More brake pedal pressure will be needed to stop the vehicle.

- The power steering system does not work when the engine is not running, and you will need more force to steer the vehicle.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.
- Switch the Start-stop system off before working in the engine compartment.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, turn on the emergency flashers, stop the engine, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.

NOTICE

The vehicle battery may be damaged if the Start-stop system is active for a long time in very hot outside temperatures.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights can result in vehicle damage

In certain situations it may be necessary to manually restart the engine. A text message will appear in the instrument cluster display.

If the outside temperature is above about +100 °F (+38 °C), the Start-stop system may switch off automatically.

In vehicles with Driving Mode Selection, the Start-stop system is automatically activated in the **Eco** driving mode.

Always manually deactivate the Start-stop system when driving through water. ◁

Manual transmission

Manual transmission gearshift lever

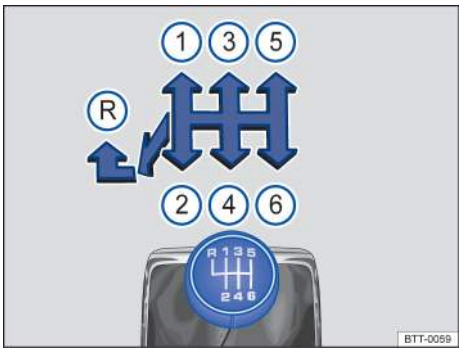


Fig. 100 Gearshift pattern of a 6-speed manual transmission.

The positions of the individual gears are shown on the gearshift lever → fig. 100.

— Depress the clutch pedal all the way and hold.

— Move the gearshift lever into the desired position → ⚠.

— Release the clutch pedal to engage the gear.

The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Shifting into reverse

— Only shift to the reverse gear when the vehicle is not moving.

— Depress the clutch pedal fully and hold → ⚠.

— Move the gearshift lever to neutral and press down.

— Move the shift lever to the left and then push forward into the reverse gear position → fig. 100 Ⓡ.

— Release the clutch pedal to engage the gear.

Downshifting

You should always downshift gear by gear when driving, meaning always into the next lowest gear. Do not downshift when the engine rpm (revolutions per minute) is too high → ⚠. At fast speeds or high engine rpm, skipping over one or more gears when downshifting can cause damage to the clutch and transmission, even if a gear is not engaged → ⓘ.

5GM012723ST

WARNING

Downshifting to a lower gear incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control and can cause accidents and serious personal injuries.

WARNING

When the engine is running and a gear is engaged, the vehicle will start to move as soon as the clutch pedal is released. This also applies when the parking brake is engaged.

- Never shift into Reverse **(R)** when the vehicle is moving.

NOTICE

Shifting down to a gear that is too low when driving at fast speeds or high engine rpm can cause extensive damage to the clutch and transmission. That is true even if the clutch pedal is pressed so that the clutch is not engaged.

NOTICE

To help prevent damage and premature wear:

- Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. Over time, the pressure will cause premature wear in the transmission.
- Make sure that the vehicle has come to a complete stop before shifting into Reverse **(R)**.
- Always depress the clutch pedal all the way when changing gears.
- Do not hold the vehicle on a hill using engine power with the clutch pedal partially engaged and the engine running. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Clutch is "slipping"

A yellow indicator light comes on.

The clutch does not transfer all of the engine torque.

— Remove your foot from the clutch pedal, if necessary → page 133.

Transmission overheating

The yellow indicator light comes on.

A text message may also appear in the instrument cluster.

— Shift the selector lever to the **P** position and all the transmission to cool.

— If the warning does not turn off, **do not continue driving!**

— See your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. Otherwise, serious clutch or transmission damage could result.

Clutch malfunction

The yellow indicator light comes on.

The clutch pedal is malfunctioning.

— Drive carefully to your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. Otherwise, serious clutch or transmission damage could result. ◁

Automatic and DSG® transmission

How the DSG® automated transmission works

Your vehicle may be equipped with a special DSG® automated transmission that combines the performance and economy of a standard manual transmission with the comfort and convenience of a conventional automatic transmission. The DSG transmission housing contains two clutches, one that works with the odd-numbered gears (1, 3, 5 and R) and the other that works with the even-numbered gears (2, 4, 6). The dual clutch configuration enables rapid shifts between gears without loss of traction as the dual clutch seamlessly transfers the engine power from one driveshaft to the other during gear shifts. An output shaft for each of the two gearbox units transmits the drive to the driven wheels via a differential. The DSG electronic control unit, sensors, and hydraulic control for clutch engagement and gear selection form one compact weight-saving unit.

Thanks to the dual-clutch design, the DSG system is more efficient than a conventional automatic transmission. For example, while idling, a torque converter in a conventional automatic transmission is engaged all the time (increasing load and engine fuel consumption), while the DSG gradually opens the clutch, allowing the engine to idle freely. In most cases, this efficiency combined with its low weight and intelligent control means that DSG can achieve the same or better fuel consumption than a manual transmission. The clutches, like the clutch in a standard manual transmission are subject to wear over time. The DSG transmission requires periodic maintenance that is described in the → *Warranty and Maintenance*. ◁

Automatic or DSG® transmission selector lever

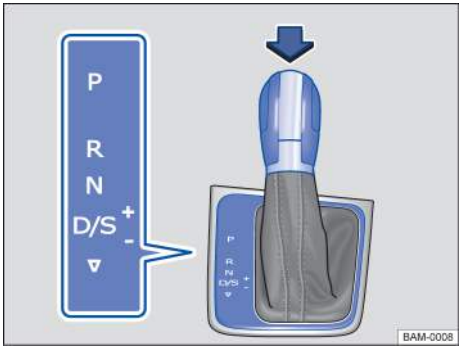


Fig. 101 Automatic or DSG transmission selector lever with shift lever release button (arrow).

If the ignition is switched on, either the current selector lever position or the current gear is shown in the instrument cluster display.

P – Park

The drive wheels are mechanically locked. Select only when the vehicle is *not moving*. To change the selector lever position, switch on the ignition (if it is off) and then press the selector lever release button while holding down the brake pedal.

R – Reverse

The reverse gear is engaged. Shift into reverse only when the vehicle is *not moving*.

N – Neutral

Transmission is in neutral position. No power is transmitted to the wheels and no engine braking is available.

D/S – Drive or Sport Drive

Standard driving position D: All forward gears shift up and down automatically. The transmission shifts as needed depending on engine load, individual driving style, and vehicle speed.

Sport driving position S: All forward gears automatically upshift *later* and downshift *earlier* than in position **D** to take full advantage of the engine's power reserves. The transmission shifts as needed depending on engine load, individual driving style, and vehicle speed.

Switch between Drive **(D)** and Sport drive **(S)** by pulling the selector lever *once* to the rear from gear position **D/S** → fig. 101. The selector lever always returns to gear position **D/S**.

It is possible to access Tiptronic selection from gear position **D/S** when either Drive **(D)** or Sport drive **(S)** is active → page 150, *Shifting with Tiptronic®*.

Tiptronic mode: In Tiptronic mode, **M** and the current gear number may appear in the instrument cluster along with the current Tiptronic gear.

Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)

The Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) in Park **(P)** and Neutral **(N)** prevents drive positions from being engaged inadvertently, which would cause the vehicle to move.

To release ASL, you must switch on the ignition, depress the brake pedal and hold it down while pressing the release button on the selector lever handle in the direction of the arrow → fig. 101 to move the selector lever out of Park **(P)** and into a drive gear.

The ASL is not engaged if the selector lever is moved quickly through Neutral **(N)** (e.g., when shifting from Reverse **(R)** to Drive **(D/S)**). This makes it possible to "rock" the vehicle backwards and forwards if it is stuck in snow or mud. The ASL engages automatically if the brake pedal is not depressed, the selector lever is in Neutral **(N)** for more than about 1 second, and the vehicle is traveling no faster than about 3 mph (5 km/h).

WARNING

Moving the selector lever to the wrong position can cause loss of vehicle control, a collision, and serious personal injury.

- Never accelerate when moving the selector lever.
- When the engine is running and a drive position is engaged, the vehicle will start to move as soon as the brake pedal is released.
- Never shift into Reverse **(R)** or Park **(P)** when the vehicle is moving.

WARNING

Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.

- Never get out of the driver's seat while the engine is running, especially when the transmission is in a drive gear. If you must leave your vehicle while the engine is running, always set the parking brake and shift the transmission to Park **(P)**.

5GM012723ST

- Never leave the vehicle in Neutral **(N)**. It will roll down hills, whether the engine is running or not.
- When the engine is running and a drive gear - Drive or Sport Drive **(D/S)** or Reverse **(R)** - has been selected, press and hold the brake pedal to keep the vehicle from moving. The vehicle may "creep" and move forward or backward even if the engine is idling slowly.
- Never shift into Reverse **(R)** or Park **(P)** when the vehicle is moving.

NOTICE

Even though the transmission is in Park **(P)**, the vehicle may move a couple of inches (a few centimeters) forwards or backwards if you take your foot off the brake pedal after stopping the vehicle **without** first setting the parking brake.

If the selector lever is moved into Neutral **(N)** by mistake when the vehicle is moving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine speed has dropped to idle speed before moving the selector lever into a drive gear.

Leaving the selector lever for a long period of time in any position other than Park **(P)** when the ignition is switched off can drain the 12 Volt vehicle battery. ◁

Shifting with Tiptronic®

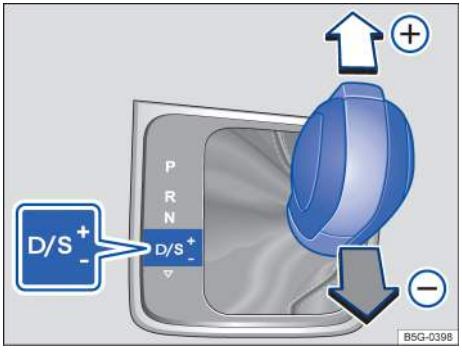


Fig. 102 Selector lever in Tiptronic position.

Fig. 103 Steering wheel with Tiptronic shift paddles (if equipped).

Tiptronic lets you upshift and downshift manually with the automatic or DSG transmission. When Tiptronic mode is used, the transmission stays in the current gear and does not upshift or downshift automatically unless the transmission senses a situation where upshifting or downshifting is necessary to keep the engine from over- or under-revving.

Using Tiptronic with the selector lever

— Push the selector lever sideways to the right from the **D/S** position into the Tiptronic position → ⚠ in *Automatic or DSG® transmission selector lever* on page 149.

— Briefly push the selector lever forward ⊕ to upshift into a higher gear or pull it backward ⊖ to downshift into a lower gear → fig. 102.

Using Tiptronic with the shift paddles behind the steering wheel (if equipped)

— The paddles → fig. 103 (arrows) work when the selector lever is in the Tiptronic position or when the selector lever is in Drive or Sport Drive **(D/S)**. You do not have to move the selector lever over to the right into the Tiptronic position.

— To upshift, pull the paddle on the right 0+ toward you.

— To downshift, pull the paddle on the left − toward you.

— To switch off Tiptronic mode, pull the paddle on the right 0+ toward you and hold it there for about 1 second.

Tiptronic will switch off automatically if the shift paddles have not been used for a while and the selector lever is not in the Tiptronic position.

NOTICE

- During acceleration, the transmission will shift automatically into the next higher gear before reaching maximum engine speed (rpm).
- If you use Tiptronic to shift into a lower gear, the transmission will downshift only when doing so will not over-rev the engine. ◁

Driving with automatic or DSG® transmission

All forward gears shift up and down automatically.

Driving on hills

The steeper the slope, the lower the gear that must be selected. Lower gears increase the braking effect of the engine. Never coast downhill in Neutral **(N)**.

— Reduce speed.

— Switch to Tiptronic mode by moving the selector lever from Drive or Sport Drive **(D/S)** to the right into the Tiptronic position → page 150, *Shifting with Tiptronic®*.

— Downshift by pulling the selector lever back briefly (-).

— **OR:** Downshift using the paddles on the steering wheel → page 150, *Using Tiptronic with the shift paddles behind the steering wheel (if equipped)*.

Vehicles with Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold): If you stop and start up again when going uphill, the Hill Start Assist feature can help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards as long as the engine is running → page 154, *Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold)*.

Vehicles without Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold): If you stop on a hill with the vehicle in gear, you must depress the brake pedal or engage the parking brake to keep the vehicle from rolling. Do not release the brake pedal or the parking brake until the vehicle has started to move forward → ⓘ.

Coasting with DSG® automated transmission

In coasting mode, the momentum of the vehicle can be used to help save fuel. The clutch opens and the engine no longer brakes the vehicle, so the vehicle can "coast" over a longer distance. The coasting feature only works when the selector lever is in position **D/S** and the vehicle speed is between about 25–80 mph (40–130 km/h).

Starting coasting mode:

— Select the **Eco** driving mode from the driving mode selection menu → page 157, *Driving Mode Selection*.

— Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. The engine is disengaged and runs in coasting mode. The vehicle rolls without the braking effect of the engine.

Cancelling coasting mode:

— Press the brake pedal briefly.

— **OR** Pull a shift paddle toward the steering wheel → page 150, *Shifting with Tiptronic®*.

— **OR** Move the selector lever to the Tiptronic position.

— **OR** Change the driving mode from **Eco** to another driving mode → page 157, *Driving Mode Selection*.

Kick-down acceleration

The kick-down feature permits maximum acceleration when the selector lever is in the Drive or Sport Drive **(D/S)** position or in Tiptronic mode.

If you push the accelerator all the way down, the vehicle will automatically downshift, depending on vehicle speed and engine speed (rpm). This feature lets you take advantage of the full acceleration capacity of the vehicle → ⚠.

With kick-down acceleration, the transmission will stay in the current gear longer and not upshift until the engine reaches maximum rpm.

Launch control program

The launch control program lets you take advantage of maximum acceleration from a standstill.

— Switch off Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) → page 191, *Braking assistance systems*.

— Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.

— Make sure your steering wheel is straight and the front wheels are pointing straight ahead.

— Move the selector lever into Sport Drive **(S)** or the Tiptronic position. For vehicles with Driving Mode Selection, select the **Sport** or **Race** driving mode → page 157, *Driving Mode Selection*.

— With your right foot, depress the accelerator pedal all the way. The engine speed automatically increases to about 3200 rpm (Golf GTI) and stays there.

— Remove your left foot from the brake → ⚠. The vehicle will accelerate from a stop at the maximum rate.

— Once you have accelerated, switch ASR back on again!

5GM012723ST

WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause skidding and loss of traction, especially on slippery roads, resulting in a loss of vehicle control, collisions, and serious personal injury.

- Only use the kick-down feature, Launch Control Program, or fast acceleration if visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions permit and other drivers will not be endangered by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.
- Always adapt your driving to the traffic flow.
- Note that the drive wheels can spin and the vehicle can swerve when ASR is switched off, especially when the road is slippery.
- Once you have accelerated, switch ASR back on again.

NOTICE

- When stopping on hills with the transmission in a drive gear, do not use the accelerator to help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards. This can cause the automatic or DSG transmission to overheat and be damaged.
- Never let the vehicle coast or roll down a hill in Neutral **(N)**, especially when the engine is not running. The transmission will not be lubricated and will be damaged.
- Launch Control acceleration uses the maximum acceleration capability of the vehicle but places significant loads on the drive train and related parts. If you do use the Launch Control feature, do not use it regularly or often to help prevent unnecessary wear on the vehicle and its systems. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Fig. 104 Removing the selector gate cover.

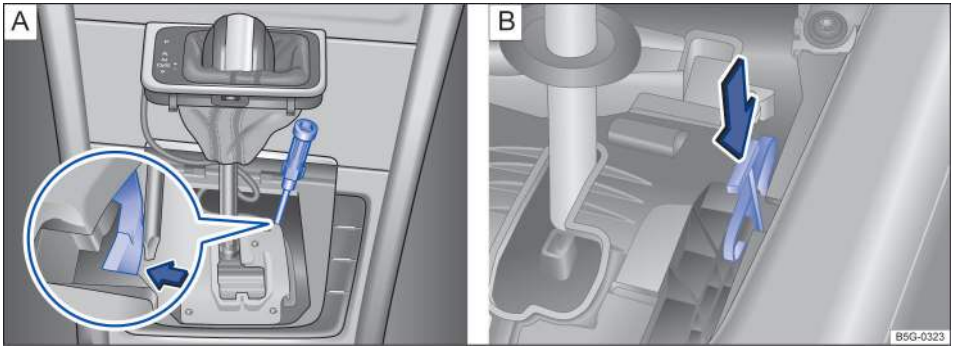


Fig. 105 Releasing the selector lever lock (versions A and B).

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

Transmission overheating

The yellow indicator light comes on.

An acoustic warning may sound and a text message may also appear in the instrument cluster.

The DSG transmission may overheat due to frequent starts, extended "creeping," or stop-and-go traffic.

- Shift the selector lever to the **P** position and let the transmission cool down.
- If the warning does not turn off, **do not continue driving!**
- See your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. Otherwise, serious clutch or transmission damage could result.

If the engine does not start

The green indicator light comes on.

The brake pedal is not depressed.

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Make sure the transmission selector lever is in position **P**.
- Try to start the engine again → page 143, *Starting the engine*.
- Also refer to electronic parking brake → page 178, *Parking brake*.

If the vehicle does not shift

The green indicator light flashes along with a text message in the instrument cluster display.

In rare cases, the ASL may not engage on vehicles with a DSG® automated transmission. If this happens, power to the drive wheels will be interrupted to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Press the release button on the transmission selector lever and try to shift again.
- **OR:** Shift the selector lever to Neutral **(N)** or Park **(P)**, then try to select a drive position again.

Emergency release for the transmission selector lever lock

If the power supply fails (due to a dead vehicle battery, for example) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the emergency release must be used to move the selector lever to Neutral **(N)**. You will need the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit to release the selector lever → page 227, *Vehicle tool kit*.

The emergency release is under the selector gate cover on the right side when viewed in the driving direction.

Removing the selector gate cover:

- Set the parking brake. If the parking brake cannot be set, you must find another way to help prevent the vehicle from moving → ⚠.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage compartment in front of the selector lever
- Using your hands, pull upward on the front of the selector gate cover to release it, then pull the selector lever sleeve upward → fig. 104.
- Slip the cover up and over the selector lever → ⚠.

Depending on equipment, the selector lever can be released differently.

Version one: → fig. 105 A

- With the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit, carefully push the colored release lever in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position .
- Press the release button in the selector lever handle and shift the selector lever to Neutral **(N)**.
- Carefully press the selector gate cover back in place, making sure that the electrical wiring stays in the correct position and is not pinched or damaged.

Version two: → fig. 105 B

- With the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit, carefully push down on the middle of the colored release lever in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position.
- Press the release button in the selector lever handle and shift the selector lever to Neutral **(N)**.
- Carefully press the selector gate cover back in place, making sure that the electrical wiring stays in the correct position and is not pinched or damaged.

Emergency shift program

If all selector lever position indicators in the instrument cluster display are highlighted against a bright background, there is a system malfunction. The automatic or DSG transmission will then operate in the emergency shift program. The emergency shift program lets you drive the vehicle, but at a reduced speed and without being able to use all of the forward gears.

In some cases, vehicles with a DSG transmission may **not be able to shift into reverse**. It is then impossible to drive the vehicle backwards.

5GM012723ST

In any event, have the automatic or DSG transmission checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If the vehicle does not move even though a drive position is selected with the transmission selector lever

If the vehicle does not move in the desired direction, the system may not have engaged the drive position correctly.

— Press the brake pedal and select the drive position again.

— If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, there is a system malfunction. See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance to have the system checked.

⚠ WARNING

Never shift the transmission out of Park **(P)** without first firmly applying the parking brake. Otherwise, the vehicle can start to roll unexpectedly, especially on hills or inclines, and cause an accident and serious injuries.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, turn on the emergency flashers, stop the engine, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.

! NOTICE

Even with the selector lever is in Neutral **(N)**, the automatic or DSG transmission will be damaged if the vehicle is towed (or you let it coast) for an extended period or at high speed with the engine shut off.

! NOTICE

- As soon as you get any of these warnings about transmission overheating, you must either park the vehicle in a safe place or drive faster than 12 mph (20 km/h).
- If the text message and acoustic warning repeat themselves every 10 seconds or so, you must park the vehicle in a safe place as soon as you can safely do so and stop the engine. Let the transmission cool down.
- To help prevent damage to the transmission, do not drive the vehicle again until the acoustic warning has stopped. As long as the engine is overheated, avoid stop and start driving and avoid low speeds (“walking pace”). ◁

Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold)

Some vehicles are equipped with Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold), a feature that helps keep the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting out on a hill, for example after stopping at a traffic light. You don't have to apply and release the parking brake while depressing the accelerator. For Hill Start Assist to work, the engine must be running and the vehicle must be in First Gear or Reverse (manual transmission) or in Drive or Sport Drive **(D/S)** or Reverse **(R)** (automatic or DSG transmission) and you must use the foot brake to hold the vehicle before starting to move.

Hill Start Assist keeps the brake applied for almost 2 seconds with the same force you used to prevent the vehicle from moving. This gives you time to take your foot off the brake, let the clutch out on a manual transmission vehicle, and gently depress the accelerator to get the vehicle moving again. If you do not depress the accelerator pedal and get the vehicle moving again within this time, the brakes will release and the vehicle will roll downhill. Furthermore, if any requirement for engaging Hill Start Assist is no longer met while the vehicle is stopped, Hill Start Assist disengages and the brakes are automatically released and will no longer hold the vehicle.

Hill Start Assist is activated automatically when the following points are met at the same time:

— Hold the **stopped** vehicle on an incline with the foot brake or parking brake.

— The engine must be running “smoothly.”

— All four wheels must have sufficient contact with the road.

— *Automatic or DSG transmission:* vehicle must be in Drive or Sport Drive **(D/S)** if headed up a hill or Reverse **(R)** if backing up a hill, and the foot brake must be depressed to keep the vehicle from moving.

— *Manual transmission:* The vehicle must be in 1st gear **(1)** if headed up a hill or in Reverse **(R)** if backing up a hill; you must hold the clutch down

and the foot brake must be depressed to keep the vehicle from moving.

Automatic or DSG transmission: To drive off, take your foot off the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator within 2 seconds.

Manual transmission: To drive off, take your foot off the brake pedal as you let the clutch out and gently depress the accelerator within 2 seconds. If the accelerator is not depressed, the brakes will release automatically.

Hill Start Assist is immediately deactivated:

— If any requirement listed above is no longer met.

— If the engine is not running smoothly or the engine malfunctions.

— If the engine stalls or is switched off.

— *Automatic or DSG transmission:* If the transmission is in Neutral **(N)**.

— *Automatic or DSG transmission:* If a tire does not have enough road contact (such as when the vehicle is tipped or at an angle).

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of Hill Start Assist cannot overcome the laws of physics. Never let the increased convenience provided by Hill Start Assist tempt you into taking risks.

- The Hill Start Assist feature cannot hold the vehicle in all hill start situations (for example, if the surface is icy or slippery).
- Hill Start Assist can only help keep the vehicle from moving for less than 2 seconds. After that, the brakes will be released and the vehicle can roll down the hill.

◁

Downhill speed control

Your vehicle may be equipped with a downhill speed control feature, which helps to support braking when driving downhill in vehicles with automatic or DSG® transmission → ⚠. The system uses the braking power of the engine.

The transmission selects the best gear for the circumstances, depending on the downhill slope and the current speed. The selector lever must be in position **D/S** → page 149, *Automatic or DSG® transmission selector lever*. Downhill speed control is not active in Tiptronic mode → page 150, *Shifting with Tiptronic®*.

The downhill speed control feature can shift down only as far as third gear, so it may be necessary to activate the Tiptronic mode when driving down very steep hills. When in Tiptronic mode, select second or first gear manually to use the braking power of the engine and relieve the load on the brakes.

If downhill speed control is active, the Start-stop system is automatically deactivated → page 146, *Start-stop system*.

Downhill speed control activates automatically if all of the following conditions apply:

— The downhill slope is greater than about 6%.

— **AND:** The selector lever is in position **D/S**.

— **AND (when the cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is switched off):** The vehicle speed is less than about 50 mph (80 km/h) **or** the brake pedal is depressed.

— **AND (when the cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active):** The stored speed is exceeded.

Downhill speed control deactivates automatically if one of the following occurs:

— The downhill slope is less than about 6%.

— **OR:** The transmission shifts up to a higher gear because the engine speed is faster than about 4,500 rpm.

— **OR (when the cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active):** The stored speed can be maintained.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the downhill speed control feature cannot overcome the laws of physics and system-related limits. Never let the increased convenience provided by the downhill speed control feature tempt you into taking risks.

- Always adjust your speed, driving style, and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.
- The downhill speed control feature is not a substitute for careful and attentive driving.
- The downhill speed control feature cannot slow the vehicle down in all situations (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
- Always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at all times.

⚠ WARNING

Always be ready to apply the brakes. Otherwise accidents and injuries can occur.

5GM012723ST

- The downhill speed control feature is merely a driving aid and cannot always slow the vehicle down enough on all downhill grades.
- The vehicle may pick up speed even though the downhill speed control feature is active.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with too little fuel in the fuel tank increases the risk of stalling, especially when driving up and down hills.

- If your vehicle stalls suddenly, this can cause an accident and serious personal injuries.
- Driver assistance and braking assistance systems can malfunction when there is too little fuel in the tank and cause you to lose control of the vehicle.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is almost empty. ◁

Steering

Steering system information

To help prevent vehicle theft, you should always make sure the steering column is locked before leaving the vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical power steering system. The power steering works only when the engine is running.

The electromechanical power steering system automatically adjusts to driving speed, steering torque, and the steering angle of the wheels. It delivers extra steering force only when you are actually turning the wheels.

In vehicles with Driving Mode Selection, the selected driving mode can affect the steering behavior → page 157, *Driving Mode Selection*.

Electronic steering column lock (vehicles with Keyless Access)

In vehicles with a starter button, the steering column is locking electronically:

— Bring the vehicle to a stop.

— *Automatic or DSG transmission:* Shift the transmission to Park **(P)**.

— Switch off the ignition and then open the driver door. The steering column is locked.

If the steering column should **not** be locked, first open the driver door, and then switch off the ignition. The steering column will not lock until the vehicle is locked.

Mechanical steering column lock (vehicles without Keyless Access)

In vehicles with an ignition switch, the steering column is locked mechanically:

— Bring the vehicle to a stop.

— *Automatic or DSG transmission:* Shift the transmission to Park **(P)**.

— Remove the vehicle key from the ignition switch.

— Turn the steering wheel slightly until the steering column lock clicks into place.

To disengage the steering column lock, insert the vehicle key into the ignition switch. Turn the steering wheel slightly to take pressure off the steering column lock. Hold the steering wheel in this position and turn the ignition switch.

Power steering

Power steering automatically adjusts to driving speed, steering torque, and the steering angle of the wheels. Power steering works only when the engine is running.

If power steering is reduced or lost completely, it will be much harder to steer and control the vehicle.

Counter-steering assistance

Counter-steering assistance makes it easier for the driver to control the vehicle in difficult situations. For example, if you have to brake hard on a surface that provides uneven traction, counter-steering assistance detects this situation and helps the driver counter-steer with additional steering power → ⚠.

Progressive steering (Golf GTI only)

Your vehicle may be equipped with progressive steering, which can adjust the force of the steering movement in a driving situation. Progressive steering only works when the engine is running.

In *city traffic*, less steering input is required when parking, maneuvering, or turning sharply.

When driving on *country roads* or *highways*, the progressive steering provides a more sporty, direct steering response and a more dynamic feel.

⚠ WARNING

Turning the steering wheel is very hard when the power steering system is not working. This makes it harder to steer and control the vehicle.

- Power steering works only when the engine is running.
- Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button

while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.

WARNING

The counter-steering assistance in ESC can do no more than help the driver steer in difficult situations. The driver must still control the vehicle. The vehicle does not steer by itself with this feature!

NOTICE

If the ignition is off, the steering column lock will engage and the vehicle cannot be steered. For this reason, you must leave the ignition on when going through an automatic car wash, for example, so that the wheels will still steer.

NOTICE

When towing the vehicle with a tow bar or tow rope, always leave the ignition on to prevent the steering wheel from locking, and so that the turn signals, horn, windshield wipers, and window washer system can be used. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

Power steering malfunction

The red warning light comes on or flashes.

The electronic steering column lock is malfunctioning.

— **Stop!** Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

— When the red warning light **comes on and stays on**, the power steering may be reduced or lost completely. It may be much harder to steer and control the vehicle.

— When the red warning light **flashes**, The steering column lock cannot be unlocked. Get professional assistance.

Steering malfunction

The yellow indicator light comes on or flashes.

When the indicator light **comes on and stays on**, restart the engine, and slowly drive a short distance. If the indicator light stays on, have the steering checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If the indicator light **flashes**:

— Turn the steering wheel back and forth.

— Switch the ignition off and then switch it on again.

— Heed any messages shown in the instrument cluster display, if applicable.

— **Do not drive any farther** if the indicator light continues to flash after you switch on the ignition. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, turn on the emergency flashers, switch off the engine, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.
- Park the vehicle where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage. ◁

Driving Mode Selection

Introduction

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Driving Mode Selection feature.

By selecting different driving modes, the driver can adapt the characteristics of certain vehicle systems to the current driving situation, the desired ride comfort and an economical driving style. The adaptable vehicle systems include the suspension, engine management system or the air conditioning system.

5GM012723ST

For vehicles equipped with Driving Mode Selection, you can choose from different driving modes with a variety of characteristics. The possible driving modes may vary, depending on vehicle equipment.

The driving mode **Comfort** is only available in vehicles with Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC). Adaptive chassis control DCC (if equipped) continuously adjusts the suspension characteristics to match the current road and driving conditions in accordance with the selected driving mode.

The driving mode can be changed while the vehicle is not moving or when it is moving. After selecting a driving mode, the vehicle settings (excluding engine settings) are switched to the new driving mode immediately.

WARNING

Changing the driving mode can alter vehicle handling. Never allow Driving Mode Selection to tempt you into taking extra risks.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.

WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never let yourself be distracted when selecting a driving mode or using the Infotainment system.
- Always drive attentively and responsibly. Use the Driving Mode Selection feature and the Infotainment system only if road, traffic, and weather conditions permit and you will not be distracted from your driving.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Selecting a driving mode

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 157.

Fig. 106 In the lower center console: Driving Mode Selection button (if equipped).

For vehicles equipped with driving mode selection, the available driving modes as well as the effect on the vehicle settings in the individual driving modes depend on vehicle equipment.

When traffic conditions allow, briefly take your foot off the accelerator to activate the newly selected driving mode for the engine.

Selecting the driving mode

— Switch on the ignition.

— Press the Driving Mode Selection button MODE → fig. 106.

— To change the driving mode, press the Driving Mode Selection button MODE until the desired driving mode is highlighted.

— **OR:** Tap the function key for the selected driving mode in the Infotainment system display.

— If necessary, tap the information function key (i) to display additional information about the current driving mode.

— Tap the ⊠ function key to close the menu.

Some settings for the selected driving mode may stay set even after the ignition is switched off, and other settings may return to **Normal** mode. For example, if the **Sport** mode is active when the ignition is switched off, the automatic or DSG transmission may return to the **D** position when the ignition is switched back on.

To change all settings back to the selected driving mode:

— For **Sport**: Select the **Sport** driving mode again, or briefly pull the selector lever back → page 149, *Automatic or DSG® transmission selector lever*.

— For **Eco**: Select the **Eco** driving mode again.

Driving mode characteristics

— **Eco**: Sets the vehicle in a low consumption mode and supports the driver with more eco-friendly driving.

— **Comfort**: Gives the vehicle a more comfortable driving feel, which may be preferred, for example, on bumpy road conditions or on long highway drives.

— **Normal**: Balanced setting for everyday use.

— **Sport**: Gives the vehicle a sporty driving feel and is suited for a sporty driving style. In vehicles with an automatic or DSG transmission, the transmission automatically shifts to Sport drive **(S)** when the **Sport** driving mode is selected.

— **Custom**: Individual systems can be adjusted to suit your personal requirements → page 159, *Adjusting the Custom driving mode*.

The Driving Mode Selection button MODE lights up when a mode other than **Normal** has been selected.

The driver can adjust certain vehicle functions, regardless of the selected driving mode. For example, the driver can shift the selector lever to Sport drive **(S)**, even if the **Eco** driving mode is selected. ◁

Adjusting the Custom driving mode

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 157.

The systems that can be adjusted to your individual requirements depend on the vehicle equipment.

— Switch on the ignition.

— If necessary, switch on the Infotainment system.

— Press the Driving Mode Selection button MODE and tap the Custom function key in the Infotainment system display.

— Tap the Adjust function key to open the **Custom** menu. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 157.

Adaptive chassis control DCC system malfunction (if equipped)

The yellow indicator light comes on.

A text message may also appear in the instrument cluster.

— Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning and indicator lights and instrument cluster text messages can result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning and indicator lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always heed warning and indicator lights and take action where necessary.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning and indicator lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage. ◁

5GM012723ST

Driver assistance systems

Cruise control

Introduction

Your vehicle may be equipped with cruise control, which helps maintain an individually stored constant speed.

Cruise control slows down the vehicle only by reducing the flow of fuel to the engine, not by braking → ⚠.

Speed range

Cruise control is available when driving forward at speeds above about 15 mph (25 km/h).

Driving with cruise control

You can exceed the stored speed at any time, for example, when passing another vehicle. Speed regulation is interrupted while you accelerate and then resumed to the stored speed.

Operating cruise control

You can operate cruise control with the multi-function steering wheel → page 160, *Using cruise control*.

Displays

Different cruise control versions are available. The stored speed is shown in the instrument cluster display, depending on equipment.

CRUISE Cruise control is regulating speed.

Cruise control is regulating speed.

Displayed in gray or small: Cruise control not regulating speed. *Shown in white or large:* Cruise control regulating speed.

If no speed is stored, — is shown in the instrument cluster display instead of the speed.

Changing gears when cruise control is active (manual transmission only)

The cruise control reduces acceleration as soon as the clutch pedal is pressed, and automatically continues to regulate the speed after a gear change.

Driving downhill with cruise control

If cruise control cannot maintain constant speed while driving downhill, slow the vehicle with the foot brake and downshift if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

Using the cruise control when it is not possible to drive safely at a constant speed can be dangerous and can lead to an accident and serious personal injuries.

- Never use cruise control when driving in heavy or varying traffic or when you cannot keep a safe distance between you and the vehicles ahead of you.
- Never use cruise control on steep, winding, or slippery roads (such gravel roads, wet roads, or snowy or icy roads) or on roads with standing water.
- Never use cruise control when driving off-road or on unpaved roads.
- Always adjust your speed and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- To help prevent unintended operation of cruise control, switch the system off when it is not being used.
- It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too high for the existing road, traffic, or weather conditions.
- When going downhill, the cruise control may not be able to maintain a constant speed. The vehicle will speed up because of its own weight. Downshift and/or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle. ◁

Using cruise control

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 160.

Fig. 107 Left-hand side of the multi-function steering wheel: Buttons for operating the cruise control.

Switching on

— Press the button.

System is switched on, but does not regulate vehicle speed until a speed is set.

Setting the current speed

— Press the SET button when the vehicle is moving.

The current vehicle speed is set; cruise control helps to maintain this speed.

The green indicator light or CRUISE comes on.

Adjusting the set speed

You can adjust the stored speed while cruise control is regulating by briefly pressing the following buttons:

+ + 1 mph (1 km/h)

- - 1 mph (1 km/h)

To adjust the stored speed continuously, press and hold the + or - button.

Cruise control will accelerate to adapt the vehicle speed, or slow the vehicle down *without braking* by reducing the flow of fuel to the engine until the new lower speed is reached.

Temporarily deactivating cruise control

— Briefly press the CNL or button on the multifunction steering wheel.

— **OR:** Depress the brake pedal.

The speed remains stored in the memory.

Resuming cruise control

— Press the RES button.

Cruise control resumes at the speed previously set.

Switching off

— Press and hold the button.

The cruise control system is switched off and the stored speed is deleted. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 160.

Cruise control system malfunction

— Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealership or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Cruise control is automatically deactivated or temporarily interrupted

— If the system detects an error that could affect the function of the cruise control.

— If the vehicle has accelerated and goes faster than the stored speed for a longer time.

— If the brake pedal is depressed.

— If regulation related to driving dynamics is taking place, for example, through ESC.

— If an airbag deploys.

— *Automatic transmission:* If the selector lever is shifted to Neutral **(N)**. The cruise control will not deactivate when shifting between **D/S** and Tiptronic mode.

— If there is an automatic braking maneuver from the Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist) system → page 167, *Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)*.

If the system does not respond as expected, switch the system off and have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealership or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. ◁

5GM012723ST

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Adaptive Cruise Control system (ACC), which helps maintain an individually stored constant speed and a previously set speed-dependent distance interval between your vehicle and those in front of you.

In certain situations, your vehicle may be braked **to a standstill** by an **automatic braking maneuver**.

ACC speed range

ACC works when the vehicle speed is between about 20 mph (30 km/h) and 95 mph (150 km/h).

Driving with ACC

You can override control by ACC at any time. If you press the brake pedal, ACC will be deactivated. If you accelerate, control will be interrupted while you are accelerating and then resumed.

Driver intervention warning

Adaptive Cruise Control has system-related limits. As a driver, you must control the speed and the distance to other vehicles under some circumstances. If the deceleration of the ACC automatic braking system is not sufficient to bring the vehicle to a full stop in time, a message in the instrument cluster display and a red warning light come on. **Depress the brake pedal!**

Radar sensor

The ACC system works together with the Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist) system, if equipped → page 167, *Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)*. Both systems use the same radar sensor at the front of the vehicle to monitor the traffic situation → page 5, *Front view*.

WARNING

Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control has limits – Using Adaptive Cruise Control when it is not possible to drive safely at a constant speed can be dangerous and can lead to an accident and serious personal injury.

- Adaptive Cruise Control will not slow the vehicle down or maintain the set distance when you drive towards an obstacle or something on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, a stalled or disabled vehicle.
- Always adjust your speed and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control on steep, winding, or slippery roads (such gravel roads, wet roads, or snowy or icy roads) or on roads with standing water.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control when driving off-road or on unpaved roads.
- Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect a vehicle that is driving towards you in your traffic lane and that it cannot detect narrow vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.
- Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The Adaptive Cruise Control cannot slow or brake the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control has a braking power that is only about 30% of the vehicle's maximum braking ability, under certain circumstances the automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a stop in time.
- Always turn off Adaptive Cruise Control when entering turn lanes, exit lanes and construction zones or in similar situations because the vehicle will automatically accelerate to the stored speed when the road ahead is clear.
- To help prevent unintended operation of Adaptive Cruise Control, switch the system off when it is not being used.
- It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too high for the existing road, traffic, or weather conditions.
- When traveling downhill, the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to maintain a constant speed. The vehicle will speed up because of its own weight. Downshift and/or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle.
- Never allow the closing speed between you and other vehicles to be so high that the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to slow your vehicle safely. If closing speed is too high, you must apply the brakes yourself to reduce the risk of a rear-end crash.
- If a driver intervention warning or Front Assist warning appears in the instrument cluster display, immediately take over the control of the brake and gas pedals and slow down the vehicle or bring it to stop when necessary and according to the traffic situation.
- Always be prepared to take over the control of the brake and the gas pedal in every situation.

NOTICE

If you suspect that ACC doesn't work properly or the sensors are damaged, switch off ACC immediately.

- See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance and have the ACC system checked.

The maximum speed for ACC is restricted to 95 mph (150 km/h).

If the ACC is active, you may hear noise during the automatic braking procedure. This is normal; the noises are caused by the braking system.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is on → page 322, *Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems*. ◁

Special driving situations

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 162.

Adaptive Cruise Control has physical and system-related limits. The driver may therefore feel that, in certain circumstances, some Adaptive Cruise Control reactions are unwanted or occur with a delay. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle whenever necessary.

Stop and go traffic (automatic or DSG transmission only)

If a moving vehicle ahead of your vehicle brakes to a standstill, the ACC will also brake your vehicle to a standstill. The vehicle is then held stationary by the brakes for no more than a few seconds. **You must press the brake pedal or the vehicle will start moving forward again!**

To drive off after a stationary phase, press the accelerator pedal. To resume ACC, press the RES button on the multi-function steering wheel and the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will resume speed regulation as long as the vehicle in front is moving again.

⚠ WARNING

If ACC brings your vehicle to a complete stop before the system prompts you to brake and the stationary vehicle ahead starts moving, your vehicle will also start moving automatically. In some cases the radar sensor may be unable to detect obstacles in the vehicle's path. This can result in serious injury and accidents.

- Always check the road ahead before the vehicle pulls away. If necessary, cancel the pulling away procedure by depressing the brake pedal. ◁

Limits of ACC

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 162.

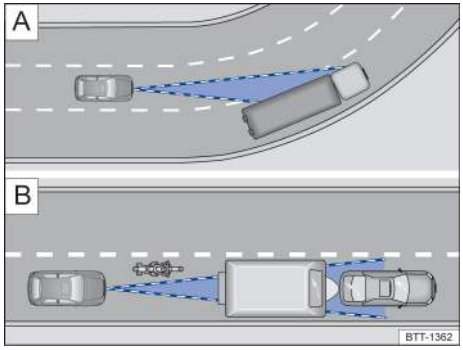


Fig. 108 A Driving in a curve. B Motorcycle traveling ahead outside of the sensor range.

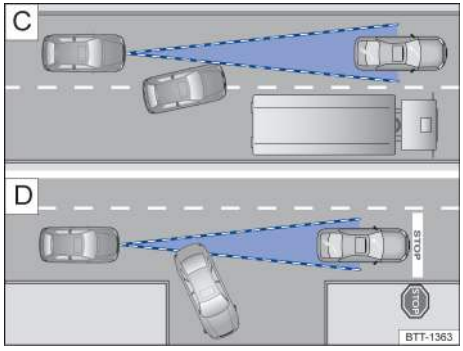


Fig. 109 C Vehicle changing lanes. D A turning and a stationary vehicle ahead.

When to switch off ACC

Switch off ACC under the following conditions due to system limitations → ⚠:

— When driving around curves, turn lanes, highway ramps, or construction zones; to prevent unwanted acceleration of the vehicle.

5GM012723ST

— When driving through tunnels.

— On roads with more than one lane, if other vehicles are driving more slowly in the fast lane. Vehicles in other lanes will normally not be detected and will, in this case, be passed from the slow lane.

— When driving in multi-level garages or parking structures.

— When there are metal objects, for example, tracks or metal plates in the road.

— When driving on roads with gravel or loose pavement.

— Under bad weather conditions or bad visibility, for example, in heavy rain, snowfall, or fog.

Things that can prevent the radar sensor from working properly

If the radar sensor function is impaired by heavy rain, spray, snow or mud, Adaptive Cruise Control switches off temporarily. A driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display. Clean the radar sensors as required.

The Adaptive Cruise Control will automatically be available again as soon as the radar sensor is working properly. The message in the instrument cluster display switches off, and the Adaptive Cruise Control can be reactivated.

Strong reflected radar signals, for example, in multi-level parking structures, can prevent the radar sensor from working properly.

Objects that cannot be detected

The ACC radar sensor can only detect vehicles that are moving in the same direction as your vehicle.

Objects that cannot be detected by the radar sensor include:

— People.

— Animals.

— Stationary vehicles, such as a broken-down vehicle or a vehicle that is stopped at the end of a traffic jam.

— Vehicles crossing in front of your vehicle.

— Oncoming traffic in your lane.

— Other stationary objects.

If a vehicle detected by Adaptive Cruise Control turns or changes lanes and there is a stationary vehicle in front of that vehicle, the system will not react to the stationary vehicle → fig. 109 D. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

Driving around curves and traffic circles

When driving into a curve and driving out of a long curve, the radar sensor may react to a vehicle in the next lane → fig. 108 A. In such situations, the vehicle might decelerate unnecessarily or not react to the vehicle in front. In this case, you must either override the ACC by depressing the accelerator, interrupt the braking procedure by depressing the brake pedal, or press the button on the multifunction steering wheel → page 165, *Switching ACC on and off*.

Narrow vehicles and vehicles offset to one side

Narrow vehicles and vehicles traveling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle can only be detected by the radar sensor when they are within sensor range → fig. 108 B. This applies especially to narrow vehicles such as motorcycles. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

Narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles traveling ahead of you, are often detected late or not at all under some circumstances.

Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles that change into your lane a short distance ahead of you can only be detected by the radar sensor once they are within sensor range → fig. 109 C. The result is a delayed reaction by the Adaptive Cruise Control. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

Vehicles with oversize loads or special equipment

Under certain circumstances, ACC will not correctly recognize vehicles carrying oversize loads or loads that exceed the vehicle dimensions, like flatbed trailer trucks.

Switch off ACC when driving behind or while passing such vehicles. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

⚠ WARNING

Not deactivating Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) in the situations mentioned above can cause collisions, other accidents, and serious personal injury. ◁

Switching ACC on and off

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice and on page 162.

Fig. 110 Left-hand side of the multi-function steering wheel: Buttons for operating the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).

Switching ACC on

— Press the button.

ACC is switched on The gray indicator light or comes on, ACC does not regulate.

Setting the current speed

— Press the SET button when the vehicle is moving.

ACC saves the current speed and maintains the preset distance interval to the vehicle in front. If the current speed is outside the defined speed range, ACC will set the minimum speed (when driving more slowly than the minimum speed) or maximum speed (when driving faster than the maximum speed).

Depending on the driving situation, the following indicator lights come on when ACC is switched on:

ACC is active.

No vehicle has been detected ahead.

Vehicle detected ahead.

Temporarily deactivating ACC

— Briefly press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.

— **OR:** Depress the brake pedal.

Depending on whether a vehicle is detected ahead, either the or indicator light stays on in the instrument cluster display, and the speed and distance interval remain stored.

When ASR is switched off, ACC is automatically deactivated.

Resuming ACC

— Press the RES button.

ACC uses the most recently set speed and most recently set distance interval to the vehicle in front. The instrument cluster display shows the set speed, and the green indicator light comes on.

Switching ACC off

— Press and hold the button.

ACC is switched off and the stored speed is deleted. ◁

Adjusting settings for ACC

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice and on page 162.

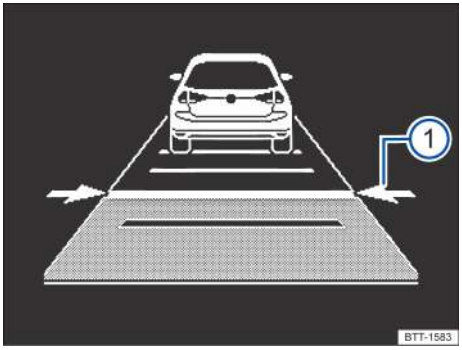


Fig. 111 In the instrument cluster display: ACC active, vehicle detected ahead, time interval is being set 1 (displayed in color on an instrument cluster with color display).

Setting the distance interval

You can set the speed-dependent distance from the vehicle ahead to one of 5 levels ranging from very close to very far.

— Press the button and then the + or − button on the multi-function steering wheel.

— **OR:** Press the button until the required distance is set.

The ACC display appears when the button is pressed. The ACC display shows the current distance interval → fig. 111 1.

5GM012723ST

If ACC is switched off, the set distance interval and the vehicle are not shown in the instrument cluster display.

In wet road conditions, you should always set a larger distance than when driving in dry road conditions.

Adjusting the set speed

You can set a speed within the defined speed range as follows by briefly pressing the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel:

(+) + 1 mph (1 km/h)

(-) - 1 mph (1 km/h)

To adjust the stored speed continuously, press and hold the (+) or (-) button.

Adjusting the driving mode or drive program

You can adjust the driving mode or drive program, depending on equipment, to set how sporty the ACC acceleration or deceleration response is:

— *Vehicles with Driving Mode Selection:* Set the driving mode → page 157, *Driving Mode Selection*.

— *Vehicles without Driving Mode Selection:* Set the drive program in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Deactivating adaptive cruise control

— Press the button.

— Select the speed regulation on the instrument cluster display.

Adaptive cruise control is deactivated. The vehicle maintains only the set speed.

WARNING

Following other vehicles too closely increases the risk of collisions and serious personal injury or even death.

- Always obey applicable traffic laws when setting the distance to the vehicles ahead in traffic.
- Setting short distances to the traffic ahead reduces the time and distance available to bring your vehicle to a safe stop and makes it even more necessary to pay close attention or traffic.
- Always use good judgment and select a safe following distance for the traffic, road and weather conditions.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control on narrow or winding roads or under poor road conditions (snow, ice, streets covered with standing water or gravel, for example) or when visibility is poor, especially when it is foggy.
- Always select a greater following distance to the vehicle ahead on wet roads than on dry roads.

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice and on page 162.

ACC not available

The yellow indicator light comes on.

Possible causes:

— The radar sensor is dirty. Clean the radar sensor → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

— Radar sensor visibility is impaired by weather conditions such as snow, or residue from abrasive cleaning agents or coatings. Clean the radar sensor → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

— Radar sensor visibility is impaired by aftermarket components, stickers, or accessories.

— The radar sensor has been damaged or misaligned in low speed impacts or parking maneuvers at the front of the vehicle. Have the sensor checked for damage → page 316, *Repairs and technical modifications*.

— ACC malfunction. Switch the engine off and on again.

— Paint work or structural modifications have been made at the front of the vehicle.

— The original Volkswagen emblem is not being used.

— If the problem persists, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If the system is not responding as expected

Possible causes:

— The radar sensor is dirty. Clean the radar sensor → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

— ACC is functioning in a situation in which it should be deactivated due to system limitations → page 163, *Limits of ACC*.

— The brakes are overheated from braking maneuvers or driving down steeper slopes. A driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display. Allow the brakes to cool down and activate ACC again.

— If the problem persists, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If ACC will not switch on

Make sure that the following conditions are met:

— *Manual transmission:* A forward gear (other than first gear) is selected.

— *Automatic or DSG transmission:* The selector lever is in position **D/S** or Tiptronic position.

— The brake lights on the vehicle are working.

— ESC is not regulating.

— The brake pedal is not depressed.

If there are unusual noises during automatic braking

— This is normal and is not a malfunction. ◁

Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)

Introduction

Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist), which can warn the driver of a possible collision with a vehicle on the road ahead, help prepare the vehicle for emergency braking, assist with braking, and initiate automatic braking, within physical and technical limits of the system. The timing of the warning varies depending on the traffic situation and the actions of the driver.

The Front Assist system is not a substitute for the driver's full concentration.

Driving with Front Assist

You can cancel Front Assist automatic braking interventions by steering or depressing the accelerator pedal.

Automatic braking

The Front Assist system can, within system limits, slow your vehicle down to a standstill, but not keep your vehicle stopped for a long time. If necessary, apply the vehicle brakes!

During an automatic braking maneuver, the brake pedal will feel harder.

Radar sensor

The Forward Collision Warning system, when switched on, uses a radar sensor to gather information about the driving situation → page 5, *Front view*.

Features included

Front Assist includes Autonomous Emergency Braking and a Pedestrian Monitoring system. These systems are automatically activated when Front Assist is activated.

WARNING

The Front Assist system technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and system-related limits. Do not allow the increased convenience Front Assist can provide tempt you into taking extra risks. The driver is always responsible for braking in time. If the Front Assist system issues a warning, immediately apply the brake to slow the vehicle down or avoid the obstacle, depending on the traffic situation.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- The Front Assist system cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries on its own.
- The Front Assist system can issue unnecessary warnings in certain complex driving situations, for example, when driving in tight curves.
- The Front Assist system can issue unnecessary warnings when its function is impaired, for example, if the radar sensor is dirty or if the position of the radar sensor has been changed.
- The Front Assist system does not react to animals.
- The Front Assist system does not react to vehicles crossing your path or approaching in the same lane.
- Always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at all times.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is on → page 322, *Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems*. ◁

5GM012723ST

Driver warnings and Autonomous Emergency Braking

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 167.

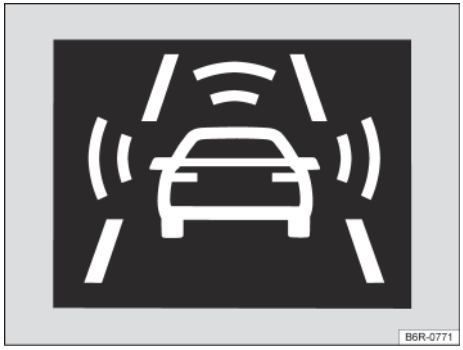


Fig. 112 In the instrument cluster display: Advance warning (symbol displayed in color on an instrument cluster with color display).

Depending on equipment and system limits, Front Assist can detect the following objects directly in front of your vehicle:

— Pedestrians and vehicles moving in the same direction as your vehicle.

— Pedestrians who are crossing in front of your vehicle.

— Stopped vehicles.

If you are approaching a detected object at a speed which will result in a collision and you do not act immediately, Front Assist can help minimize the effects of a collision. First comes an advanced warning, then an immediate warning, and finally, an automatic braking maneuver.

Front Assist functions in these speed ranges:

	Advance warning	Immediate warning	Automatic braking	Braking support
Stopped vehicle	20 to 53 mph (30 to 85 km/h)	-	3 to 30 mph (5 to 50 km/h)	3 to 53 mph (5 to 85 km/h)
Vehicle moving in the same direction	20 to 155 mph (30 to 250 km/h)	20 to 155 mph (30 to 250 km/h)	3 to 155 mph (5 to 250 km/h)	3 to 155 mph (5 to 250 km/h)
Pedestrian moving in the same direction	20 to 40 mph (30 to 65 km/h)	-	-	-
Pedestrian crossing in front of the vehicle	20 to 40 mph (30 to 65 km/h)	-	3 to 40 mph (5 to 65 km/h)	-

The speed ranges given in the table are only in ideal situations and are approximations.

Advance warning

The system warns the driver with a warning chime and a message in the instrument cluster display → fig. 112 if it detects a possible collision with a vehicle or a pedestrian.

The warning period varies according to the traffic situation and your driving style.

Brake or take action to avoid the vehicle ahead!

However, do not rely solely on Front Assist. Under certain conditions, the reactions of Front Assist may be unexpected or delayed from the driver's viewpoint. Always pay attention and take over if necessary → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 167.

Immediate warning

If you fail to react accordingly to the advance warning, Front Assist may initiate a short, active braking maneuver. In this case you will notice brief, jerky braking of the vehicle to warn you of an impending collision.

The timing of this alert can vary, depending on the traffic situation and your driving style.

Automatic braking

If you should also fail to react to the immediate warning, Front Assist can initiate an automatic braking maneuver that will **abruptly decelerate the vehicle** with increased braking force. The emergency braking maneuver occurs shortly before a potential collision to reduce vehicle speed and help to minimize the effects of a collision.

Braking support

Front Assist can help to minimize the effects of a collision by providing additional braking force in an emergency braking situation should the system detect that the force applied to the brake pedal by the driver is not sufficient to avoid a collision. In order for Front Assist to provide this additional braking assistance, it must have detected an impending collision with another vehicle ahead of yours and the brake pedal has to be hit hard and suddenly. However, this support only works as long as the brake pedal is depressed.

Autonomous Emergency Braking

The Autonomous Emergency Braking system is a part of Front Assist. In case of an impending collision, the Autonomous Emergency Braking system can initiate an automatic braking maneuver without the advance or immediate warnings to reduce vehicle speed and help to minimize the effects of a collision → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 167.

The automatic braking maneuver occurs **simultaneously** with a warning in the instrument cluster display → fig. 112.

The warning light comes on.

System deactivated

If the system is switched off, a text message and the yellow symbol appear in the instrument cluster display. The yellow central caution light ⚠ may also light up.

Distance warning

If the vehicle is traveling within a speed range of about 40–155 mph (65–250 km/h), the system warns the driver with the symbol in the instrument cluster display if it detects that your vehicle is driving too close to the vehicle ahead → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 167. No acoustic warning will sound.

The warning period varies according to the traffic situation and your driving style.

Increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. ◁

System limits

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 167.

Front Assist has physical and system-related limits. You should always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle whenever necessary.

Delayed response

If the radar sensor is exposed to environmental conditions that impair sensor function, the system may detect this only after a certain delay. For this reason, possible functional restrictions may be displayed only after a delay after you start driving and while driving → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 167.

Objects that cannot be detected

Front Assist may react unnecessarily, react with delay, or not react at all in the following situations:

- When vehicles or motorcycles are traveling slightly offset to the left or right in front of your vehicle.
- When loads or attachment parts on other vehicles in front of your vehicle protrude to the side, rear, or above the normal vehicle dimensions.
- When there is oncoming traffic.
- When vehicles are crossing in front of your vehicle.
- When pedestrians are standing or moving toward you.

System limitations

Front Assist may react unnecessarily, react with delay, or not react at all in the following situations:

- When driving in tight curves.
- When weather conditions are poor.
- When driving in parking garages.
- When there are metal objects, for example, tracks or metal plates in the road.

5GM012723ST

— When the vehicle is in Reverse **(R)**.
— When the ASR is manually switched off.
— When the ESC is taking corrective action.
— When the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
— When several brake lights on the vehicle are not working.
— When the vehicle is accelerating quickly.
— When the accelerator pedal is completely depressed.
— When the system cannot detect the traffic situation clearly.
— When there is a fault in the Front Assist system.

When to switch off Front Assist

Front Assist should be switched off in the following situations due to system limitations → ⚠:

— If the vehicle is not being driven on public roads, for example, off-road or on a track.
— If the vehicle is being towed.
— If the vehicle is being loaded onto a truck, ferry, or train.
— If the radar sensor is covered (even temporarily) by any accessories or other equipment, for example, auxiliary headlights.
— If the radar sensor malfunctions.
— If an external force has affected the radar sensor, for example, after a collision.
— If the vehicle is on a dynamometer test bed.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to switch off Front Assist in the situations mentioned can cause accidents and serious personal injury. ◁

Pedestrian Monitoring

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 167.

The Forward Collision Warning system includes a Pedestrian Monitoring feature that can help prevent accidents with pedestrians crossing the street or help minimize the outcome of an accident.

The system alerts you of an impending collision, prepares the vehicle for emergency braking, provides support when braking, or performs an automatic braking maneuver.

If the system gives the driver an advanced warning, a message appears and the warning light comes on in the instrument cluster to warn the driver of an impending collision → page 168, *Driver warnings and Autonomous Emergency Braking*.

If the Front Assist system is switched on → page 170, *Using Front Assist*, then Pedestrian Monitoring is also active within a speed range of about 3–40 mph (5–65 km/h).

⚠ WARNING

The Pedestrian Monitoring technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and system-related limits. Never let the increased convenience provided by the Pedestrian Monitoring system tempt you into taking extra risks. The driver is always responsible for braking in time. If the Pedestrian Monitoring system issues a warning, immediately apply the brakes to slow the vehicle down or avoid the pedestrian, depending on the traffic situation.

- Always adjust your speed, driving style, and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- The Pedestrian Monitoring system cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries on its own.
- The Pedestrian Monitoring system can issue unnecessary warnings in certain complex driving situations, for example, when driving in tight curves.
- The Pedestrian Monitoring system can issue unnecessary warnings or braking maneuvers when its function is impaired, for example, if the radar sensor is dirty or if the position of the radar sensor has been changed.
- The Pedestrian Monitoring system does not react to animals.
- The Pedestrian Monitoring system does not react to pedestrians who are standing still or moving toward you.
- Always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at all times. ◁

Using Front Assist

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 167.

The Front Assist system and the advance warning are automatically active once the ignition is switched on → page 141, *Starting and stopping the engine*.

Volkswagen recommends that the Front Assist system be switched on at all times, except in the specif-

ic situations described in this Manual → page 169, *System limits*.

Turning Front Assist on or off

— You can turn Front Assist on or off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

— **OR:** In the **Assist systems** menu in the instrument cluster display → page 18, *Instrument cluster menus*.

— **OR:** Press the driver assistance systems button on the multi-function steering wheel to open the **Assist systems** menu → page 25, *Driver assistance systems button*.

If the system is switched off, the advance warning and distance warning are also automatically switched off. A text message and the yellow symbol appear in the instrument cluster display → page 168, *Driver warnings and Autonomous Emergency Braking*. The yellow central caution light may also light up.

Adjusting settings for the distance and advance warnings

— You can turn the distance warning and the advance warning on or off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

— You can also adjust the warning period for the advance warning.

Volkswagen recommends that the distance and advance warnings be switched on at all times.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice on page 167.

If Front Assist is unavailable or radar sensor visibility is insufficient

Possible causes:

— The radar sensor is dirty. Clean the radar sensor → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

— Radar sensor visibility is impaired by weather conditions such as snow, or residue from abrasive cleaning agents or coatings. Clean the radar sensor → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

— Radar sensor visibility is impaired by aftermarket components, stickers, or accessories.

— The radar sensor has been damaged or misaligned in low speed impacts or parking maneuvers at the front of the vehicle. Have the sensor checked for damage → page 316, *Repairs and technical modifications*.

— Paint work or structural modifications have been made at the front of the vehicle.

— The original Volkswagen emblem is not being used.

— When the ASR is manually switched off or ESC Sport is switched on → page 193, *Switching Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) and ESC Sport mode on and off*.

— If the problem persists, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If the system is not responding as expected

Possible causes:

— The radar sensor is dirty. Clean the radar sensor → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

— Front Assist is functioning in a situation in which it should be deactivated due to system limitations → page 163, *Limits of ACC*.

— If the problem persists, switch off Front Assist see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

NOTICE

If you notice that Front Assist doesn't work properly or the sensor is damaged, switch off Front Assist immediately.

- See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance and have the Front Assist system checked. ◁

Lane Keeping system (Lane Assist)

Introduction

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Lane Assist system, which can warn you if your vehicle unintentionally leaves the current drive lane.

With the help of a camera → page 5, *Front view*, Lane Assist can recognize certain lane markings for the lane in which the vehicle is moving. Should the vehicle leave this area unintentionally, for example, when leaving the lane without activating a turn sig-

5GM012723ST

nal, the system will warn you with a *steering correction*. The driver can override the steering correction at any time.

Vehicles without Blind Spot Monitor: Lane Assist will not warn you of a lane change if you activate the turn signal, because the system will assume that the lane change is intended.

System limits

Only use Lane Assist on highways and well-maintained roads.

Lane Assist may deactivate temporarily under certain circumstances:

— When the speed of your vehicle is less than about 40 mph (65 km/h).

— If the system cannot recognize lane markings correctly, for example, in construction zones, on bad roads, when visibility is bad, or when the camera area is covered.

— When ESC is switched off or when ESC Sport is switched on → page 193, *Switching Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) and ESC Sport mode on and off*.

⚠ WARNING

Always remember that Lane Assist has limits – using Lane Assist when it is not possible to drive safely can be dangerous and can lead to an accident and serious personal injury.

- Always adjust your speed and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Always keep both hands on the steering wheel so that you are prepared to steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle.
- Always pay attention to the messages in the instrument cluster display and act accordingly.
- Always pay close attention to what is happening around your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Not deactivating Lane Assist in the situations mentioned above can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*. ◁

Driving with Lane Assist

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 171.

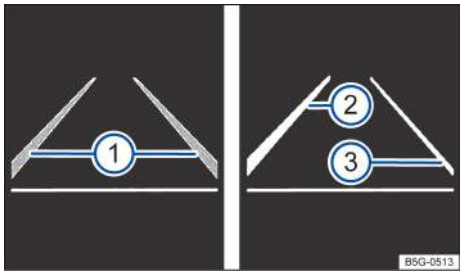


Fig. 113 In the instrument cluster display: Lane Assist display (displayed in color on an instrument cluster with color display).

Switching Lane Assist on and off

— You can turn Lane Assist on or off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

— **OR:** In the **Assist systems** menu in the instrument cluster display → page 18, *Instrument cluster menus*.

— **OR:** Press the driver assistance systems button on the multi-function steering wheel to open the **Assist systems** menu → page 25, *Driver assistance systems button*.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster shows the status of the system.

If the yellow indicator light comes on, Lane Assist is switched on but is not active.

Lane Assist works at speeds above about 40 mph (65 km/h) when lane markings can be identified → fig. 113. The green indicator light comes on.

Displays

Lane Assist display in the instrument cluster fig. 113:

① Lane marking detected (shown in gray). No regulation is necessary.

② Lane marking detected (shown in white). System is actively regulating.

③ No lane marking detected. System is not regulating.

Switching Lane Assist off temporarily

Lane Assist should be switched off in the following situations:

— When driving with a sporty or dynamic driving style.

— When weather conditions and/or visibility are poor.

— When the vehicle is off road, for example, in construction zones or on race tracks.

— Before reaching the top of a hill.

Reminder to resume steering

If the system does not detect steering activity by the driver, a warning chime and a message in the instrument cluster display remind you to resume steering the vehicle.

If the driver does not respond to the reminder, the system may deactivate temporarily.

Steering wheel vibration

Certain situations will cause the steering wheel to vibrate and demand active steering intervention by the driver:

— If the corrective steering intervention is not sufficient to keep the vehicle in its lane.

— If the system no longer detects a lane during a strong corrective steering intervention.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights or other warnings can result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

If there is a malfunction, Lane Assist is automatically deactivated. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 171.

If there is no camera image, an error message, or the system switches itself off

— Clean the windshield → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

— Check for visible damage on the windshield in the camera's field of view.

If the system is not responding as expected

— Regularly clean the camera and keep it free from snow and ice.

— Do not cover the camera's field of view.

— Check the windshield for damage in the camera's field of view.

— Do not attach objects to the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING

If the camera's field of view is covered or dirty, Lane Assist may not work properly.

- Always make sure that the camera area is free of dirt or snow and not covered.

NOTICE

In order to help keep Lane Assist working properly:

- Always keep the windshield in front of the camera free of ice, dirt, snow, and other things that could reduce its field of view.
- Regularly check the windshield and especially the area around the camera for damage.
- Never attach or mount any accessories or other items to the steering wheel.

If Lane Assist does not work properly and as described here or if there is a system fault, have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. ◁

Blind Spot Monitor

📖 Introduction

Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with the Blind Spot Monitor system.

The Blind Spot Monitor monitors the area next to and behind your vehicle with the help of radar sensors behind the rear bumper on the left and right → page 7, *Rear view*. The system measures the distance and the speed difference to the other vehicles around you. If the Blind Spot Monitor detects one or more vehicles in the monitored area, indicator lights come on in the outside mirrors.

Physical and system limitations

Use the Blind Spot Monitor only on paved roads.

In certain situations, the Blind Spot Monitor may not interpret the traffic situation correctly. These situations may include:

— When driving around sharp curves.

— When driving between two lanes.
— When the width of the lanes is not the same.
— When there is a bump in the road surface.
— When the weather conditions are poor.
— When certain things are on the side of the road, such as high or offset guard rails.

WARNING

The Blind Spot Monitor technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and the limits of the system. Careless or unintentional use of the Blind Spot Monitor may result in accidents and serious injuries.

- The Blind Spot Monitor is not a substitute for careful and attentive driving.
- Always adjust your driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Always keep both hands on the steering wheel so that you are prepared to steer at any time.
- Pay attention to and heed the indicator lights in the outside mirrors and in the instrument cluster display.
- The Blind Spot Monitor may react to certain things on the side of the road, such as high or offset guardrails. False warnings may result.
- Never use the Blind Spot Monitor on unpaved roads. The Blind Spot Monitor was designed only for paved roads.
- Always pay attention to the area surrounding your vehicle.
- Never use the Blind Spot Monitor if the radar sensors are dirty, covered, or damaged; the system may not work properly.
- Sunlight may reduce the visibility of the indicator light in the outside mirror.

If the system does not work as described in this chapter or if your vehicle was involved in a collision, do not use the Blind Spot Monitor. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the system checked.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is on → page 322, *Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems*. ◁

Driving with the Blind Spot Monitor

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 173.

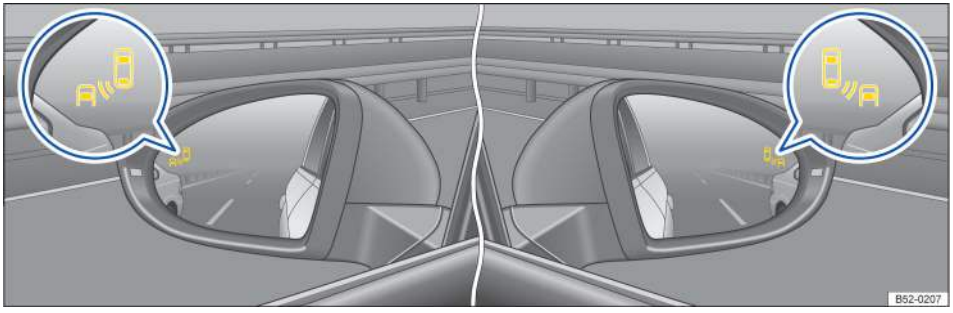


Fig. 114 In the outside mirrors: Indicator lights for the Blind Spot Monitor.

Switching the Blind Spot Monitor on and off

— You can turn the Blind Spot Monitor on and off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.
— **OR:** In the **Assist systems** menu in the instrument cluster display → page 18, *Instrument cluster menus*.
— **OR:** Press the driver assistance systems button on the multi-function steering wheel to open the **Assist systems** menu → page 25, *Driver assistance systems button*.

When the Blind Spot Monitor is switched on, the indicator lights in the outside mirrors light up to confirm that the Blind Spot Monitor is ready.

The last system setting is stored when the ignition is switched off/on.

Blind Spot Monitor function

When switched on, the Blind Spot Monitor works at speeds above about 10 mph (15 km/h). The system switches off automatically at speeds below about 5 mph (10 km/h).

In the following situations, the yellow indicator light *lights up* in the respective outside mirror → fig. 114:

— If your vehicle is being passed by another vehicle.

— When passing another vehicle, and the difference in speed between the two vehicles is no more than about 5 mph (10 km/h). There is no signal if the passing speed is clearly faster.

If you switch on the turn signal and the yellow indicator light *flashes*, the system detects a possible critical situation on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

The faster another vehicle approaches, the earlier the signal in the outside mirror appears.

When driving around a sharp curve in the road, the Blind Spot Monitor is not active and does not issue warnings to the driver. The system resumes automatically after driving around the curve.

Active Blind Spot Monitor

For vehicles with the Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist): → page 171, *Lane Keeping system (Lane Assist)*
When Lane Assist and the Blind Spot Monitor are active and the systems detect a possible critical situation during a lane change, the yellow indicator light *flashes* in the corresponding outside mirror and there is a steering correction to warn the driver, even if the turn signal is not switched on. The steering correction happens even if the turn signal is switched on. On some models, if the driver ignores the steering correction, the steering wheel can vibrate as an additional warning.

Blind Spot Monitor automatic deactivation

The radar sensors for the Blind Spot Monitor turn off automatically if the system detects an obstruction over a radar sensor. This could occur if the radar sensor area is covered by ice or snow, for example.

A text message appears in the instrument cluster display when the system turns off automatically.

If a Blind Spot Monitor sensor has been automatically deactivated, the system cannot be reactivated until the ignition has been switched off and back on again. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 173.

If there is no sensor visibility, an error message, or the system switches itself off

— Clean the sensors or remove stickers or accessories from the sensors, mirrors, and bumper → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

— Check for any visible damage.

If the system is not responding as expected

Possible causes:

— The sensors are dirty. The sensors may not work properly if blocked by dirt and snow or residue from abrasive cleaning agents or coatings.

— The conditions for system operation are not met → page 173, *Physical and system limitations*.

— The sensors are covered by water.

— The sensors have been damaged or misaligned in low speed impacts or parking maneuvers → ⓘ.

— The system function is impaired by an aftermarket component such as a bicycle rack.

— A sensor area has been repainted or structural modifications have been made → ⓘ.

— The side windows have been tinted.

NOTICE

- The radar sensors in the rear bumper can be damaged or become misaligned in low-speed impacts and parking maneuvers. The system can switch itself off or may be impaired as a result.
- Always keep the rear bumper clean and free of snow and ice so that the radar sensors can work properly. Do not cover the radar sensor area.
- The rear bumper may only be painted with vehicle paint that is approved by Volkswagen. Other paints may make the Blind Spot Monitor work improperly or cause it to malfunction.

5GM012723ST

If the system does not work as described in this chapter or if your vehicle was involved in a collision, do not use the Blind Spot Monitor system. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the system checked. ◁

Parking and maneuvering

Parking

Please note legal regulations when stopping and parking your vehicle.

Parking the vehicle

Please perform these steps **only in the order listed**:

— Stop the vehicle on a suitable surface → ⚠.

— Press the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a complete stop; leave your foot on the brake pedal and continue to hold it down.

— *Automatic or DSG transmission:* Shift the transmission to Park **(P)**.

— Apply the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving → page 178, *Using the parking brake (Golf, Golf GTI)*.

— Make sure that the red indicator light Ⓟ or PARK in the instrument cluster lights up.

— Switch off the engine and then take your foot off the brake pedal.

— If necessary, remove the vehicle key from the ignition.

— If necessary, turn the steering wheel slightly to engage the steering column lock.

— Shift manual transmission into 1st gear (on level ground or if pointed uphill) or reverse (if pointed downhill) and let the clutch out.

— Make sure all passengers and especially children leave the vehicle.

— Take all vehicle keys with you when leaving your vehicle.

— Lock the vehicle.

On hills

Before stopping the engine, turn the steering wheel so that, if the vehicle starts to roll, its front wheels will roll into the curb:

— When facing downhill, turn the front wheels so that they point toward the curb.

— When facing uphill, turn the front wheels so that they point away from the curb.

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter get very hot. They can cause fires and serious personal injury.

- Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.

⚠ WARNING

Automatic or DSG transmission: Leaving the vehicle when the selector lever is not in Park **(P)** can cause the vehicle to roll away. This can cause accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always follow the correct order to stop the engine → page 141, *Starting and stopping the engine*.
- When leaving the vehicle, always move the selector lever to Park **(P)**, engage the parking brake, and pay attention to the warning messages in the instrument cluster display at all times.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with bad brakes or worn brake pads can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- If the brake pads are worn or you notice changes in the way the vehicle brakes, immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the brake pads checked and, if necessary, replaced.

⚠ WARNING

Parking improperly can cause serious personal injury.

- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.
- Never park the vehicle where the hot exhaust system or catalytic converter could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Always apply the parking brake when parking your vehicle.
- Improper use of the parking brake can seriously injure you and your passengers.
- Never use the parking brake to slow down the vehicle when it is moving, except in an emergency. The stopping distance is much longer because only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the foot brake to stop the vehicle.
- Never activate the throttle manually from the engine compartment when the engine is running and the automatic or DSG transmission is

5GM012723ST

in gear. The vehicle will start to move as soon as the engine speed increases even if the parking brake is on.

- Never leave children or anyone who cannot help themselves behind in the vehicle. They could release the parking brake and move the gear selector lever or gear shift, which could cause the vehicle to start moving. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.
- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. If the key is available, the engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows and sunroof can be operated, leading to serious personal injury.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the remote control vehicle key, trapping passengers in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.

NOTICE

- Always be careful when you park in areas with parking barriers or high curbs. These vary in height and could damage your bumper and related parts if the front of your vehicle hits a barrier or curb that is too high while you are getting into or out of a parking spot. To help prevent damage, stop before the tires of your vehicle touch a parking barrier or curb.
- Always be careful when you enter a driveway or drive up or down steep ramps or over curbs or other obstacles. Parts of the vehicle close to the ground may be damaged (such as bumper covers, spoilers, and parts of the engine, suspension, and exhaust systems). ◁

Parking brake

Using the parking brake (Golf, Golf GTI)

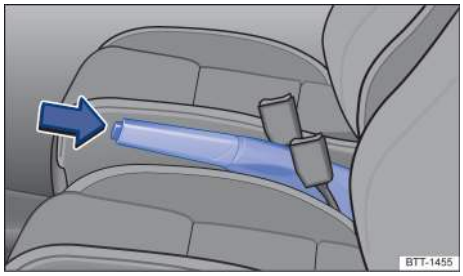


Fig. 115 Between the front seats: Parking brake.

The following information applies to models with a parking brake lever.

Setting the parking brake

— Pull the parking brake lever up firmly.

— When the ignition is on, the red indicator light (P) or PARK in the instrument cluster lights up to show that the parking brake is engaged.

Releasing the parking brake

— Pull the lever up slightly and press the release button → fig. 115 (arrow).

— While holding the release button down, move the lever all the way down.

WARNING

Improper use of the parking brake can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Never use the parking brake to slow down the vehicle when it is moving, except in an emergency. Braking distance is much longer, since only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the foot brake.
- Never drive with the parking brake partially engaged. This can cause the brake to overheat and negatively affect the brake system. It will also cause the rear brake pads to wear prematurely.
- Never activate the throttle manually from the engine compartment when the engine is running and the automatic or DSG transmission is in gear. The vehicle will start to move even if the parking brake is engaged.

NOTICE

Even though the transmission is in Park **(P)**, the vehicle may move a couple of inches (a few centimeters) forwards or backwards if you take your foot off the brake pedal after stopping the vehicle **without** first firmly setting the parking brake.

A warning signal sounds if you drive faster than about 4 mph (6 km/h) with the parking brake engaged. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

(P) or PARK The parking brake is switched on

The red warning light comes on.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage. ◁

Park Distance Control (PDC)

Introduction

Depending on equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with the Park Distance Control system (PDC).

The Park Distance Control (PDC) system can help the driver when backing up and parking. PDC uses ultrasonic sensors in the bumpers to measure the distance between the vehicle and objects. The system uses the time it takes for the ultrasonic waves to bounce back from the object to calculate the distance between the vehicle and an object. PDC works only at speeds up to about 5–10 mph (10–15 km/h).

If the vehicle gets too close to an obstacle behind it, a beeping signal sounds. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the faster the beep. When the obstacle is very close, the sound is continuous.

If you move even closer to the obstacle despite the continuous warning sound, the system cannot measure the distance remaining until collision.

WARNING

Park Distance Control is no substitute for careful and attentive driving. Never rely completely on these systems for information about people and objects that might be in the way of the vehicle and could be struck resulting in serious personal injuries.

- Always be careful and look around you when parking. The sensors have blind spots and cannot always detect people, animals, and objects. Watch out for small children and animals in particular.
- Never pay so much attention to the images on the screen that you fail to notice what is going on around you.
- Certain types of clothing and the surfaces of certain objects do not reflect the ultrasonic waves that the sensors send and receive. Such objects and persons wearing such clothing will not be detected by PDC or will not be detected accurately.
- Noise in the area can interfere with the signals of the Park Distance Control sensors. Under certain circumstances, the system will not detect people and objects for this reason.

NOTICE

- Things like trailer draw bars, thin rods, fences, trees, narrow painted vertical poles, posts, or a trunk lid that is opening may not be detected by the Park Distance Control sensors and could damage the vehicle.
- If you keep driving closer to an object that the Park Distance Control has already detected and reported, the object may disappear from the sensor range and may no longer be detected. This is especially true for low or high objects. The system will no longer sound warnings about these objects. Ignoring signals from the Park Distance Control system could result in serious damage to the vehicle.
- The sensors in the bumpers can be damaged or become misaligned in low speed impacts and parking maneuvers. Damaged or misaligned sensors cannot accurately detect or report objects that might be within range of the PDC system.
- To help make sure that the system works properly, always keep the sensors in the bumpers clean

5GM012723ST

and free of snow and ice; do not cover the sensors with stickers or other objects.

- Repainting the sensors in the bumpers can prevent the PDC system from working properly.
- When cleaning the sensors with power washers or steam cleaners, only spray the sensors directly for a very short time, and always keep the washer nozzle at least 4 inches (10 cm) from the sensors.
- Noise from rough roads, cobblestones, other vehicles and the surrounding area, for example, can prevent the Park Distance Control system from accurately detecting and reporting people and objects that may be within range of the sensors.
- Aftermarket components such as bicycle racks can prevent the PDC system from working properly.

Volkswagen recommends practicing with the Park Distance Control system in a location or parking space with no traffic in order to become familiar with the system and how it works.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is on → page 322, *Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems*. ◁

Switching on and off

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 179.

Fig. 116 In the lower center console: Button to switch the Park Distance Control system on or off.

Switching Park Distance Control (PDC) on

— Press the P button → fig. 116.

PDC is automatically switched on when you shift into reverse **(R)** or when the vehicle rolls backwards.

The indicator light in the button lights up and stays on as long as PDC is active.

In some vehicles, PDC can also be set to activate automatically when the vehicle moves forward → page 180, *Automatic PDC activation when driving forward (depending on equipment)*.

Switching Park Distance Control (PDC) off

— Press the P button → fig. 116.

— **OR:** Drive forward faster than about 5–10 mph (10–15 km/h).

— **OR:** Move the selector lever to park **(P)**.

Automatic PDC activation when driving forward (depending on equipment)

When the PDC is activated automatically when driving forward, a mini PDC display appears on the left-hand side of the screen.

Automatic PDC activation when driving forward only works when the speed falls below about 10 mph (15 km/h) when driving slowly toward an obstacle in front of the vehicle. Automatic activation only happens once. Reactivate the PDC with one of the following actions when the ignition is switched on:

— Press the P button.

— Switch the ignition off and back on again.

— *Automatic or DSG transmission:* Move the selector lever to park **(P)** and then to reverse **(R)**.

— *Vehicles with electronic parking brake:* Switch the parking brake on and off again.

Automatic PDC activation when driving forward can be turned on or off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Maneuver braking

The maneuver braking feature can help the driver by braking automatically when the vehicle is backing up and an obstacle behind the vehicle is detected.

Depending on equipment, the maneuver braking feature may also brake the vehicle automatically when driving forward if PDC has been switched on manually.

The maneuver braking feature helps prevent collisions only at vehicle speeds lower than 5 mph (10 km/h). The feature is activated or deactivated when PDC is switched on or off.

The maneuver braking feature does **not** switch on if PDC is activated automatically when driving forward. You must switch on PDC manually by pressing

the P button to activate emergency braking while driving forward.

You can also switch maneuver braking on and off by tapping the function key in the PDC display → page 181, *PDC signal chimes and displays* or in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

After emergency braking occurs, the maneuver braking feature is deactivated until you move the selector lever to another position. The same restrictions that apply to the PDC system also apply to the maneuver braking feature. ◁

PDC signal chimes and displays

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 179.

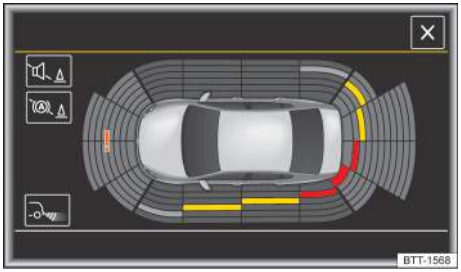


Fig. 117 PDC display of the area around the vehicle (display may vary depending on vehicle equipment).

When the factory-installed Infotainment system is switched on, the areas to the front and rear of the vehicle that are scanned by ultrasonic sensors are shown on the screen → fig. 117. The positions of potential obstacles are displayed relative to the vehicle.

- Obstacle close to the vehicle. A continuous chime sounds. **Stop! Do not keep driving!**
- Obstacle in the vehicle's path. An intermittent chime sounds. The shorter the distance, the shorter the intervals between the chimes.
- ❑ Obstacle outside of the vehicle's path.
- Switch the PDC sound on or off.
- Switch maneuver braking on and off (depending on vehicle equipment).
- Switch to the Rear View camera display.
- ! System fault in the scanned area.
- ! Temporary malfunction in the scanned area, depending on vehicle equipment (not pictured). ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 179.

If the system is not responding as expected

Possible causes:

- The sensors are dirty → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*. The sensors may not work properly if blocked by dirt and snow or residue from abrasive cleaning agents or coatings.
- The conditions for automatic PDC activation are not met → page 180, *Automatic PDC activation when driving forward (depending on equipment)*.
- The sensors have been damaged or misaligned in low speed impacts or parking maneuvers. Damaged or misaligned sensors cannot accurately detect or report objects that might be within range of the PDC system.
- The system function is impaired by an aftermarket component such as a bicycle rack.
- A sensor area has been repainted or structural modifications have been made.
- The sensors may not detect people and objects due to noise interference from rough roads, cobblestones, other vehicles, and the surrounding area.

If there is no sensor visibility, an error message, or the system switches itself off

If an ultrasonic sensor malfunctions, the corresponding sensor area is switched off and cannot be reactivated until the malfunction is corrected.

If you hear a long beep of about 3 seconds when you first turn PDC on or the indicator light in the P button starts blinking, there is a malfunction in the Park Distance Control system.

A message may also appear in the instrument cluster display, depending on equipment.

Possible solutions

- Switch the system off temporarily.
- Check whether any of the causes described in this section apply.
- Clean the sensors or remove stickers or accessories from the sensors and cameras → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

— Check for any visible damage.

— After checking all the possible causes and making the necessary adjustments, switch the system back on.

— If the system still does not respond as expected, have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. ◁

Rear View Camera system

Introduction

There is a camera in the trunk lid to assist the driver while backing up or maneuvering. The camera image is shown together with the orientation lines projected by the system on the screen of the factory-installed Infotainment system.

The Rear View Camera system may take a couple of seconds to bring up the camera image.

The functions and displays of the Rear View Camera system may vary on vehicles with or without Park Distance Control (PDC) → page 179, *Park Distance Control (PDC)*.

WARNING

The Rear View Camera system is not able to give you a clear and undistorted view of all areas behind the vehicle.

- The camera lens can enlarge and distort the field of view and can cause objects on the screen to appear altered and imprecise.
- Due to the screen resolution or in low-light conditions, the camera may not pick up thin posts, chain-link fences and similar fences, and other objects, or it may not show them clearly.
- Always be careful and look around you when parking. The Rear View Camera system has blind spots and cannot always show people, animals, and objects in certain situations. Watch out for small children and animals in particular.
- Always keep the camera lens clean and free of snow and ice; do not cover the lens.

WARNING

The Rear View Camera system technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and the limits of the system. Careless or unintentional use of the Rear View Camera system may result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Always keep an eye on the parking direction and the vehicle surroundings. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle.
- Never pay so much attention to the images on the screen that you fail to notice what is going on around you.
- Use the Rear View Camera system only when the trunk lid is completely closed.

NOTICE

- The Rear View Camera system shows only two-dimensional images on the screen. Due to the lack of depth of field, it may be difficult or impossible to identify protruding objects or potholes in the road, for example.
- Things like thin rods, fences, posts, and trees may not be shown by the Rear View Camera system and could damage the vehicle.

NOTICE

The orientation lines are displayed independent of the area around the vehicle. There is no automatic detection of obstacles. The driver is responsible for judging if the vehicle fits into the parking spot.

Volkswagen recommends practicing with the Rear View Camera system in a location or parking space with no traffic in order to become familiar with the system and how it works. ◁

Switching the Rear View Camera system on and off

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 182.

Switching the Rear View Camera system on

— Switch the ignition on.

— Shift into reverse **(R)**.

— **OR:** *For vehicles with Park Distance Control,* if the full-screen PDC display is on, move your hand toward the screen and tap the function key → page 179, *Park Distance Control (PDC)*.

The camera image will be displayed with the orientation lines. The Rear View Camera system function keys are not shown. This helps the driver to have an unobstructed view of the area behind the vehicle.

To access the full functionality of the Rear View Camera system, tap the function key MENU in the top left hand corner of the screen. The function keys will now appear on the screen.

Switching the Rear View Camera system off

- Switch the ignition off.
- **OR:** Drive forward faster than about 5–10 mph (10–15 km/h) or for longer than 10 seconds.
- **OR:** Shift out of reverse **(R)**. Depending on equipment, the display may take up to 10 seconds to switch off.
- **OR:** Press one of the Infotainment system buttons or move your hand toward the screen and tap the ✖ function key.
- **OR:** *For vehicles with Park Distance Control,* move your hand toward the screen and tap the function key to select the full-screen PDC display → page 179, *Park Distance Control (PDC)*. ◁

Rear View Camera system display

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 182.

Rear View Camera System function keys

The following function keys appear when you tap the MENU function key on the screen or move your hand toward the screen. Options may vary, depending on vehicle equipment.

x Close the current display.

Adjust the display brightness, contrast, and color.

Show the full-screen PDC display.

Switch maneuver braking on and off (depending on vehicle equipment).

Switch the PDC sound on or off.

Switch the mini PDC display on.

Switch the mini PDC display off.

Orientation lines

Horizontal red line: The safety distance, which is the area up to about 16 inches (40 cm) on the road behind the vehicle.

Lateral green lines: Vehicle extension (somewhat wider) toward the rear. The green lines stop about 6 feet (2 meters) on the road behind the vehicle.

All references to orientation line length apply to vehicles on a horizontal surface.

The angles of the red and green lines do not change when turning the steering wheel.

The orientation lines are displayed independent of the area around the vehicle. There is no automatic detection of obstacles. The driver is responsible for deciding if the vehicle fits into the parking space. ◁

Requirements

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 182.

The following requirements must be met for parking while using the Rear View Camera system:

- The vehicle speed must not be greater than about **10 mph (15 km/h)**.
- The driver must be familiar with the system.
- The width of the parking space must be at least the **vehicle width +8 inches (20 cm)**.
- Maintain a distance of about **3 feet (1 meter)** from the parking space (parallel parking only).
- The length of the parking space must be **about 8 yards (8 meters)** (parallel parking only).

The following conditions must be met to display a correct image:

- The trunk lid must be closed.
- The parking or maneuvering area must be level.
- There must be a clear and complete view of the area behind the vehicle.
- The rear of the vehicle must not be heavily loaded. ◁

5GM012723ST

Parking with the Rear View Camera system

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 182.

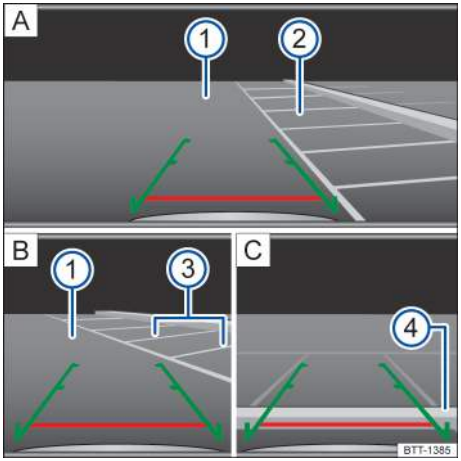


Fig. 118 On the screen: Orientation lines for the parking space behind the vehicle.

Key to fig. 118:

- A Searching for a parking space.
- B Backing into the parking space.
- C Maneuvering in the parking space.
- (1) Road.
- (2) Selected parking space.
- (3) Boundary lines for the selected parking space.
- (4) Rear boundary of the parking space, such as a curb.

Parking

- The requirements for parking and maneuvering with the Rear View Camera system must be met → page 183, *Requirements*.
- Slowly drive by a parking space.
- Position the vehicle in front of the parking space → fig. 118 (2) A.
- Shift into reverse **(R)**.
- Heed the message: **Look! Safe to move?**
- Slowly back up and steer so that the lateral green orientation lines lead into the parking space (3) B.
- Align the vehicle in the parking space so that the green orientation lines are parallel to the selected parking space (3) B.
- Stop the vehicle before (or at the very latest, when) the horizontal red line reaches the rear boundary, for example, a curb (4) C.

NOTICE

Smaller objects up to about 20 inches (50 cm) from the rear of the vehicle will not be detected by the camera and could cause vehicle damage. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 182.

If the system is not responding as expected

Possible causes:

- The camera is dirty → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*. The camera may not work properly if blocked by dirt and snow or residue from abrasive cleaning agents or coatings.
- The system requirements are not met → page 183, *Requirements*.
- The camera has been damaged or misaligned in low speed impacts or parking maneuvers.
- The system function is impaired by an aftermarket component such as a bicycle rack.
- Paint work or structural modifications have been made in the camera area.

If there is no sensor visibility, an error message, or the system switches itself off

- Clean the camera or remove stickers or accessories from the camera → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.
- Check for any visible damage.

Possible solutions

- Switch the system off temporarily.
- Check whether any of the causes described in this section apply.
- After checking all the possible causes and making the necessary adjustments, switch the system back on.
- If the system still does not respond as expected, have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

NOTICE

The camera must be kept clean and free of ice and snow, and must not be covered up by stickers or other objects, as this will prevent the system from working properly.

- Never use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the camera lens.
- Never remove snow or ice on the camera lens with warm or hot water. This can damage the camera lens.

Park Assist

Introduction

The Park Assist system is an extension of the Park Distance Control system → page 179, *Park Distance Control (PDC)* and can assist the driver when:

— Finding a suitable parking space.

— Selecting a parking mode.

— Parking in a suitable parallel or perpendicular parking space.

— Pulling out of a parallel parking space.

Park Assist uses ultrasonic sensors in the front and rear bumpers and the P button, which turns the Park Assist system on and off.

Park Assist steers the vehicle automatically. The driver must control the accelerator, gear changes, and brake.

The Park Assist system has certain system-related limitations. The driver still has to be careful when using the Park Assist system →.

WARNING

Park Assist technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and the limits of the system. Do not let the extra convenience Park Assist can provide tempt you into taking extra risks. The system is not a substitute for the driver's full concentration.

- Careless or unintentional use of Park Assist may result in accidents and severe injuries.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Always be careful and look around you. The sensors have blind spots and cannot always detect people, animals, or objects in certain situations. Watch out for small children and animals in particular.
- The Park Assist system has system-related limitations. In some situations the automatic brake intervention is limited or may not work at all.
- Always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.
- Automatic braking assistance ends after about 1.5 seconds. Always depress the brake pedal yourself after an automatic braking intervention.

WARNING

Making quick turning movements of the steering wheel when parking or pulling out of a parking space can cause serious injuries.

- When parking or pulling out of a parking space, do not reach for the steering wheel until prompted to do so by the system.

NOTICE

- Park Assist uses parked vehicles, the curb, and other objects for guidance. Please make sure that the wheels and tires are not damaged when parking the vehicle. If necessary, stop the parking maneuver early enough to prevent damage to the vehicle.
- Things like trailer draw bars, thin rods, fences, posts, trees, or an open trunk lid may not be detected by the Park Assist system and could damage the vehicle.
- Aftermarket components such as bicycle racks can prevent the Park Assist system from working properly and may cause vehicle damage.
- The sensors in the bumpers can be damaged or become misaligned in low speed impacts and parking maneuvers. Damaged or misaligned sensors cannot accurately detect or report objects that might be within range of the Park Assist system.
- When cleaning the sensors with power washers or steam cleaners, only spray the sensors directly for a very short time, and always keep the washer nozzle at least 4 inches (10 cm) from the sensors.
- Noise from rough roads, cobblestones, other vehicles and the surrounding area, for example, can prevent the Park Assist system from accurately detecting and reporting people and objects that may be within range of the sensors.

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated text messages can lead to the vehicle being damaged.

Volkswagen recommends practicing with the Park Assist system in a location or parking

5GM012723ST

space with no traffic in order to become familiar with the system and how it works.

When parking or pulling out of a parking space, the system gives a signal tone to tell the driver to switch between driving forward and backing up. Do not wait until the Park Distance Control sounds continuously before changing direction.

If the Park Assist system turns the steering wheel when the vehicle is not moving, the symbol also appears in the instrument cluster display. Depress the brake pedal so that the steering movement takes place while the vehicle is not moving, keeping the required number of parking maneuvers to a minimum.

Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → page 30, *Driver personalization*.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is on → page 322, *Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems*. ◁

Requirements

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 185.

To park or to pull out of a parking space, the following requirements must be met:

- The ASR must be switched on → page 191, *Braking assistance systems*.
- Maintain a distance of **1.6–6.5 feet (0.5–2 meters)** when driving past the parking space.
- The parking space must at least be the minimum size required by Park Assist.
- *For parallel parking:* Do not go faster than about **25 mph (40 km/h)** when driving past the parking space.
- *For perpendicular parking:* Do not go faster than about **12 mph (20 km/h)** when driving past the parking space.
- Do not go faster than about **4 mph (7 km/h)** when parking. ◁

Selecting a parking space

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 185.

Fig. 119 In the lower center console: Button for switching on the Park Assist system.

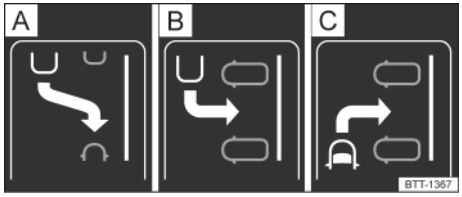


Fig. 120 In the instrument cluster display: Parking modes overview.

Key to fig. 120:

A Reverse parallel parking
B Reverse perpendicular parking
C Forward perpendicular parking

- Slowly drive past a row of parked cars, paying attention to traffic.
- Press the P button → fig. 119. Park Assist automatically looks for a parking space on the front passenger side.
- Stop when Park Assist shows a recommended parking mode in the instrument cluster display.
- Drive into the parking space when the prompt to park appears → fig. 121 ⑤.

If you want Park Assist to look for a parking space on the opposite side of the road, activate the turn signal for the side of the street on which you want to park.

Switching the parking mode

Other possible parking modes are shown as a mini display.

When the prompt to park appears → fig. 121 (5), select a different parking mode by pressing the P button → fig. 119 again. After all relevant parking modes have been displayed, Park Assist switches off automatically. The originally recommended parking mode is displayed again if you press the P button → fig. 119 another time.

If you wish to drive into a perpendicular parking space instead of backing in, select "Forward perpendicular parking" → fig. 120 C. Otherwise, the vehicle will back into the perpendicular parking space.

Park Assist can also be switched on after driving past a parking space; if the parking space meets system requirements, it appears on the display. ◁

Parking with Park Assist

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 185.

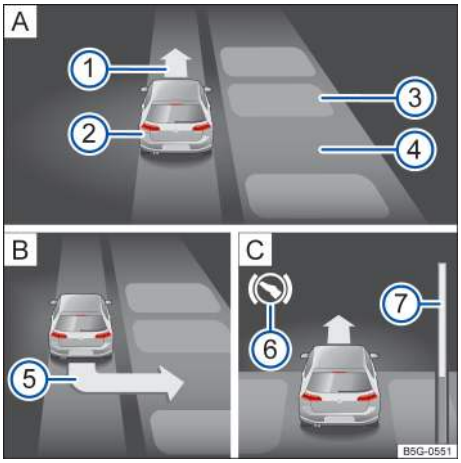


Fig. 121 In the instrument cluster display: Parking perpendicular to the road.

Key to fig. 121:

- A Searching for a parking space
- B Positioning the vehicle for parking
- C Maneuvering in the parking space
- (1) Prompt to drive forward
- (2) Your vehicle
- (3) Parked vehicles
- (4) Parking space detected
- (5) Arrow indicating the parking suggestion (prompt to park)
- (6) Prompt to press the brake pedal
- (7) Progress bar: Symbolic display of the relative remaining distance

The requirements for parking using Park Assist must be met → page 186, *Requirements* and the vehicle must not be moving.

- Release the steering wheel when the following message is shown in the instrument cluster display: **Auto. steering active. Check surround. area!** → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 185.
- Shift into reverse **(R)** when the prompt to back up appears in the instrument cluster display.
- Check the area around the vehicle and carefully back up. **Do not exceed 4 mph (7 km/h)**. The Park Assist system will **only** turn the steering wheel during the parking procedure. **The driver must control the accelerator, the brake, and the transmission selector lever/gearshift lever.**
- Back up until there is a continuous tone from the Park Distance Control (PDC) system, **OR** until a chime sounds and the ⛒ symbol along with the prompt to drive forward appear in the instrument cluster display.
- Drive forward until a chime sounds and the prompt to back up is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- Repeat backing up and driving forward until the message **Park Assist ended!** is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Wait until Park Assist has stopped turning the steering wheel at the end of each parking maneuver for an optimal parking result.

Stopping the parking maneuver too soon could lead to less than optimal parking results.

If there is not enough room to maneuver the vehicle, the suggested parking space may still be shown in the instrument cluster display. However, you will not be prompted to park. ◁

5GM012723ST

Pulling out of a parallel parking space using Park Assist

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 185.

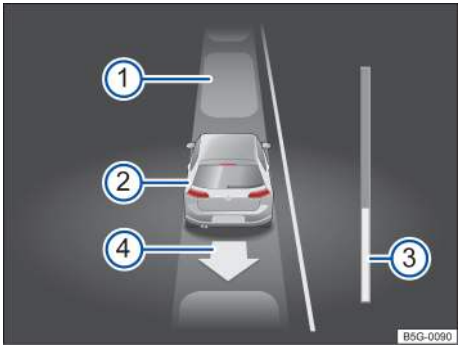


Fig. 122 In the instrument cluster display: Driving out of a parallel parking space.

Key to fig. 122:

① Parked vehicles
② Your vehicle with reverse gear engaged
③ Progress bar
④ Arrow indicating the suggested procedure for driving out of a space

Park Assist can pull out of a parallel parking space if the requirements are met → page 186, *Requirements*.

— Press the P button → fig. 119 button.
— Activate the turn signal in the direction (left or right) in which you would like to pull out of the parking space.
— Shift into reverse **(R)** when the prompt to back up appears in the instrument cluster display.
— Release the steering wheel when the message appears in the instrument cluster display: **Auto. steering active. Check surround. area!** → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 185.
— Check the area around the vehicle and carefully back up. **Do not exceed 4 mph (7 km/h)**. The Park Assist system will **only** operate the steering wheel while driving out of the parking space. **The driver must control the accelerator, the brake, and the transmission selector/gearshift lever.**
— Back up until there is a continuous tone from the Park Distance Control (PDC) system, **OR** until a chime sounds and the ⦸ symbol along with the prompt to drive forward appear in the instrument cluster display.
— Press the brake pedal until the Park Assist system has stopped steering **OR** until the ⦸ symbol in the instrument cluster display disappears.
— Drive forward until a chime sounds and the prompt to back up is displayed in the instrument cluster.
— Repeat backing up and driving forward until a message is displayed in the instrument cluster indicating when the vehicle can be driven out of the parking space. A chime may also sound.
— When traffic permits, pull out of the parking space. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 185.

System fault in the scanned area

The yellow indicator light comes on in the instrument cluster.

If the system is not responding as expected

Possible causes:

— The sensors are dirty → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*. The sensors may not work properly if blocked by dirt and snow or residue from abrasive cleaning agents or coatings.
— The system requirements are not met → page 186, *Requirements*.
— The sensors are covered by water.
— The cameras have been damaged or misaligned in low speed impacts or parking maneuvers.
— A sensor area has been repainted or structural modifications have been made.
— The system function is impaired by an aftermarket component such as a bicycle rack.
— The sensors may not detect people and objects due to noise interference from rough roads, cobblestones, other vehicles, and the surrounding area.
— A wheel has been changed and wheel dimensions are now different.
— There is a sharp curve in the road where you wish to park.

If there is no sensor view, an error message, or the system switches itself off

Park Assist switches off automatically if a sensor fails.

— Clean the sensors or remove stickers or accessories from the sensors → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

— Check for any visible damage.

Possible solutions

— Switch the system off temporarily.

— Check whether any of the causes described in this section apply.

— If wheel dimensions have been changed, new wheel dimensions need to be synchronized with the system. See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

— After checking all the possible causes and making the necessary adjustments, switch the system back on.

— If the system still does not respond as expected, have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Interrupting or automatically stopping a parking procedure or pulling out of a parking space

The Park Assist system cancels the parking maneuver or movement out of a parking space if one of the following occurs:

— The P button is pressed.

— The vehicle speed is faster than about 4 mph (7 km/h).

— The driver intervenes by turning the steering wheel.

— The driver door is opened.

— The parking maneuver was not completed within about 6 minutes after activating the feature.

— There is a system fault (system is temporarily unavailable).

— ASR is switched off.

— Regulation related to driving dynamics takes place through ASR or ESC.

If none of the above situations apply, resume Park Assist by pressing the P button again.

Park Assist tries to steer when the vehicle is not moving

If Park Assist tries to turn the steering wheel when the vehicle is not moving, the white symbol appears in the instrument cluster display.

— Depress the brake pedal.

Park Assist automatic braking

Park Assist can help the driver by braking automatically in certain situations. The driver is always responsible for braking in time → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 185.

Depending on certain conditions such as weather, vehicle condition, vehicle load, or vehicle angle, the Park Assist system can bring the vehicle to a stop before it reaches an obstacle. **Depress the brake pedal!** An automatic brake intervention to minimize damage stops the current parking maneuver. ◁

Rear Traffic Alert

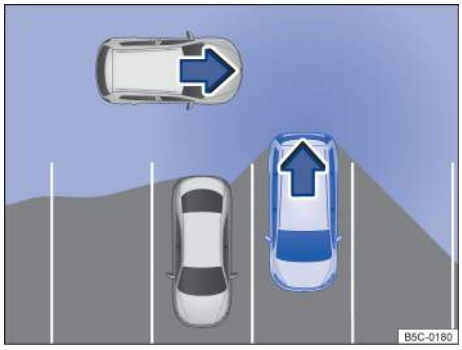


Fig. 123 Rear Traffic Alert: Monitored area around the vehicle that is backing out of a parking space.

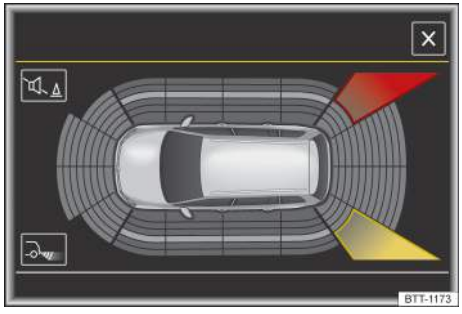


Fig. 124 Rear Traffic Alert display (may vary depending on vehicle equipment).

Switching the Rear Traffic Alert on and off

— You can turn Rear Traffic Alert on or off in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

5GM012723ST

— **OR:** In the **Assist systems** menu in the instrument cluster display → page 18, *Instrument cluster menus*.

— **OR:** Press the driver assistance systems button on the multi-function steering wheel to open the **Assist systems** menu → page 25, *Driver assistance systems button*.

Function

The Rear Traffic Alert system uses the radar sensors in the rear bumper to monitor the traffic crossing behind your vehicle when you are backing out of a parking space or maneuvering, for example, in traffic situations with poor visibility → fig. 124.

Key to fig. 124:

- **Stop backing up!** The red area indicates that the system has detected traffic behind the vehicle.
- The yellow area indicates that the system has possibly detected traffic behind the vehicle.

A warning sounds if the system detects approaching traffic behind your vehicle when backing up → fig. 123 (red area).

— *Vehicles without Park Distance Control (PDC):* There is a warning tone and a text message in the instrument cluster display.

— *Vehicles with Park Distance Control (PDC):* There is a continuous warning tone from the PDC. If PDC is switched off, a warning for the driver may not be possible, and therefore the Rear Traffic Alert is also deactivated.

If there is a system malfunction in the scanned area, a yellow **!** indicator light appears.

Automatic braking

If Rear Traffic Alert detects an approaching vehicle and the driver does not press the brake pedal, the system can intervene with automatic braking.

Rear Traffic Alert assists the driver with harsh automatic braking that could help prevent or reduce damage that can result from a collision. Automatic braking occurs while backing up at speeds between 1–7 mph (1–12 km/h). Once the system detects that your vehicle is not moving, it keeps the vehicle from moving for up to 2 seconds.

After automatic braking, about 10 seconds must pass before the system can brake automatically again.

The driver can interrupt the automatic braking and take control of the vehicle by pressing firmly on the accelerator or brake pedal.

Automatic deactivation of Rear Traffic Alert

The radar sensors for the Rear Traffic Alert turn off automatically if the system detects an obstruction over a radar sensor. This could occur if the radar sensor area is covered by ice or snow, for example.

A text message appears in the instrument cluster display when the system turns off automatically.

WARNING

The Rear Traffic Alert technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and limits of the system. Careless or unintentional use of the Rear Traffic Alert may result in accidents and serious injuries.

- The Rear Traffic Alert is not a substitute for careful and attentive driving.
- Never use the system when visibility is limited or in complex traffic situations, for example, on heavily traveled roads or when there are multiple lanes.
- Always watch for people, especially small children, bicycles, animals, and objects, because the Rear Traffic Alert may not always be able to detect them. Rear Traffic Alert cannot detect people, animals, and things that are moving slowly or not at all.
- The Rear Traffic Alert does not always brake the vehicle to a complete stop.
- The harsh automatic braking will be uncomfortable for many people, and if you or your passengers have special conditions or sensitivities, particularly in the neck, you may want to switch off Rear Traffic Alert.

NOTICE

- The radar sensors in the rear bumper can be damaged or become misaligned in low-speed impacts and parking maneuvers. The system can switch itself off or may be impaired as a result.
- Always keep the rear bumper clean and free of snow and ice so that the radar sensors can work properly. Do not cover the radar sensor area.
- The rear bumper may only be painted with vehicle paint that is approved by Volkswagen. Other paints may make the Rear Traffic Alert system work improperly or cause it to malfunction.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is on → page 322, *Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems*. ◁

Braking assistance systems

Introduction

The **braking assistance systems** are the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Brake Assist System (BAS), Electronic Differential Lock (EDL), Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR), and Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or (!) does not go out, or lights up when driving, either the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle as soon as you can do so safely and get expert assistance → page 255, *Brake fluid*.
- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or (!) lights up at the same time as the ABS warning light **ABS** or (ABS), the ABS may not be working properly. This could cause the rear wheels to lock up relatively quickly during braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control.
- If you believe the vehicle is safe to drive, drive slowly and very carefully to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected. Avoid sudden hard braking and steering.
- If the ABS indicator light **ABS** or (ABS) does not go out, or if it lights up while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility as soon as possible.
- If the brake pads are worn or you notice changes in the way the vehicle brakes, immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the brake pads checked and, if necessary, replaced. ◁

Braking assistance systems

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 191.

The ESC, ABS, BAS, ASR, and EDL braking assistance systems work only when the engine is running.

These systems can significantly improve active driving safety.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

ESC helps to improve road holding and vehicle dynamics to help reduce the probability of skidding and loss of vehicle control. It works only when the engine is running. ESC detects certain difficult driving situations, including when the vehicle is beginning to spin (yaw) out of control. ESC then helps you to get the vehicle back under control by selectively braking the wheels and/or reducing engine power and by providing steering assistance to help hold the vehicle on the driver's intended course.

ESC has limitations. It is important to remember that ESC cannot overcome the laws of physics. It will not always be able to help out under all conditions you may come up against. For example, ESC may not always be able to help you master situations where there is a sudden change in the coefficient of friction of the road surface. When there is a section of dry road that is suddenly covered with water, slush or snow, ESC cannot perform the same way it would on a dry surface. If the vehicle "hydroplanes" (rides on a cushion of water instead of the road surface), ESC will not be able to help you steer the vehicle because contact with the pavement has been interrupted and the vehicle cannot be braked or steered. During fast cornering, particularly on winding roads, ESC cannot always deal as effectively with difficult driving situations as it can at lower speeds.

Always adjust your speed and driving style to visibility, road, traffic, and weather conditions. ESC cannot override the vehicle's physical limits, increase the available traction, or keep a vehicle on the road if road departure is a result of driver inattention. Instead, ESC improves the possibility of keeping the vehicle under control and on the road during extreme maneuvers by using the driver's steering inputs to help keep the vehicle going in the intended direction. If you are traveling at a speed that causes you to run off the road before ESC can provide any assistance, you may not experience the benefits of ESC.

ESC includes and/or works together with the ABS, BAS, ASR, EDL, and XDL systems (see below). ESC is switched on all the time.

In certain situations when you need less traction or additional traction cannot be achieved, you can switch off Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Golf GTI only: If the vehicle is equipped with a button in the lower center console → fig. 125, ASR can also be switched off by pressing the button. ESC Sport mode can also be switched on via this button

5GM012723ST

→ page 193, *Switching Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) and ESC Sport mode on and off* or in the Infotainment system.

Be sure to switch ASR on again when you no longer need less traction.

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS helps to keep the wheels from locking up and helps to maintain the driver's ability to steer and control the vehicle. This means the vehicle is less likely to skid, even during hard braking:

- Push the brake pedal down hard and hold it there. Don't take your foot off the pedal or reduce the force on the pedal!
- Do not "pump" the brake pedal or let up on it!
- Steer the vehicle while pushing down hard on the brake pedal.
- ABS stops working if you release or let up on the brake.

When ABS is doing its job, you will notice a **slight vibration** through the brake pedal and hear a noise. *ABS cannot shorten the stopping distance under all conditions.* The stopping distance may even be longer, for instance, when driving on gravel or on newly fallen snow covering an icy or slippery surface.

Brake Assist (BAS)

The Brake Assist System can help to reduce stopping distances. If you press the brake pedal very quickly, BAS detects an emergency situation. It then very quickly builds up full brake system pressure, maximizing braking power and reducing the stopping distance. This way, ABS can be activated more quickly and efficiently.

Do **not** reduce pressure on the brake pedal! BAS switches off automatically as soon as you release or let up on the brake.

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power directed to spinning wheels and adjusts power to the road conditions. Even under poor road conditions, ASR can make it easier to get moving, accelerate, and climb hills.

ASR can be switched on and off manually → page 193, *Switching Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) and ESC Sport mode on and off*.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDL)

EDL is applied during regular straight-line acceleration. EDL gently brakes a drive wheel that has lost traction (spinning) and redirects the drive force to other drive wheels. In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake from overheating. As soon as the brake has cooled down, EDL automatically switches on again.

XDL is an extension of the Electronic Differential Lock system. XDL does not react to drive wheel slippage when driving straight ahead. Instead, XDL detects slippage of the inside front wheel during fast cornering. XDL applies enough brake pressure to this wheel in order to stop the slippage. This improves traction, which helps the vehicle stay on track.

Automatic Post-Collision Braking System

In an accident, the Automatic Post-Collision Braking System can help the driver to reduce the risk of skidding and the danger of secondary collisions through automatic braking.

The Automatic Post-Collision Braking System only works in collisions if the airbag control unit registers the corresponding triggering threshold during the accident, and the accident occurs at a speed greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

The ESC brakes the vehicle automatically, provided that the hydraulic braking system, the ESC, and the electrical system are undamaged and still work properly.

The following actions override automatic braking in the event of an accident:

- When the driver depresses the accelerator. No automatic braking occurs.
- When the brake pressure transmitted through the depressed brake pedal is greater than the brake pressure provided by the system. The vehicle is braked manually.

⚠ WARNING

Driving fast on icy, slippery, or wet roads can lead to a loss of control and result in serious personal injury for you and your passengers.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions. Never let the additional safety that ESC, ABS, BAS, ASR, and EDL can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.
- Braking assistance systems cannot overcome the laws of physics and always prevent loss of vehicle control. Slippery and wet roads are still dangerous even with ESC and the other systems!
- Driving too fast on wet roads can cause the wheels to lose contact with the road and "hydroplane." A vehicle that has lost road contact cannot be braked, steered, or controlled.
- These systems cannot reduce the risk of accident, for example if you drive too fast for conditions or if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front of you.

- Although these systems are very effective and can help you control the vehicle in many difficult situations, always remember that vehicle handling and control is limited by tire traction.
- When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, depress the accelerator carefully. Even with these systems, the wheels may start to spin, leading to a loss of vehicle control.

⚠ WARNING

The effectiveness of ESC can be significantly reduced if other components and systems that affect vehicle dynamics, including but not limited to brakes, tires, and other systems mentioned above, are not properly maintained or are not working properly.

- Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect how the ABS, BAS, ASR, EDL, and ESC systems work.
- Changing the vehicle suspension or using an unapproved tire/wheel combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, ASR, EDL, and ESC systems work and reduce their effectiveness.
- The effectiveness of ESC is also determined by the tires installed → page 260, *Tires and wheels*.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without braking assistance systems can greatly increase the distance necessary to stop the vehicle, which can lead to a loss of control and result in serious personal injury for you and your passengers.

- Never let the vehicle coast when the engine is switched off.
- When the braking assistance systems are not working or when the vehicle is being towed, the brake must be depressed harder because the braking distance is longer. ◁

Switching Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) and ESC Sport mode on and off

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 191.

Fig. 125 In the lower center console: Button for switching ASR or ESC Sport mode on and off manually (if equipped).

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) only works when the engine is running. This system includes ABS, EDL, and ASR.

Switch off ASR only in situations where there is not enough traction, such as the following:

— When driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces.

— When "rocking" the vehicle back and forth when you are stuck.

Afterward, activate ASR again.

Switching ASR on and off

— You can switch ASR off and on in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

— **OR:** If the vehicle is equipped with a button in the lower center console → fig. 125, ASR can be switched off by pressing the button when the ignition is on. Press the button again to switch ASR back on.

When ASR is switched off, a driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display and the indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up → page 194, *Tips and troubleshooting*.

Switching ESC Sport on and off (Golf GTI)

Depending on the vehicle model, when switching off the ASR, the ESC can also be switched off or the ESC sport mode (ESC Sport) can be switched on.

The brake intervention functions of ESC are limited when ESC Sport is switched on. It can be switched on and off by pressing the button → fig. 125.

Button	Golf GTI
Press for about 1 second	ASR switched off
Press and hold longer than 3 seconds	ASR switched off, ESC Sport switched on

5GM012723ST

Button	Golf GTI
Press again	ASR (with ESC) switched on

— You can also switch ESC Sport off and on in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

When ESC Sport mode is switched on, a driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display and the indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up → page 194, *Tips and troubleshooting*.

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice on page 191.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

OR BRAKE Brake system malfunction or brake fluid level too low

The red warning light comes on.

— **Stop!** Pull off the road as soon as you can safely do so.

— Check the brake fluid level → page 255, *Brake fluid*.

— Get professional assistance immediately → page 136, *About the brakes*.

OR BRAKE Together with OR ABS ABS failure

The red warning light and the yellow indicator light come on.

— See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

— The vehicle brakes will work without ABS.

OR ABS together with ABS malfunction

The yellow indicator light comes on.

— See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

— The vehicle brakes will work without ABS.

ESC or ASR is operating, the vehicle battery has been reconnected, or there is an ESC malfunction

The yellow indicator light **flashes.**

ESC or ASR is operating.

— Take foot off accelerator pedal. Adapt driving to road conditions.

The yellow indicator light **comes on.**

ESC malfunction, **OR** vehicle battery has been reconnected, **OR** ESC switched off by the system.

— Switch the ignition off and on again.

— If necessary, drive a short distance at a speed of 10–12 mph (15–20 km/h).

— If the indicator light stays on, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

ASR manually deactivated, ESC Sport mode manually activated, or ESC switched off by the system

The yellow indicator light comes on.

— Switch ASR on again → page 193, *Switching Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) and ESC Sport mode on and off*.

— **OR:** Switch ignition off and on again.

— You may have to drive a short distance.

— If the indicator light stays on, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If the braking assistance systems make noises

You may hear noises when these systems are active. This is normal and no cause for concern.

If there is an unexpected reduction in engine power

All 4 wheels must be equipped with identical tires in order for ESC and ASR to work properly. Differences in the tread circumference of the tires can cause the system to reduce the engine power when it is not expected.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to

break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, turn on the emergency flashers, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.
- Never park the vehicle in areas where the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system could come into contact with dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, oil, or other material that can catch fire.
- A broken-down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.

WARNING

- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or (!) lights up at the same time as the ABS warning light **ABS** or (ABS), the ABS may not be working properly. This could cause the rear wheels to lock up relatively quickly during braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control.
- If the ABS indicator light **ABS** or (ABS) does not go out, or if it lights up while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage. ◁

5GM012723ST

Storage and equipment

Storage areas

Introduction

Store only lightweight or small objects in storage compartments.

WARNING

Loose objects can be thrown around the inside of the vehicle when the vehicle is moving, especially during sudden maneuvers and hard braking. This can cause serious personal injuries and even make the driver lose control of the vehicle.

- Never let animals ride in the vehicle's open storage compartments, on top of the instrument panel, or on the luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrests.
- Never put hard, heavy or sharp objects in these places or in articles of clothing or bags in the passenger compartment.
- Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.

WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can prevent the pedals from moving freely. This can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- Always fasten floor mats securely to the floor.
- Never put floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats.
- Always make sure that nothing can fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving.

WARNING

Some kinds of cigarette lighters can be lit unintentionally, or crushed causing a fire that can result in serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Always make sure that there are no lighters in the seat tracks or near other moving parts before adjusting the seats.
- Before closing a storage compartment, always make sure that no cigarette lighter can be activated, crushed, or otherwise damaged.
- Never leave a cigarette lighter in a storage compartment, on the instrument panel, or in other places in the vehicle. Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. High temperatures could cause the cigarette lighter to catch fire.

NOTICE

- The defroster heating wires or antenna in the rear window can be damaged by hard or sharp things on the shelf below the rear window.
- Do not keep any food, medicine, or other items sensitive to heat or cold in the vehicle. They can be damaged or made unusable by heat or cold.
- Things that are made of transparent materials (such as eyeglasses, magnifying glasses, or transparent suction cups on the windows) can magnify sunlight and damage the vehicle.

The ventilation slots in the luggage compartment must not be blocked so that stale air can escape from the vehicle. ◁

Storage compartment on the driver side

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice and on page 196.

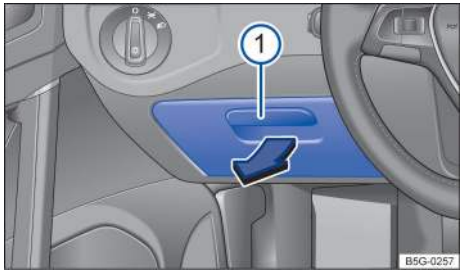


Fig. 126 On the driver side: Storage compartment.

— *To open:* Pull the handle → fig. 126 (1) in the direction of the arrow.

— *To close:* Push the lid up until it latches.

On some vehicles, there is a holder for SD cards on the inside of the storage compartment lid. ◁

Glove compartment

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 196.

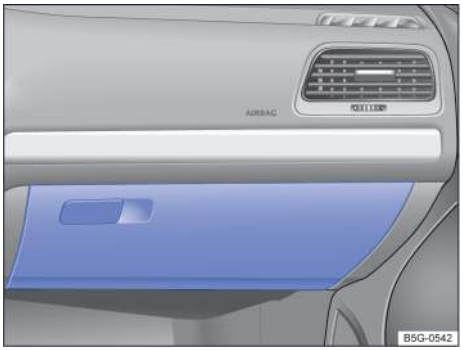


Fig. 127 On the passenger side: Glove compartment.

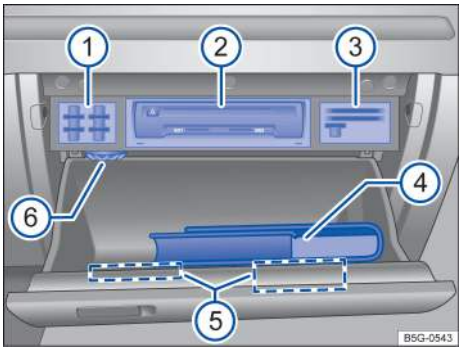


Fig. 128 Inside the glove compartment.

Key to fig. 128:

① SD card holders
② Infotainment system accessories (if equipped) → *Infotainment System*
③ Card holders and coin holder
④ Owner's Manual
⑤ Additional holders for coins, cards, or sunglasses
⑥ Air vent (if equipped) → page 126

Opening and closing the glove compartment

— *To open:* Pull the handle → fig. 127.

— *To close:* Push the lid up.

Infotainment system accessories

Vehicles equipped with an Infotainment system may have a CD player, SD card readers, or other Infotainment system accessories → fig. 128 ② in the glove compartment. See → *Infotainment System* for further information.

Owner's Manual

If the vehicle is not equipped with an Infotainment system, there is a slot for the Owner's Manual in the upper part of the glove compartment. Always keep the Owner's Manual in this slot or in the glove compartment as shown in → fig. 128 ④.

Holders

Depending on vehicle equipment, there may be holders for SD cards → fig. 128 ①, other types of cards ③, and a coin holder in the upper part of the glove compartment.

There may also be additional holders for coins, cards, or sunglasses in the glove compartment cover ⑤.

Cooling the glove compartment

Depending on vehicle equipment, there may be an air vent → fig. 128 ⑥ in the glove compartment. Cool air can be directed into the glove compartment if the air conditioner is on. Open or close the air vent by turning it.

⚠ WARNING

An open glove compartment door can increase the risk of serious injury during sudden braking or driving maneuvers or in a crash.

- Always keep the glove compartment closed while the vehicle is moving.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

In some vehicle models, design considerations have made it necessary to have openings in the glove compartment behind the Owner's Manual slot, for example. Small items may fall through these openings and get behind the instrument panel. This can cause unusual noises and damage the vehicle. Never put any small items in the glove compartment for this reason. ◁

5GM012723ST

Storage compartment in the front center console

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 196.

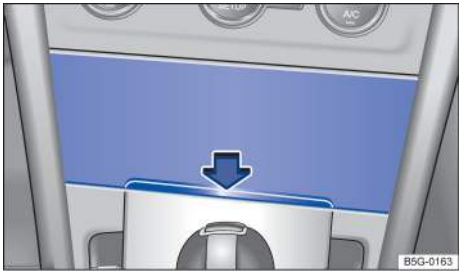


Fig. 129 In the front center console: Storage compartment.

— *To open:* Briefly press the lower edge of the cover in the direction of the arrow → fig. 129. The cover opens automatically.

— *To close:* Press the lid down completely.

The storage compartment in the front center console may have an AUX-in jack and/or a USB port → *Infotainment System*. ◁

Coin holders in the front center console

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 196.

Fig. 130 In the front center console: Coin holders.

Depending on equipment, the lower part of the front center console → fig. 130 may have slots for storing coins. ◁

Storage compartment between the front seats

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 196.

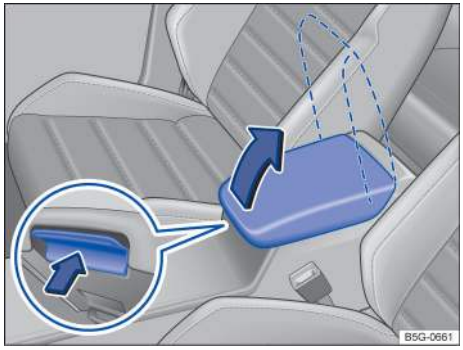


Fig. 131 In the front center armrest: Storage compartment.

Depending on equipment, your vehicle may have a storage compartment between the front seats.

— *To open:* Push the release button (magnified view) and lift the center armrest up as far as it will go in the direction of the large arrow → fig. 131.

— *To close:* Push the center armrest all the way down until it latches in place.

⚠ WARNING

When completely open or improperly adjusted, the center armrest can restrict the driver's arm movement and cause crashes and serious personal injury.

- Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.
- Never let a passenger, especially a child, ride on the center armrest. ◁

Storage compartments in the doors

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 196.

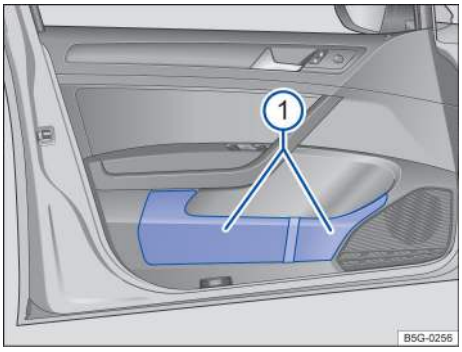


Fig. 132 In the driver door: Storage compartment.

There is a storage compartment in each vehicle door → fig. 132 ①, → ⓘ.

NOTICE

- Large or heavy items may fall out of the door storage compartments when the door is opened or closed.
- Open drinks placed in the bottle holders in the doors may spill when you open or close the doors. ◁

Eyeglass storage compartment in the overhead console

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 196.

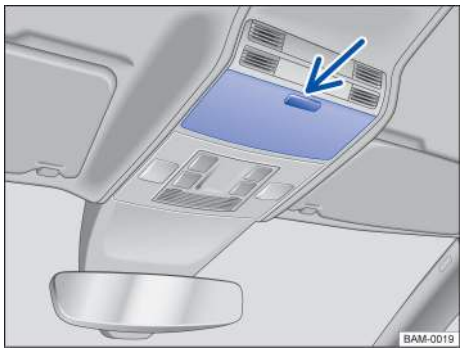


Fig. 133 In the overhead console: Storage compartment.

Your vehicle may have a storage compartment that can be used for storing eyeglasses or other light items.

— *To open:* Briefly press and release the button → fig. 133 (arrow) on the storage compartment cover.

— *To close:* Push the lid up until it latches. ◁

Other storage compartments

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 196.

Storage compartments in the luggage compartment

Additional storage compartments are located in the sides of the luggage compartment → page 213, *Transporting*.

Additional storage

— In the center console.

— Pockets in the backrests of the front seats (if equipped).

— Luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrest – only for light clothing or similar objects that do not interfere with visibility to the rear!

— **Coat hooks** on the center door pillars and on the overhead grab handles in the rear.

5GM012723ST

WARNING

Clothes or other items on the luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrest may limit visibility and cause accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Always hang clothes so that they do not limit visibility.
- Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged items in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.

NOTICE

The maximum load for each coat hook is 5 lbs. (2.5 kg). ◁

Cup holders

Introduction

Bottle holders

There is a place for bottles in the open compartments in the driver and passenger doors. The bottle volume must not be more than 16.9 oz (0.5 liter) → ⚠.

WARNING

Improper use of beverage holders can cause injuries.

- Never put hot drinks in the cup holders. During normal or sudden maneuvers, sudden braking or in a collision, hot liquid can be spilled and cause burns!
- Make certain that bottles or other items cannot fall into the driver's footwell while the vehicle is moving and interfere with the movement of the pedals.
- Never put heavy cups, food or other heavy items in the cup holders. Heavy items can fly through the passenger compartment in a crash and cause serious injury.
- Use the bottle holders only for standard beverage bottles holding no more than 16.9 oz (0.5 liter).

WARNING

Hot or freezing temperatures in the passenger compartment can cause closed bottles to explode or break.

- Never leave closed bottles in a very hot or cold vehicle.

NOTICE

Never put open drinks in the cup holders when the vehicle is moving. The drinks can spill and damage the vehicle, including the electrical system.

Some cup holder inserts can be removed for cleaning. ◁

Cup holders in the front center console

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 200.

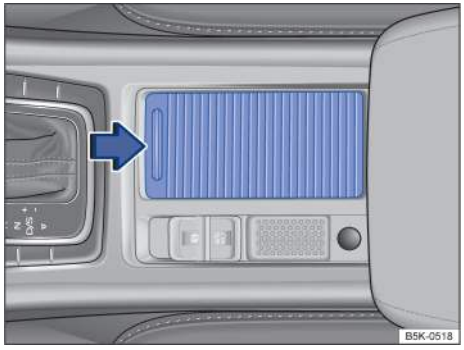


Fig. 134 In the front center console: Opening the cup holder cover (if equipped).

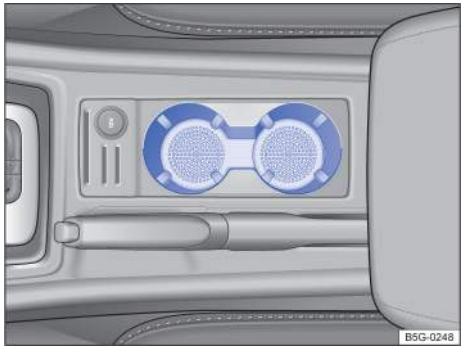


Fig. 135 In the front center console: Cup holders (without a cover).

There are two cup holders in the front center console in front of the center armrest. The cup holders cannot be removed.

Some models are equipped with a cover for the cup holders.

— *To open the cover:* Pull the cover to the rear → fig. 134 (arrow).

— *To close the cover:* Push the cover forward (opposite direction of the arrow).

— For vehicles without a cover, place the drink in the cup holder → fig. 135. ◁

Cup holders in the rear center armrest

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 200.

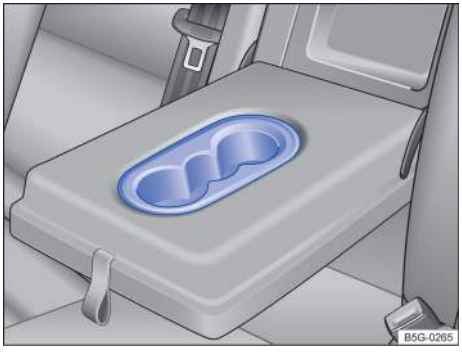


Fig. 136 Cup holders in the rear center armrest (version 1).

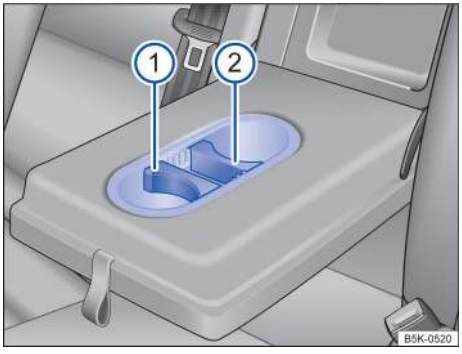


Fig. 137 Cup holders in the rear center armrest (version 2).

Your vehicle has cup holders in the rear center armrest.

— *To open:* Fold the center armrest down.

— Some cup holders have inserts that can be positioned to hold beverages of different sizes → fig. 137. *To adjust* the cup holder to the size of the cup, pull the inserts ① or ② upward and reposition them to fit the size of the cup.

— *To close:* Fold the center armrest up.

⚠ WARNING

Always keep the armrest folded up when the vehicle is moving to reduce the risk of injury.

- Never let anybody, especially children, ride on the rear center armrest or in the center position on the rear seat when the armrest is folded down. An improper seating position can increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.

Some cup holder designs allow you to adjust to the size of the cup by turning the inserts 180 degrees. ◁

Power outlets

🕮 Introduction

Compatible electrical devices can be connected to the vehicle 12 Volt sockets.

The connected devices must be in good working order.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of electrical sockets and electrical devices may start a fire and cause severe personal injury.

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Sockets and connected devices can be used when the ignition is switched on.
- If the connected device gets warm, immediately switch it off and disconnect the power supply.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- To help prevent damage to the electrical system, never connect any accessories such as a solar panel or vehicle battery charger to a 12 Volt socket.
- Only use accessories which have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility with a motor vehicle.

5GM012723ST

- To help prevent damage from voltage fluctuations, switch off all electrical consumers connected to the 12 Volt socket before switching the ignition on or off or starting the engine.
- Never connect devices to a 12 Volt socket that draw more than the maximum wattage the socket can supply. Drawing too much power can damage the vehicle electrical system.

Please turn off the engine when you stop for any length of time.

The vehicle battery will drain if you use electrical equipment when the engine is not running.

Unshielded devices may interfere with radio reception or the vehicle's electrical system.

Operating electrical devices near the windshield-integrated antenna may interfere with AM radio reception. ◁

12 Volt sockets in the vehicle

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 201.

Fig. 138 In the lower center console: 12 Volt socket (vehicles with parking brake lever).

Fig. 139 In the lower center console: 12 Volt socket (vehicles with electronic parking brake).

Maximum power draw

Socket	Maximum power draw
12 Volts	120 watts

If 2 or more electrical devices are connected at the same time, the total power draw of all connected devices must never be more than 190 watts → ⓘ.

The maximum power draw at any one socket must never be exceeded. Electrical devices should have information on them that says how much power they draw.

12 Volt socket

The 12 Volt socket works only when the ignition is switched on.

If the ignition is on but the engine is not running, the vehicle battery will be drained by any device that is plugged in and turned on. For this reason, never use the electrical sockets unless the engine is running.

To help prevent damage from voltage fluctuations, switch off all electrical devices connected to a 12 Volt socket before switching the ignition on or off or starting the engine.

The vehicle may have 12 Volt sockets at the following places:

— In the lower center console → fig. 138 or → fig. 139, depending on equipment.

— In the luggage compartment.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- Follow the manufacturer's instructions for connected devices!
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, or the entire vehicle electrical system may be damaged.
- **12 Volt socket:**

— **Only use equipment that has been tested for electromagnetic compatibility and complies with applicable guidelines.**

— **Never feed current into the socket, with a solar panel, for example.**

Unshielded devices may interfere with radio reception or the vehicle's electrical system. ◁

5GM012723ST

Media and audio components

Removing the subwoofer

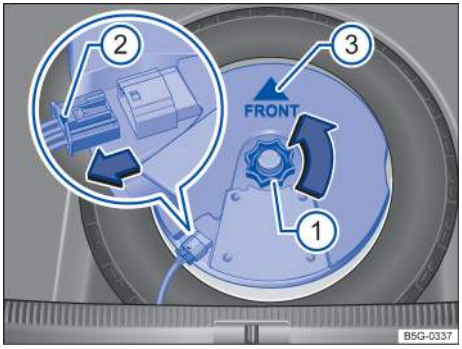


Fig. 140 Under the luggage compartment floor: Subwoofer (if equipped).

The subwoofer, if equipped, is under the luggage compartment floor and must be removed to access the spare wheel.

Removing the subwoofer

— Raise and secure the luggage compartment floor → page 215, *Variable luggage compartment floor*.

— Unscrew the handwheel → fig. 140 ① in a counterclockwise direction (arrow).

— To release the electrical connector, press and hold the center tab down with one hand ②.

— With the other hand, grasp the connector socket on both sides and lift the subwoofer slightly. Carefully pull the connector out of the socket in the direction of the arrow (magnified view). Put the electric cable aside.

— Remove the subwoofer carefully and place in a clean storage location.

Reinstalling the subwoofer

— Reinstall the subwoofer carefully back into the recess. The tip of the arrow symbol "FRONT" on the subwoofer → fig. 140 ③ must point toward the front of the vehicle

— Insert the connector ② into the socket (in the opposite direction of the arrow) until it clicks into place.

— Turn the handwheel ① clockwise to secure the subwoofer.

— Carefully lower the luggage compartment floor back into place.

NOTICE

The subwoofer can be damaged if the electrical connector is disconnected improperly or if the connecting cable is pinched or crimped. ◁

Data transfer

Cybersecurity

Your vehicle contains many components that can send and receive information. They are connected to different networks to make navigation, communication, and online services, such as Car-Net, possible.

These components include:

— Onboard Diagnostic port

— Control units with integrated eSIM card

— Volkswagen Car-Net control unit

— Mobile phone interface

— Media control

— App-Connect

— WiFi hotspot

— Bluetooth connection

— USB port

— SD card slot

— SIM card slot

These are key components equipped with cybersecurity measures that help prevent unauthorized and unlawful access to vehicle systems. However, no vehicle or system is absolutely immune from illegal or unauthorized access and misuse, particularly as cybersecurity risks evolve over time.

Therefore, you may be contacted by Volkswagen or an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility regarding the need to update software to help prevent unauthorized and unlawful access to vehicle systems. It is important that you as the vehicle owner or lessee keep your contact information up-to-date so that you can be notified.

You too, can actively help reduce the risk of unauthorized access to vehicle systems and functions:

— Frequently change passwords using combinations of letters, numbers, and symbols that are hard to guess.

— Have the vehicle serviced, repaired, and maintained only by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for this purpose.

— Never connect any devices that do not come from known and trusted sources to the Onboard Diagnostic II port on your vehicle. This port is required by law and is used by authorized technicians to get information about the performance of your vehicle's emissions controls. Attaching other devices can cause malicious software to be directly introduced into the vehicle and its systems.

— Only connect media (USB flash and other drives, electronic devices, SD and other memory cards, etc.) from known and trusted sources to your vehicle to help prevent malicious software from being introduced into your vehicle.

— Always make sure that only apps from known and trusted sources are installed on smartphones and other devices that are connected to your vehicle or that are to be installed into vehicle systems.

WARNING

The introduction of malicious software into the vehicle and its systems can impair safety-related vehicle functions and cause loss of vehicle control, a crash, and serious personal injury or death, as well as potential data loss. To help minimize the potential risk of security breaches:

- Never connect – or allow others to connect – electronic devices or media such as USB flash drives to the vehicle unless you are sure that they come from known and trusted sources.
- If you believe that your vehicle or its systems may be infected by malicious software, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility right away. ◁

VW Car-Net® Security & Service: Connecting you and your vehicle

Introduction

VW Car-Net® Ready

Your vehicle is equipped with VW Car-Net hardware, including a 3-button module in the overhead console. To begin using Car-Net services, a subscription and activation are required. Many of the services require a paid subscription; some services may be provided through a trial subscription for a limited time.

VW Car-Net requires vehicle cellular connectivity and availability of vehicle GPS signal.

WARNING

Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury! Using application software and VW Car-Net features while driving can distract the driver from traffic.

- Always drive attentively and responsibly.

5GM012723ST

When enrolled in VW Car-Net, vehicle location information is transmitted to Volkswagen anytime you press a button in the VW Car-Net 3-button module, when an Automatic Crash Notification event occurs, or periodically in connection with the operation of VW Car-Net. Unless VW Car-Net equipment is disabled in the vehicle, it is possible for Volkswagen to determine the car's location if required by law, court order, subpoena, or other legal requirement, or in emergency circumstances. For more information, please contact the VW Car-Net Response Center at 1- 833-648-2735.

— Calls between us may be monitored or recorded.

Volkswagen collects, processes, transmits, uses and shares information about you and your vehicle in accordance with the VW Car-Net Terms of Service and Privacy Statement. See the VW Car-Net Terms of Service and Privacy Statement at (www.vw.com/carnet) for more details. ◁

Situations that can affect system functions

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 205.

Even if requirements for the usage of these services have been met, the performance of VW Car-Net® may be impaired or blocked by various factors that are outside of the control of Volkswagen. In particular, this includes:

— Maintenance, repairs, deactivations, software updates, and technical improvements to the telecommunications systems, satellites, servers, and databases

— Switching the mobile network standard to transmit mobile data through the telecommunications provider, for example, from UMTS to EDGE or GPRS.

— If an existing mobile network standard is switched off by the telecommunications provider.

— Malfunction, impairment, or interruption of the mobile network and GPS reception, for example due to high speeds, solar storms, weather conditions, regional circumstances, malfunctioning equipment, and high mobile network usage in the applicable radio cells.

— If you are in a location with no mobile phone and GPS reception, or insufficient reception. These locations may include tunnels, areas between tall buildings, garages, parking structures, underpasses, mountains, and valleys.

— Limited availability of information or incomplete or incorrect information from third-party providers, such as on map displays.

— In countries, federal states and regions where VW Car-Net® is not offered. ◁

VW Car-Net® Portfolio

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 205.

VW Car-Net is a suite of Connected Vehicle Services that makes driving and owning a Volkswagen vehicle more convenient. In-Vehicle services are available using the 3-button module in your overhead console

— *Emergency Assistance* – If you or a passenger needs medical attention or the police, press the SOS Button in your vehicle. You will be connected to a VW Car-Net Security & Service Emergency Specialist, who can send help to your GPS location.

— *Roadside Assistance* – In the event that you have a flat tire or get into some other type of non-emergency trouble on the road, push the Wrench Button in your Volkswagen. You will be connected to a VW Roadside Assistance Specialist, who can send help to your GPS location.

— *Information Assistance* – Press the i-Button and connect to a VW Car-Net Response Center Specialist that can help you enroll and subscribe to a paid service, find directions and send to your in-vehicle navigation system, help you find the nearest VW Service Dealer and more.

NOTICE

Only use the Emergency Assistance button to obtain security and emergency services through VW Car-Net. Do not use the Roadside Assistance button or the Information Assistance button to obtain security and emergency services. When contacted using the Emergency Assistance button, a VW Car-Net Security & Service Emergency Specialist will assess the situation and if necessary call the police or other emergency personnel and ask that assistance be dispatched to the GPS location of your vehicle. Volkswagen is not responsible for actual response time of the police or other emergency service providers, or their ability to assist in the situation.

Subscription required

To begin using Car-Net services, a subscription and activation are required. Many of the services require a paid subscription; some services may be provided through a trial subscription for a limited time. For

more information on all of the VW Car-Net services, visit our website at http://www.vw.com/carnet.

Once enrolled in VW Car-Net services please advise all who use the vehicle that different kinds of data can be sent and received automatically by the vehicle, including speed, location and more.

The Car-Net features and services and any trial or paid subscriptions may be modified, discontinued, deactivated, reactivated, or expanded without further notice. Please see www.vw.com/carnet for subscription details, VW Car-Net Terms of Service and Privacy Statement.

If you have a question or would like to subscribe, contact the VW Car-Net Response Center at 1-833-648-2735 or visit our website at www.vw.com/carnet. ◁

Wi-FI hotspot

Introduction

Some Infotainment systems can be used as a Wi-Fi hotspot for Internet access on up to eight Wi-Fi devices.

Some Infotainment systems can also use the Wi-Fi hotspot on an external Wi-Fi device (Wi-Fi client) → page 210.

A data connection is required for connecting to the Internet and for certain functions, such as using Volkswagen We Connect.

The Wi-Fi connection is encrypted by default with WPA2 encryption for security reasons. Volkswagen recommends always using WPA2 encryption. Observe legal regulations for the country where you are operating the vehicle.

There may be fees for the required data connection. Volkswagen recommends using a mobile phone plan with a flat rate data package due to the possible volume of data. Information on this can be obtained from the mobile phone service provider.

Depending on your mobile data rate, additional costs (such as roaming fees) may result from downloading and using data packets online, especially in other countries. ◁

Establishing a data connection

eSIM (embedded SIM)[1)]

The vehicle has an online connectivity unit (OCU) with an integrated SIM card (eSIM). In order to be able to use this eSIM, you need to purchase data plans via the In-Car Shop.

The following points must be activated in the settings menu:

— Either **Network setup** ▶ *Allow Internet connection*.

— Or **Data connection** ▶ *Integrated data connection*.

SIM card in SIM card reader[1)]

Appropriate SIM card in the SIM card reader. *Allow Internet connection* must be activated in the **Network settings** menu. A stable network connection is only possible with a compatible SIM card.
Gilt für Car-Stick#

CarStick[1)]

Correct CarStick is in the appropriate USB socket → page 208. *Allow Internet connection* must be activated in the **Network settings** menu.

Bluetooth® Profile rSAP[1)]

The Infotainment system is connected to a mobile device via the Bluetooth® Profile rSAP. *Allow Internet connection* must be activated in the **Network settings** menu.

External Wi-Fi device[1)]

Use the Wi-Fi hotspot on an external mobile device → page 210. ◁

Setting up a Wi-Fi hotspot

The Infotainment system can be used as a Wi-Fi hotspot for Internet access for up to 4 Wi-Fi devices.

A data connection, for example through an eSIM card, a CarStick, or external Wi-Fi device, is also required for connecting to the Internet and for certain functions, such as using Volkswagen Car-Net. The possible types of data connections depend on the country and the Infotainment system being used.

1) These data connections are dependent on the country and the vehicle equipment and are not available in every vehicle.

Determining network information

Requirements

— Your Volkswagen Car-Net account is added to your car.

— You have a paid data plan for your vehicle.

1. Log into your user profile via the Volkswagen Car-Net app or the Car-Net customer portal and select your vehicle.
2. Search for the network name (SSID) and network key (password) for your vehicle as follows:
   — On the customer portal under **User** ▶ **Wi-Fi SSID and password.**
   — **OR:** In the app under **User** ▶ **Wi-Fi** ▶ **SSID & password.**
3. Change your network name or password as desired.
4. Activate the Wi-Fi hotspot.

For more information or to log in to your VW Car-Net user account, see www.vw.com/carnet.

Connecting to Wi-Fi

1. Search for available networks and mobile devices.
2. Select from the network names (SSID).
3. Enter and confirm the network key.
4. The Wi-Fi connection will be established. In some cases, you may need to enter additional information on the mobile device in order to finish connecting.
5. Repeat the process to connect additional mobile devices.

The types of possible data connections depend on the country and equipment. ◁

CarStick Connecting to USB

A suitable CarStick is connected to the vehicle's USB port and connects the Infotainment system to the Internet via HSDPA/HSUPA, UMTS or EDGE.

Commercially available USB sticks (such as UMTS sticks) are **not** compatible with the Infotainment system. A suitable CarStick is available at an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Depending on the country and equipment, there may be one or more USB ports in the vehicle.

The location of the USB ports depends on the vehicle.

Connecting to the Internet using a CarStick is not possible with all Infotainment systems.

Connecting

To install the CarStick and connect to the Internet, read and follow the directions in the operating manual for the CarStick.

Additional settings may be necessary.

The availability of a suitable CarStick depends on the country. Information on availability can be found at the Volkswagen website or at an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If the connected CarStick is not recognized, disconnect all connected devices and then reconnect the CarStick. ◁

Quick connection

Quick connection (WPS) makes it possible to easily and quickly set up a wireless, local network with encryption. In several countries, the function can alternatively be executed by scanning in a code.
Gilt für Modellreihe A-, Baureihe Golf VW37x, Baureihe Tiguan VW326, Baureihe Touran VW378, Modellreihe A0, Modellreihe A00, Kar Atlas VW416, Kar Passat NMS VW411, Kar Sharan VW428 and Modellreihe C

WPS with the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi hotspot

— Press MENU ▶ ⚙ ▶ WI-FI ▶ Mobile hotspot (WI-FI), to call up the **Hotspot settings** menu.

— Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button).

— Activate WPS on the mobile device to be connected.

— The Wi-Fi connection will be established. In some cases, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device in order to finish connecting.

— Repeat the process to connect additional mobile devices.

Only one WPS connection can be established at a time. If multiple connection attempts start at the same time, all connection attempts will fail.
Gilt für Baureihe Golf VW38x

WPS with the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi hotspot

✓ The Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system must be activated.

✓ The Wi-Fi device must support WPS.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi.
2. Tap Quick connection with Infotainment system.
3. Activate WPS on the external Wi-Fi device to be connected.
4. The Wi-Fi connection will be established. In some cases, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device in order to finish connecting.
5. Repeat the process to connect additional Wi-Fi devices.

Only one WPS connection can be established at a time. If multiple connection attempts start at the same time, all connection attempts will fail.
Gilt für Baureihe Passat VW48x and Kar Arteon VW483

WPS with the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi hotspot

✓ The Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system must be activated.

✓ The Wi-Fi device must support WPS.

1. Tap MENU ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi.
2. Tap Quick connection with Infotainment system.
3. Activate WPS on the external Wi-Fi device to be connected.
4. The Wi-Fi connection will be established. In some cases, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device in order to finish connecting.
5. Repeat the process to connect additional Wi-Fi devices.

Only one WPS connection can be established at a time. If multiple connection attempts start at the same time, all connection attempts will fail.
Gilt für Modellreihe A-, Baureihe Golf VW37x, Baureihe Tiguan VW326, Baureihe Touran VW378, Modellreihe A0, Modellreihe A00, Kar Atlas VW416, Kar Passat NMS VW411, Kar Sharan VW428 and Modellreihe C

WPS with Infotainment system as client

— Press MENU ▶ Settings ▶ WI-FI ▶ WI-FI to access the **Hotspot (Wi-Fi)** menu.
— Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button).
— Activate WPS on the external Wi-Fi device.
— The Wi-Fi connection will be established. In some cases, you may need to enter additional information on the mobile device in order to finish connecting.

WPS is not supported by all mobile devices or some external Wi-Fi devices. In this case, connect manually:

— Setting up the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi hotspot → page 207, → page 207.
— Connecting the Infotainment system as client to the hotspot of an external Wi-Fi device → page 210.

Gilt für Baureihe Golf VW38x

WPS with Infotainment system as client

✓ The Wi-Fi device must support WPS.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi ▶ Wi-Fi:.
2. Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button).
3. Activate WPS on the external Wi-Fi device.
4. The Wi-Fi connection will be established. In some cases, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device in order to finish connecting.

Gilt für Baureihe Passat VW48x and Kar Arteon VW483

WPS with Infotainment system as client

✓ The Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system must be deactivated.

✓ The Wi-Fi device must support WPS.

1. Tap MENU ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi ▶ Wi-Fi:.
2. Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button).
3. Activate WPS on the external Wi-Fi device.
4. The Wi-Fi connection will be established. In some cases, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device in order to finish connecting.

WPS is not supported by all Wi-Fi devices. In this case, connect manually:

— Setting up the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi hotspot → page 207, → page 207.
— Connecting the Infotainment system as client to the hotspot of an external Wi-Fi device → page 210.

Gilt für Golf VW380/0EU_K

Setting up a Wi-Fi connection via NFC

The Wi-Fi connection can be established via NFC using the shelf of the cordless charging station.

Prerequisites for using NFC connections:

✓ The shelf of the cordless charging station is installed in the vehicle.

5GM012723ST

✓ NFC is activated on the Wi-Fi device.

✓ The Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system is activated.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi.
2. Tap Quick connection with Infotainment system.
3. Unlock the Wi-Fi device and place it on the shelf of the cordless charging station.

The Wi-Fi device is connected as client to the Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system.

The cordless charging function is deactivated while the Infotainment system is in the Wi-Fi settings menu. Cordless charging is reactivated when you exit the settings menu.

On older Wi-Fi devices, the functionality may be restricted or not work at all. Ensure that you always use the latest software version for your Wi-Fi device.
Gilt für Baureihe Passat VW48x and Arteon VW483/0EU_K

Setting up a Wi-Fi connection via NFC

The Wi-Fi connection can be established via NFC using the shelf of the cordless charging station.

Prerequisites for using NFC connections:

✓ The shelf of the cordless charging station is installed in the vehicle.

✓ NFC is activated on the Wi-Fi device.

✓ The Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system is activated.

1. Tap MENU ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi.
2. Tap Quick connection with Infotainment system.
3. Unlock the Wi-Fi device and place it on the shelf of the cordless charging station.

The Wi-Fi device is connected as client to the Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system.

The cordless charging function is deactivated while the Infotainment system is in the Wi-Fi settings menu. Cordless charging is reactivated when you exit the settings menu.

On older Wi-Fi devices, the functionality may be restricted or not work at all. Ensure that you always use the latest software version for your Wi-Fi device.
Gilt für Golf VW380/0EU_K

Setting up a Wi-Fi connection via QR code

The Wi-Fi connection can also be established by scanning a QR code.

✓ The Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system must be activated.

✓ A suitable application for scanning QR codes must be installed on the Wi-Fi device.

1. Tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi.
2. Tap Quick connection with Infotainment system.
3. Scan the QR code on the screen of the Infotainment system with the Wi-Fi device.

The Wi-Fi device is connected as client to the Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system.
Gilt für Baureihe Passat VW48x and Arteon VW483/0EU_K

Setting up a Wi-Fi connection via QR code

The Wi-Fi connection can also be established by scanning a QR code.

✓ The Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system must be activated.

✓ A suitable application for scanning QR codes must be installed on the Wi-Fi device.

1. Tap MENU ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi.
2. Tap Quick connection with Infotainment system.
3. Scan the QR code on the screen of the Infotainment system with the Wi-Fi device.

The Wi-Fi device is connected as client to the Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system. ◁

Setting up a Wi-Fi client

The Infotainment system can also use the Wi-Fi hotspot on an external Wi-Fi device (such as a mobile device) to connect to the Internet and use online services.
Gilt für Modellreihe A-, Baureihe Golf VW37x, Baureihe Tiguan VW326, Baureihe Touran VW378, Modellreihe A0, Modellreihe A00, Kar Atlas VW416, Kar Passat NMS VW411, Kar Sharan VW428 and Modellreihe C

Connecting to Wi-Fi

— Activate the Wi-Fi hotspot on the Wi-Fi device. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

— Press MENU ▶ Settings ⚙ ▶ WI-FI ▶ WI-FI to access the **Hotspot (Wi-Fi)** menu.

— Activating Wi-Fi on the Infotainment system. To do this, activate the ☑ WLAN checkbox.

— Tap Search and select the desired Wi-Fi hotspot from the list. The search for available Wi-Fi hotspots may take several seconds.

— If necessary, enter the Wi-Fi hotspot network key on the Infotainment system and confirm with OK.

The Wi-Fi connection will be established. In some cases, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device in order to finish connecting.

Manual settings: enter the network settings of an external Wi-Fi device manually.

The Infotainment system cannot be used both as a hotspot and as a client of a Wi-Fi network at the same time. To connect the Infotainment system as client to a Wi-Fi device, the hotspot of the Infotainment system must first be switched off.

Gilt für Baureihe Golf VW38x

Connecting to Wi-Fi

1. Activate the Wi-Fi hotspot on the Wi-Fi device. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Tap HOME ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi ▶ Wi-Fi:.
3. Tap Search for Wi-Fi.

   The Infotainment system scans for Wi-Fi hotspots in the area. This scan process can take a few seconds.
4. Selecting the Wi-Fi network of the desired Wi-Fi device.

   Enter the Wi-Fi hotspot network key on the Infotainment system and confirm with OK.

The Wi-Fi connection will be established. In some cases, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device in order to finish connecting.

Gilt für Baureihe Passat VW48x and Kar Arteon VW483

Connecting to Wi-Fi

1. Activate the Wi-Fi hotspot on the Wi-Fi device. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Tap MENU ▶ ⚙ ▶ Wi-Fi ▶ Wi-Fi:.
3. Activate the ☑ Wi-Fi checkbox.

   The Infotainment system scans for Wi-Fi hotspots in the area. This scan process can take a few seconds.
4. Selecting the Wi-Fi network of the desired Wi-Fi device.

   Enter the Wi-Fi hotspot network key on the Infotainment system and confirm with OK.

The Wi-Fi connection will be established. In some cases, you may need to enter additional information on the Wi-Fi device in order to finish connecting.

Due to the large number of Wi-Fi devices that are available, there is no guarantee that all functions will always be available.

The Wi-Fi function may not be available in all countries. ◁

Adjusting settings

Opening the Network settings menu

— Tap MENU ▶ SETTINGS to open the **System settings** menu.

OR: tap Settings in the **Car-Net** menu to access **Car-Net (online services) settings.**

— Tap Network to access the **Network settings** menu.

— Tap the function button for the area where the settings should be configured. Changes will be automatically applied when the menu is closed.

Note: the **Network settings** menu is only visible if a SIM card is in the Infotainment system, there is a Bluetooth®-rSAP connection, or a compatible CarStick is connected to the Infotainment system.

Function buttons in the Network settings menu

Network settings The submenu opens for connection settings with the cell phone service provider (**Mobile network settings**) from whom the SIM card was purchased.

☐ Data roaming: Data roaming is deactivated. To use a data connection while out of the country, data roaming must be activated. This may result in additional charges. For information on roaming fees, contact the mobile phone service provider.

Current connection details: Display of data packets sent and received through the Infotainment system. This display may differ from the mobile phone network provider data.

Restore factory settings: Restoring the factory settings **deletes** all previous inputs and settings.

Internet connection: Opens a context menu with the options Do not allow (data connection will not be established), Show disclaimer (data connection will only be established after the prompt is confirmed) and Always allow (data connection will be established automatically).

Function buttons in the Mobile network settings menu

Access point name: Access point name for the mobile network provider for the mobile network connection. The name is automatically preset and, if necessary, can be manually changed according to the respective cell phone service provider specifications.

User name: User name when accessing the cell phone service provider access point. The user

5GM012723ST

name is automatically preset and, if necessary, can be manually changed according to the respective cell phone service provider specifications.

Password: Password to connect to the mobile network. The password is automatically preset and, if necessary, can be manually changed according to the respective cell phone service provider specifications.

Authentication: Depending on the mobile network provider, authentication (verification of identity) may be necessary. If this is the case, select **Secure**. If not, select **Normal**.

Reset automatic connection settings: Any entries and settings that have been made are reset to the default settings.

◁

Transporting

Stowing luggage

Always stow all luggage securely in the vehicle

— Distribute the load in the vehicle and, if applicable, on the roof as evenly as possible.

— Always put luggage and heavy items in the luggage compartment.

— Put heavy objects as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment and securely latch the rear seat backrest in the upright position.

— Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating → page 324, *Weights and axle weights*.

— Secure luggage in the luggage compartment using suitable straps and the tie downs → page 216, *Tie-downs*.

— Securely stow small objects as well.

— Have the headlight range adjusted, if necessary → page 112, *Lights*.

— Check the pressure in all 4 tires when the tires are still cold. Never reduce air pressure in warm tires to match cold tire inflation pressure. Heed the information on the tire pressure label → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.

— Pay especially close attention to your vehicle's Tire Pressure Monitoring System when driving with a heavy load → page 260, *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

⚠ WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly stowed items can fly through the vehicle, causing serious personal injury during hard braking or sharp steering or in an accident. Loose items can also be struck and thrown through the passenger compartment by the front airbags if they inflate. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always stow all objects securely in the vehicle. Always put luggage and heavy items in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects in the passenger compartment properly with suitable straps so that they cannot move into the deployment zone of a side or front airbag during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver, or in a collision.
- Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.
- Never stow hard, heavy, or sharp objects in the vehicle's open storage compartments, on the luggage compartment cover, or on the top of the instrument panel.
- Always remove hard, heavy, or sharp objects from clothing and bags in the vehicle interior and stow them securely in the luggage compartment.
- Passengers must never ride in an incorrect seating position because objects are being transported in the vehicle.
- Never let anybody sit in a seat that is blocked by objects being carried in the vehicle.
- Never let anyone ride in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Transporting heavy objects causes the handling characteristics of the vehicle to change and increases braking distances. Heavy loads which are not properly stowed or secured in the vehicle can lead to a loss of vehicle control and cause serious personal injury.

- Transporting heavy items causes the handling characteristics of the vehicle to change by shifting the vehicle's center of gravity.
- Always distribute luggage evenly and as low as possible within the vehicle. The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage).
- Always stow luggage and heavy items in the luggage compartment as far forward of the rear axle as possible and secure them with appropriate straps to the tie-downs provided.
- Secure the load properly to keep it from shifting.
- Never exceed the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating or Gross Axle Weight Ratings, which are printed on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the door jamb of the driver door. Exceeding the permissible weight can cause the vehicle to skid and behave differently.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to accommodate your payload and its weight distribution within your vehicle.
- Be especially cautious and gentle when stepping on the accelerator pedal and avoid sudden braking and other maneuvers.
- Brake earlier than you would if you were not driving a loaded vehicle.

5GM012723ST

NOTICE

The defroster heating wires or antenna in the rear window can be damaged by objects that rub against them.

The ventilation slots in the luggage compartment must not be blocked so that stale air can escape from the vehicle.

Please review the information on loading a roof rack → page 218, *Roof rack*. ◁

Luggage compartment cover

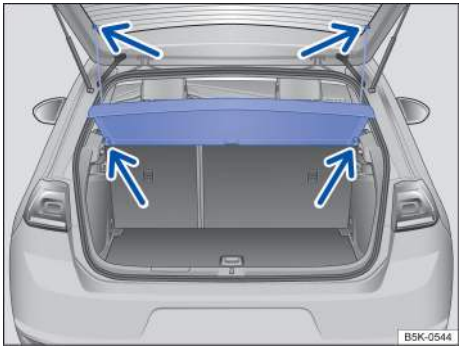


Fig. 141 In the luggage compartment: Installing and removing the luggage compartment cover.

When you open or close the trunk lid, the supporting cords, when attached, will automatically raise or lower the luggage compartment cover.

You can put light clothing on the luggage compartment cover, however, your view through the rear window must not be obstructed.

Removing the luggage compartment cover

— Unhook the supporting cords from each side of the trunk lid → fig. 141 (top arrows).

— Push the luggage compartment cover upward from below → fig. 141 (bottom arrows) until it releases from the side brackets.

— If necessary, flip the luggage compartment cover over and stow it under the variable luggage compartment floor → page 215, *Variable luggage compartment floor*. Remove one or both of the side panels in the luggage compartment to make more room, if necessary → page 216, *Storage areas in the luggage compartment*.

Installing the luggage compartment cover

— Press the luggage compartment cover into the side brackets from above → fig. 141 (bottom arrows).

— Hook the supporting cords onto the trunk lid → fig. 141 (top arrows).

WARNING

In a sudden braking or other maneuver, or in a collision, unsecured or improperly secured objects or animals on the luggage compartment cover can cause serious personal injury.

- Never leave hard, heavy, or sharp objects in bags or loose on the luggage compartment cover.
- Never let animals ride on the luggage compartment cover.

WARNING

Clothes or other items on the luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrest may limit visibility and cause accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Always hang clothes so that they do not limit visibility.

NOTICE

To help prevent damage to the luggage compartment cover, the luggage compartment may only be loaded to a height at which the luggage compartment cover will not press on the cargo when the trunk lid is closed.

NOTICE

Things on the luggage compartment cover can damage it.

- The defroster heating wires or antenna in the rear window can be damaged by objects that rub against them.

The ventilation slots in the luggage compartment must not be blocked so that stale air can escape from the vehicle. ◁

Variable luggage compartment floor

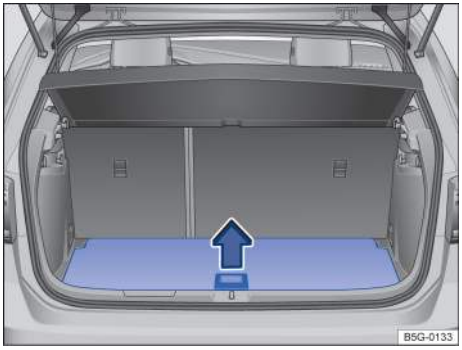


Fig. 142 In the luggage compartment: Opening the variable luggage compartment floor.

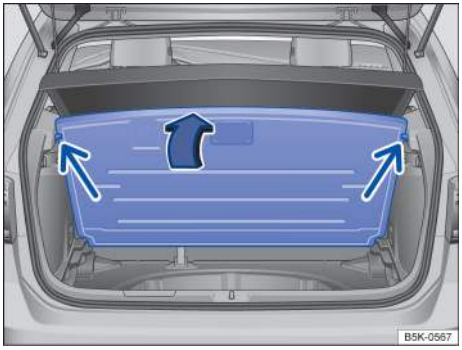


Fig. 143 In the luggage compartment: Variable luggage compartment floor folded up.

Some models are equipped with a variable luggage compartment floor, which is height-adjustable.

Opening and closing the luggage compartment floor

— *To open:* Lift the recessed handle → fig. 142 and guide the floor upward until it is held in position by the stops on either side of the luggage compartment → fig. 143 (arrows).

— *To close:* Guide the luggage compartment floor past the stops and downward into position. If necessary, gently pressing the stops can help the floor pass through →.

Adjusting the height of the luggage compartment floor

— Grasp the recessed handle → fig. 142, lift the luggage compartment floor, and pull it rearward out of the guides on the sides of the luggage compartment.

— Insert the luggage compartment floor into the guides at the required height and push it forward as far as it will go.

Removing the luggage compartment floor

— Grasp the recessed handle → fig. 142, lift the luggage compartment floor, and pull it rearward out of the guides on the sides of the luggage compartment.

— Remove the luggage compartment floor and store it in a clean, dry location.

WARNING

During hard braking or an accident, loose objects can fly through the passenger compartment and cause serious or even fatal injuries.

- Even if the luggage compartment floor panel is properly raised, it is still necessary to secure all objects.

NOTICE

Do not let the luggage compartment floor fall freely when closing it. Always guide it down into place. The trim or the luggage compartment floor could be damaged.

If you store the luggage compartment cover under the variable luggage compartment floor, insert the luggage compartment floor into the upper guides. ◁

5GM012723ST

Luggage compartment – features

Storage areas in the luggage compartment

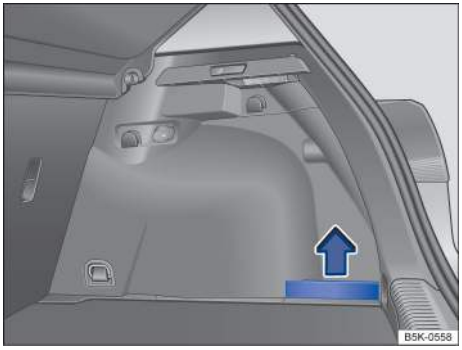


Fig. 144 In the luggage compartment: Side storage compartment with removable panel.

Storage compartments in the luggage compartment

There may be additional storage compartments on the sides of the luggage compartment. The vehicle tool kit may be stored in this compartment → page 227, *Vehicle tool kit*.

The side panels can be removed to make room for larger objects in the luggage compartment.

— *To remove:* Pull the side panel upward in the direction of the arrow → fig. 144.

— *To install:* Insert the side panel in the opposite direction of the arrow. ◁

Tie-downs

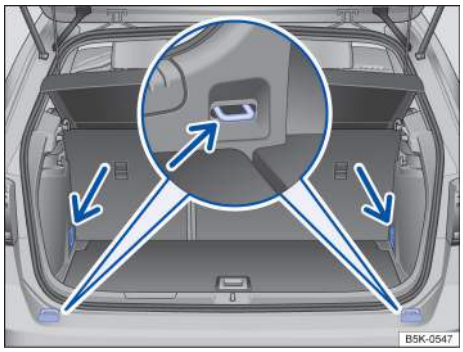


Fig. 145 In the luggage compartment: Tie-downs.

There are tie-downs in the front and rear of the luggage compartment, which you can use to secure luggage or other items → fig. 145 (arrows).

Some tie-downs may have to be folded open for use.

Elastic straps can snap back toward you if they are not properly attached → ⚠.

If you use elastic straps to secure items in the luggage compartment, be sure to securely attach them to the tie-downs just behind the rear seat backrest first and then to the tie-downs at the loading edge of the luggage compartment.

Remove the hooks from the tie-downs in the reverse order described above, first from the tie-downs at the loading edge and then from the tie-downs behind the rear seat backrest so that if the hooks come loose suddenly, they will move away from you.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable, worn, or damaged tie-down straps (elastic or non-elastic) can snap or come loose during braking or other maneuvers or in a collision. Objects secured with these straps can then come loose and fly through the passenger compartment, causing severe personal injuries or death.

- To help prevent baggage or other items from coming loose and flying around, always use suitable undamaged tie-down straps.
- Securely fasten the tie-down straps to the tie-downs.
- Loose or improperly secured objects in the luggage compartment can slide about suddenly and change the vehicle's handling.
- Secure even small and light objects. Loose objects in the luggage or passenger compartment can fly about during sudden braking maneuvers

or in the event of an accident and injure occupants.

- Never attach a child restraint to the tie-downs.

WARNING

Elastic straps have to be stretched when being attached to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment. Hooks on these straps can cause serious personal injury if not handled properly and attached securely.

- Always protect eyes and face from injury from the hooks when attaching them to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment.
- Always hold the hooks on elastic straps firmly when attaching to the vehicle and do not let them snap back and hit you.
- First attach the hooks on the straps to the tie-downs at the rear seat backrest in the luggage compartment and then to the tie-downs near the loading edge of the luggage compartment. This way, if one of the hooks on the elastic straps snaps back, it will move away from you, decreasing the risk of personal injury.

For suitable straps and luggage stowage systems, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. ◁

Shopping bag hooks

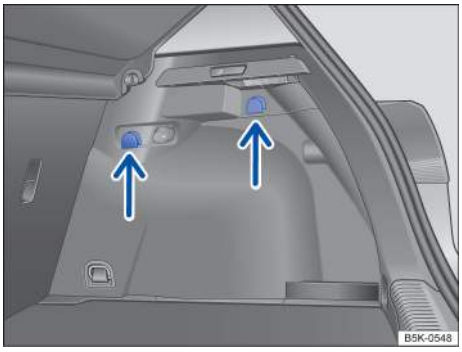


Fig. 146 In the luggage compartment: Shopping bag hooks.

The shopping bag hooks can hold light shopping bags. The shopping bag hooks are located in the upper left and right areas of the luggage compartment → fig. 146 (arrows).

WARNING

Never use the shopping bag hooks as tie-downs. The hooks could break during sudden braking or in a collision.

NOTICE

The maximum load for each shopping bag hook is 5 lbs. (2.5 kg). ◁

Luggage compartment pass-through

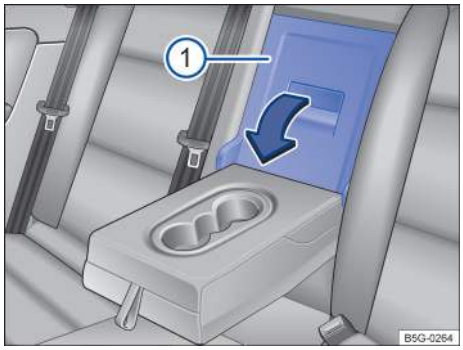


Fig. 147 In the rear seat backrest: Opening the luggage compartment pass-through.

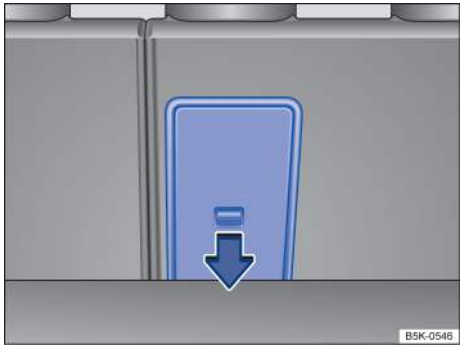


Fig. 148 In the luggage compartment: Opening the pass-through.

There may be a pass-through for transporting things like skis in the rear seat backrest behind the center armrest.

To help prevent soiling the vehicle interior, cover dirty items before sliding them into the pass-through.

5GM012723ST

If the center armrest is folded down, no one can sit on the middle seat of the rear bench.

Opening the pass-through

- Fold down the rear center armrest → page 110, *Seat functions*.
- Pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow → fig. 147 (1) and fold the pass-through cover all the way forward.
- Open the trunk lid.
- **OR:** Open the pass-through from the luggage compartment. Press the release lever → fig. 148 in the direction of the arrow and push the cover forward.
- Slide long objects from the luggage compartment through the pass-through.
- Secure objects with the safety belt.
- Close the trunk lid.

Closing the pass-through

- Pull the release lever and fold the pass-through cover back until it engages securely. The red mark on the luggage compartment side must not be visible.
- Close the trunk lid.
- If necessary, fold the center armrest up. ◁

Roof rack

Introduction

The roof rack can be used to transport bulky loads on the roof of the vehicle.

Special considerations for the roof rack

The roof of your vehicle has been designed to optimize aerodynamics and does not have traditional rain gutters that are used to attach many kinds of roof racks.

Since the rain gutters are molded into the roof to provide efficient aerodynamics, only Volkswagen-approved base carrier mountings and roof racks can be used.

The weight of the roof rack and the cargo being carried on it reduce the remaining load your vehicle can carry. Always follow the steps for determining the correct load limit → page 296, *Determining the correct load limit*.

⚠ WARNING

Transporting heavy or bulky loads on the roof rack will change the way the vehicle handles by raising the vehicle's center of gravity and increasing the wind drag.

- Always secure the load properly with suitable and undamaged straps so that the load will not shift.
- Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a negative effect on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling.
- Always avoid sudden maneuvers and hard braking.
- Always adapt your speed and driving to the heavier load and the weight distribution in the vehicle. Take road, weather, traffic, and visibility conditions into account as well. ◁

Attaching the roof rack base carrier and roof rack

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 218.

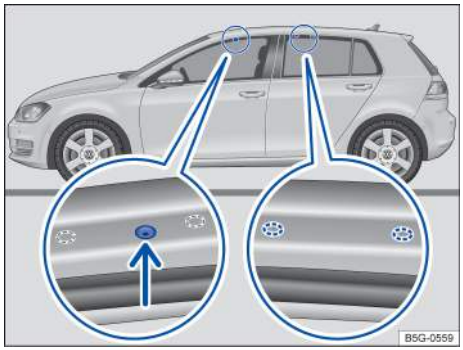


Fig. 149 Mounting points for the base carrier and roof rack.

The base carrier is the basis of a complete roof rack system. For safety reasons, additional attachments are necessary for transporting luggage, bicycles, surfboards, skis, and small boats. Suitable accessories can be purchased from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Mounting the roof rack base carrier and roof rack

Always attach the base carrier and roof rack correctly.

Always carefully follow the installation instructions from the base carrier or roof rack manufacturer.

The front mounting holes are on the underside of the roof frame. They are sealed with plastic screws that must be removed before installation → fig. 149 (magnified view on left). The rear markings for the base carrier are on the underside of the roof frame → fig. 149 (magnified view on right).

The holes and markings are only visible when the door is open.

Only mount the roof rack base carrier on the markings shown in the illustration.

Once you have installed the base carrier correctly, you can secure the roof rack on the base carrier according to the manufacturer's instructions.

⚠ WARNING

Installing or using a base carrier or roof rack improperly can cause the entire system to fly off the vehicle, causing accidents and injuries.

- Always follow the installation instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Use the base carrier and roof rack only if they are undamaged and properly installed.
- Secure the roof rack base carrier only at the attachment points shown in the illustration → fig. 149.
- Always install the base carrier and roof rack properly.
- Make sure that all bolts and fasteners are properly installed and properly tightened before every trip and retighten them as needed after driving a short distance. During a long trip, check all bolts and fasteners at each stop.
- Always properly install special fixtures for items such as bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc.
- Do not modify or repair the base carrier or roof rack.

Follow the instructions provided for installing the roof rack system. Always carry them in the vehicle. ◁

Securing a load on the roof rack

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 218.

It is not possible to secure a load unless the roof rack system has been properly installed → ⚠.

Maximum permissible roof load

The maximum permissible roof load is **165 lbs. (75 kg)**. The maximum permissible roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the items being carried on the roof → ⚠.

Be sure you know the weight of the roof rack and the items you want to transport on the roof. Weigh them if necessary. Never carry a total of more than the maximum permissible roof load.

When using a roof rack with a lower load limit, do not load the rack to the maximum weight mentioned above. In this case, you may only load the roof rack to the weight limit specified in the system's installation instructions.

Distributing the load

Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly → ⚠.

Checking the mountings

After the base carrier and roof rack have been installed, check all bolts and fasteners after driving a short time and at regular intervals thereafter.

⚠ WARNING

If the maximum permissible roof load is exceeded, accidents and substantial vehicle damage may occur.

- Never exceed the specified roof load, the maximum Gross Axle Weight Rating, or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
- Do not exceed the loading capacity of the roof rack, even if the permissible roof load is not fully utilized.
- Always make sure that loads are evenly distributed and that heavier items are, as far as possible, toward the front.

⚠ WARNING

Loose or improperly secured items can fall off the roof rack and cause accidents and injuries.

- To help prevent baggage or other items from coming loose and flying around, always use suitable, undamaged tie-down ropes and ratchet straps.
- Secure the load properly.

NOTICE

When opening the trunk lid, make sure that it will not hit anything secured to the roof rack. ◁

5GM012723ST

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 218.

When to remove the roof rack

— When it is no longer needed.

— Before driving through an automatic car wash.

— When the vehicle would otherwise be too high for minimum clearance to enter, for example, a garage.

NOTICE

- Always remove the roof rack before driving through an automatic car wash.
- Your vehicle is higher when the roof rack is installed, especially when it is loaded. Compare the vehicle height with existing clearance heights, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always make sure that the roof rack system and anything being carried on it does not interfere with the roof antenna, the power sunroof, or the trunk lid.
- Make sure that the trunk lid does not touch items on the roof rack when opened.

If a roof rack is installed, fuel consumption increases due to increased air resistance. ◁

Trailer towing

Important information

For technical reasons, your vehicle is **not** designed to tow a trailer.

Never install a trailer hitch on your vehicle. Towing a trailer will cause expensive damage to the vehicle → ⚠.

WARNING

Towing a trailer can cause an accident and serious personal injuries.

- Never install a trailer hitch on the vehicle.
- Never tow a trailer with the vehicle.

NOTICE

Installing a trailer hitch and towing a trailer will cause expensive damage to your vehicle that will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty. ◁

Fuel and emission control system

Tips on handling fuel

The fuel filler flap is on the rear passenger side of the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel is dangerous and can cause fire, explosion, and severe burns.

- Fuel is highly flammable and explosive; it can cause severe burns and other severe injuries.
- During refueling, the engine and the ignition must be switched off for safety reasons.
- Never use a mobile telephone, CB radio, or other radio equipment while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.
- Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. This helps avoid the buildup of static electricity, which can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.
- Always make sure that the fuel filler cap is screwed on all the way. This helps keep fuel from spilling out or evaporating.
- Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle all the way into the fuel filler neck can cause fuel to overflow and to spray out. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel are dangerous because they can cause fire and serious personal injury.
- Never smoke or have an open flame (or sparks, cigarettes, or other smoldering objects) anywhere in or near your vehicle when refueling or filling a portable fuel container.
- Follow all safety instructions and procedures that apply at the service station where you refuel.
- Never spill fuel in the vehicle or the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Even if empty, portable fuel containers can leak and cause a fire and serious personal injuries, especially in a crash.

- For your safety, we strongly recommend that you do not travel with a portable fuel container in your vehicle.
- If, under exceptional circumstances, you must transport a portable fuel container, please observe the following:
  - Never fill a portable fuel container while it is anywhere in or on the vehicle (for example, in the luggage compartment or on top of the trunk lid). Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors, causing a fire.
  - Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling. Never spill fuel inside the vehicle or luggage compartment. Fuel vapors are highly flammable.
  - Always keep the filler nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling.
  - If filling a portable container made of metal, the filler nozzle must always be in contact with the container. This will help prevent static electricity from discharging and causing a fire.
  - Always observe local and state or provincial laws about the use, storage, and transportation of portable fuel containers.
  - Make certain that the portable fuel container meets industry standards, such as ANSI/ASTM F852-86.

NOTICE

- Remove fuel spills from the vehicle immediately to help prevent damage to the paint, tires, and wheel housings.
- Refueling with diesel fuel when your vehicle has a gasoline engine can cause very serious and expensive engine and fuel system damage that is not covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.
- If you put any amount of incorrect fuel in the fuel tank, do not start the engine under any circumstances. Immediately contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. These fuels contain substances that can severely damage the fuel system and the engine if the engine is started.

Fuels can pollute the environment. Spilled fuel must be collected and disposed of properly, following all applicable environmental regulations. ◁

5GM012723ST

Refueling

Introduction

The fuel filler flap is on the rear passenger side of the vehicle.

The minimum required fuel grade for your vehicle → page 222, *Fuel types* is listed on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

To check your vehicle's fuel capacity, see → page 325, *Fuel capacities*. ◁

Refueling

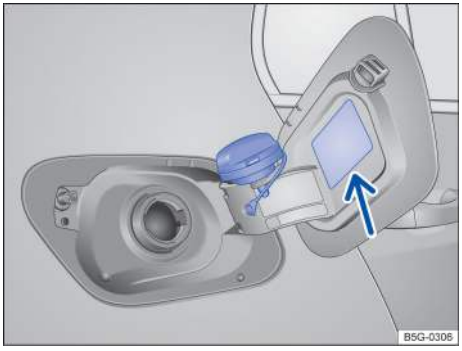


Fig. 150 Rear passenger side of vehicle: Fuel cap placed on the open fuel filler flap.

Before refueling, always switch off the engine, the ignition, and all mobile phones, and leave them switched off until refueling is complete.

Opening the fuel filler cap

The fuel filler flap is on the rear passenger side of the vehicle.

— Unlock the vehicle from the outside with the vehicle key or press the central locking button in the driver door to unlock the vehicle from the inside → page 90, *Doors and power locking system*.

— Press on the back part of the fuel filler flap and fold open.

— Unscrew the fuel cap counterclockwise and remove. Use the slot on the fuel filler flap hinge → fig. 150 to hold the cap while refueling.

Refueling

The minimum required fuel grade for your vehicle → page 222, *Fuel types* is listed on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap → fig. 150 (arrow). This sticker may also be on the hinge of the fuel filler flap.

— The fuel tank is *full* when the automatic filler nozzle pump switches off the first time → ⚠.

— Do not try to add fuel after the pump stops! Topping off the tank in this way may fill the expansion space that the tank needs and cause fuel to overflow, for example, if it gets warmer outside.

Closing the fuel filler cap

— Screw the fuel cap clockwise onto the fuel filler neck until you hear it click into place.

— Close the fuel filler flap until you hear it latch shut. The fuel filler flap must be flush with the vehicle body.

⚠ WARNING

Spilled fuel can cause fires, explosions, burns, and other severe injuries.

- Always stop refueling once the pump nozzle switches off so that the tank does not overflow.

NOTICE

Remove fuel spills from all vehicle surfaces immediately to help prevent damage to the paint, tires, and wheel housings.

Fuel spills may pollute the environment. ◁

Manual release for the fuel filler flap

There is no emergency release for the fuel filler flap. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. ◁

Fuel types

Introduction

The minimum required fuel grade for your engine is shown on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap → fig. 150.

Bad or poor quality fuel reduces operating performance, efficiency and service life of the engine. If you notice any symptoms like rough engine idle or performance or "bucking," immediately reduce the vehicle speed, accelerate slowly, and keep the engine speed in the middle of the rpm range. Avoid high rpm and rapid acceleration. If these symptoms

should appear right after refueling, switch off the engine. In both cases contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the engine checked.

⚠ WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel can cause fire, explosion, and severe burns.

- Fuel is highly explosive and flammable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.
- Heed applicable safety warnings and obey local fuel handling regulations.
- Always make sure the fuel cap is screwed on all the way. This keeps fuel from spilling out and from evaporating.
- Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle fully into the vehicle's filler neck could cause fuel overflow and fuel spray. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel are dangerous because they can cause fire or serious injury.
- For safety reasons, the engine must be turned off when refueling.
- Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. Static electricity can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.

◁

Gasoline

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 222.

Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine-damaging "knock" caused by pre-ignition. Using gasoline that does not meet minimum octane requirements can affect engine performance, while the use of poor quality gasoline or gasoline with octane levels below 87 can also cause engine damage.

The minimum required gasoline octane rating for your engine is listed on a label inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified according to AKI (CLC)–also listed as (R + M) / 2 Method–or RON (ROZ) standards. *Golf GTI models:* The use of premium fuel with 91 octane ((R + M) / 2 Method) / RON 95) is recommended to achieve rated horsepower and torque.

Regardless of whether unleaded Regular or Premium grade gasoline is specified for your vehicle, Volkswagen recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 ((R + M) / 2 Method) / 91 RON for Regular gasoline, and 91 ((R + M) / 2 Method) / 95 RON for Premium gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website, http://www.toptiergas.com.

The gasoline grades most commonly sold in the United States and Canada have the following octane ratings, which can usually be found on the filler pump:

— Regular grade: 87 to 90 ((R + M) / 2 Method) / 91 RON

— Premium grade: 91 to 96 ((R + M) / 2 Method) / 95 RON

Unleaded gasoline

Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA and Canada. Volkswagen recommends that you do not take your vehicle to places where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

Gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether), commonly referred to as oxygenated fuels, if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blends of gasoline and methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol):

— Anti-Knock Index (AKI) must be 87 or higher.

— Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.

— Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blends of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol):

— Anti-Knock Index (AKI) must be 87 or higher.

— Blend must contain no more than 15% ethanol.

Blends of gasoline and MTBE:

— Anti-Knock Index (AKI) must be 87 or higher.

— Blend must contain no more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many fuels are blended especially for winter or summer conditions. When seasons change, Volkswagen suggests that you buy fuel at busy stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made earlier.

⚠ WARNING

Starting fluids can explode and cause a run-away vehicle condition.

5GM012723ST

- Never use starting assist fluids.

NOTICE

- Never use fuel with an octane rating lower than 87 AKI/91 RON. Using lower octane fuel may cause expensive engine damage.
- Never use leaded gasoline! Leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter.
- Methanol-blended fuels that do not meet the criteria listed above may cause corrosion and may damage plastic and rubber parts in the fuel system.
- Never use fuels that contain lead or other metals (check listing on the fuel pump). Even lead replacement gasoline (LRP fuels) contain metallic additives in high concentrations. They can damage the engine.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the criteria above, or with contents that cannot be identified.
- If you cannot tell whether a particular fuel blend meets the criteria above, ask your service station or its fuel supplier. If you notice a loss of fuel economy or drivability and performance problems using one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.
- Using fuels that are different from those specified above can damage your vehicle's engine and fuel system and cause performance problems.
- Damage to the engine and fuel system and performance problems caused by using fuels that are different from those specified above or by using “starting assist fluids” are not the responsibility of Volkswagen and are not covered under the Emission warranties or any other Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

Even a single tank full of leaded fuel can do major damage to the catalytic converter and degrade its effectiveness in reducing polluting emissions.

If you notice a loss of fuel economy or drivability and performance problems using one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel. Never use fuel line antifreeze offered for gasoline engines. ◁

Gasoline additives

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 222.

Additives are used to improve the quality of the gasoline.

Fuel quality impacts the operating performance, efficiency and service life of the engine. Therefore, use high quality gasoline that is already blended by the fuel supplier with suitable gasoline additives that do not contain metal. The additives provide corrosion protection, clean the fuel system, and help prevent deposits on the engine.

Volkswagen recommends TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official Web site http://www.toptiergas.com.

If quality gasoline with additives that do not contain metal is not available or engine malfunctions occur, you should add the required additives while refueling → ⓘ.

Not all gasoline additives are effective. Using the wrong additives can cause significant and expensive damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Never use additives that contain metal. Please note that metal can be included in some aftermarket gasoline additives that are available to be added to gasoline during or after refueling to help improve knock resistance or increase the octane rating.

Volkswagen recommends using only additives approved by Volkswagen. Appropriate additives as well as instructions on how to use them are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Do not add any other gasoline additives.

NOTICE

You can damage the engine by using incorrect additives.

- Using incorrect gasoline additives can cause extensive engine damage as well as damage to the catalytic converter.
- If you must fuel your vehicle with gasoline whose octane rating is too low, only drive with the engine speed in the middle of the rpm range and with low engine load. Avoid high rpm and heavy engine load. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged. Refuel your vehicle with gasoline with the required octane rating as soon as possible.
- Do not use fuel that is labeled at the pump as containing metal. Lead replacement fuel contains high concentrations of metallic additives. Expen-

sive engine and catalytic converter damage could result.

- Fueling your vehicle just one time with leaded fuel or fuel that contains other metallic additives can affect the performance of the catalytic converter and cause extensive damage to it. ◁

Engine control and emission control system

Introduction

WARNING

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter get very hot. This can cause a fire and serious personal injury.

- Never park where parts of the hot exhaust system and catalytic converter could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Never apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, or heat shields.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. ◁

Catalytic converter

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 225.

The catalytic converter provides exhaust gas aftertreatment to help reduce pollutants in the exhaust gas. To help ensure long service life of the exhaust system and gasoline engine catalytic converter:

— Only use unleaded fuel → page 222, *Fuel types*.

— Never completely empty the fuel tank.

— Do not exceed the correct oil level → page 246, *Engine oil*.

— Do not tow the vehicle to start it, but use a jump-start instead → page 233, *Jump-starting*. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 225.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

Exhaust system malfunction

If the yellow Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) comes on, there is a malfunction in the exhaust system that may damage the vehicle:

— Ease off the accelerator.

— Carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have engine checked.

Engine control/monitoring system misfire

If the yellow Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) flashes, there is a misfire that may damage the vehicle:

— Ease off the accelerator.

— Carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have engine checked.

If the engine misfires or loses power

If you experience misfires, loss of power or the engine is not running smoothly while driving:

— Reduce speed immediately.

— Drive to nearest qualified workshop at medium engine speeds and low engine loads.

— If these symptoms occur directly after refuelling, switch off the engine immediately to avoid any subsequent damage.

— Have the vehicle checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

5GM012723ST

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

As long as the indicator lights or EPC are on, expect engine malfunctions, increased fuel consumption, and loss of engine efficiency. ◁

Do it yourself

Vehicle tool kit

Introduction

When securing the vehicle after a breakdown, always obey all applicable legal requirements.

WARNING

Loose tools and other items in the vehicle tool kit and a loose spare (or compact spare) wheel may be thrown through the passenger compartment if you brake suddenly or steer sharply or are involved in an accident. This can cause severe injuries.

- Always make sure the vehicle tool kit and spare (or compact spare) wheel are securely stowed in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Improper or damaged vehicle tools can lead to accidents and injury.

- Never work with tools that are damaged or not right for the job.

Storage

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 227.

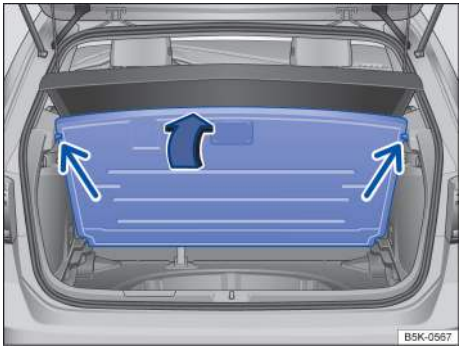


Fig. 152 In the luggage compartment: Luggage compartment floor raised and secured.

The vehicle tool kit and the spare wheel, compact spare wheel, or tire mobility set may be in one of several places under the variable luggage compartment floor in the luggage compartment.

— If necessary, detach the luggage net.

— Lift the luggage compartment floor and secure it in the stops on either side of the luggage compartment → fig. 151 (small arrows).

— On some models, it may be necessary to remove the compact spare wheel to access the vehicle tool kit. Follow the instructions on removing the compact spare wheel → page 281, *Spare wheel or compact spare wheel*.

NOTICE

Always guide the luggage compartment floor back down carefully. Dropping the luggage compartment floor could damage the vehicle trim and the luggage compartment floor panel itself.

Completely retract the jack after use. Otherwise it will not fit in its compartment and cannot be stowed safely.

Contents

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 227.

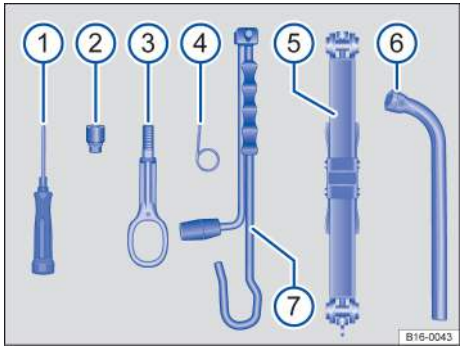


Fig. 153 Contents of the vehicle tool kit.

The contents of the vehicle tool kit depend on the vehicle's equipment. The following describes the maximum contents.

Contents of the vehicle tool kit → fig. 153

① Screwdriver with a hexagonal socket in the handle for removing or inserting previously loosened wheel bolts. The screwdriver blade is reversible. The screwdriver may be stored under the lug wrench (if equipped).

② Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts (if equipped). Volkswagen recommends that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts in the vehicle along with the vehicle tool kit. The **code number**

5GM012723ST

of the wheel bolt lock is imprinted on the front of the adapter. If lost, a replacement adapter can be ordered using this number. Record the code number of the wheel bolt lock and store it separately from the vehicle.

(3) Screw-in towing eye.

(4) Hubcap puller clip for removing hubcaps, full wheel covers, or wheel bolt caps.

(5) Jack (if equipped). Before putting the jack back in the foam insert, be sure to completely crank the jack down to its original position.

(6) Lug wrench (if equipped).

(7) Crank (if equipped).

Maintaining the vehicle jack

The vehicle jack requires no regular maintenance. If necessary, apply multi-purpose grease to the joints of the vehicle jack. ◁

Windshield wiper blades

Windshield wiper service position

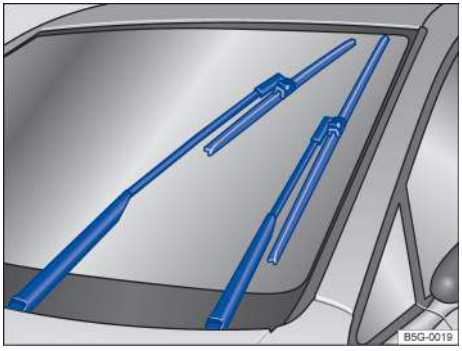


Fig. 153 Windshield wiper in service position.

In the service position, the wiper arms can be lifted away from the windshield → fig. 153. Move the wipers to the service position as follows:

— The engine hood must be closed → page 241, *In the engine compartment*.

— Switch the ignition off, turn it on briefly, and then off again.

— Press the windshield wiper lever down briefly when the ignition is off.

— Wipers move into service position.

Lifting the wiper blades and tilting them away from the windshield

— Put the wiper arms in service position → ⓘ.

— Do not handle the wiper blades, handle the wiper arms only at the attachment above the wiper blades.

— Lift the wiper arms away from the windshield.

Carefully fold the wiper arms back onto the windshield before driving! Switch the ignition on and press the windshield wiper lever down briefly. The wiper arms move back to their original position.

NOTICE

- To help prevent damage to the engine hood and the windshield wiper arms, lift the wiper arms away from the windshield only when they are in the service position.
- Always carefully fold the windshield wiper arms down against the windshield before driving the vehicle.

The windshield wiper arms can be moved to the service position only when the vehicle is not moving. ◁

Cleaning and changing the windshield wiper blades

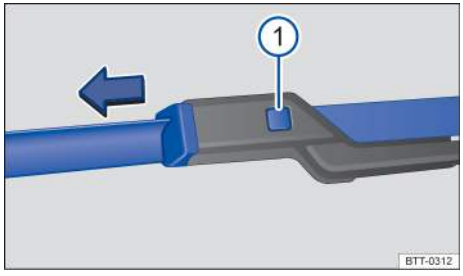


Fig. 154 Changing the windshield wiper blades.

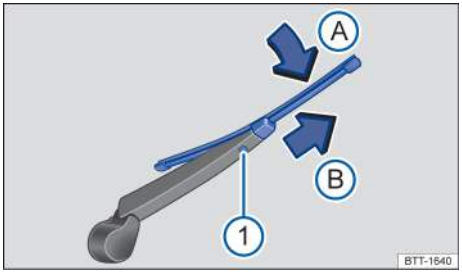


Fig. 155 Changing the rear window wiper blades.

Factory-installed wiper blades have a graphite coating. The graphite coating helps the wiper blades glide smoothly over the windshield. If this coating is worn or damaged, the wipers may grab or squeak.

Check all wiper blades regularly. **Wiper blades that grab and squeak** must be replaced if worn or damaged and cleaned if dirty → ⓘ.

Replace worn or damaged wiper blades immediately. Replacement blades may be purchased from any authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Lifting and tilting windshield wiper arms

Move the front wiper arms to the service position before lifting them away from the windshield → page 119, *Windshield wipers and washer*.

It is not possible to lift the front wiper arms away from the windshield when they are not in the service position.

When lifting or replacing a wiper blade on a window, grip it **only** by its mounting and not by the blade itself.

Cleaning the wiper blades

— Move the front wiper arms to the service position and lift them away from the windshield.

— Do not handle the wiper blades; handle the wiper arms only at the attachment above the wiper blades.

— Using a soft cloth, carefully remove dust and dirt from the wiper blades.

— If the blades are very dirty, carefully clean them with a damp sponge or cloth → ⓘ.

— Carefully fold the wiper arm back down onto the windshield.

Changing the front windshield wiper blades

— Move the front wiper arms to the service position.

— Lift the wiper arms away from the windshield. Do not handle the wiper blades; handle the wiper arms only at the attachment above the wiper blades.

— With one hand, press and hold the release button → fig. 154 ①.

— With the other hand, hold the wiper blade at the attachment point and pull it straight up and out in the direction of the arrow. This may require moderate force.

— Install a new wiper blade of **same length and type** onto the wiper arm by pushing in the opposite direction of the arrow until it latches.

— Carefully fold the wiper arm back down onto the windshield.

Changing the rear window wiper blade

— Lift the wiper arm away from the rear window.

— Do not handle the wiper blade; handle the wiper arm only at the attachment above the wiper blade.

— Lift the wiper arm away from the rear window in the direction of arrow Ⓐ → fig. 155.

— Press and hold the release button → fig. 155 ①.

— Pull off the wiper blade in the direction of arrow Ⓑ. This may require moderate force.

— Install a new wiper blade of the **same length and type** onto the wiper arm by pushing in the opposite direction of the arrow → fig. 155 Ⓑ until it latches.

— Carefully fold the wiper arm back down onto the window.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always change wiper blades if they are damaged or worn, and if they cannot clean the windows sufficiently.

NOTICE

- Damaged or dirty wiper blades can scratch the windshield and the rear window.
- Solvents, abrasive sponges and sharp-edged objects will damage the graphite coating on the wiper blades.
- Do not clean the windows with gasoline, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar fluids.
- To help prevent damage to the engine hood and the windshield wiper arms, lift the wiper arms away from the windshield only when they are in the service position.

5GM012723ST

Automatic car washes and vehicle care products can leave a wax residue on all glass surfaces, which can cause the windshield wipers to grab and squeak. Remove these wax residues with a special cleaner or cleaning cloths. ◁

Replacing light bulbs

Introduction

Changing a light bulb requires a certain amount of skill. Therefore, Volkswagen recommends having the light bulb changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Special training and knowledge are generally required when other vehicle parts must be disassembled to replace a bulb.

You should always keep a box in the vehicle with all the replacement bulbs required for traffic safety. Replacement bulbs are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. The laws of some countries explicitly require you to have replacement bulbs in the vehicle.

Driving with outside lights that do not work may be against the law.

Additional light bulb specifications

Some factory-installed light bulbs in the headlights may have different specifications than conventional light bulbs. Specifications are on the glass bulb or on the metal base.

WARNING

Crashes and other accidents can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.

WARNING

Improper replacement of burned out headlights and other light bulbs can cause serious personal injury.

- Stop! Always read and heed the WARNINGS before doing any work in the engine compartment → page 241, *In the engine compartment*. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area, and work in this area can lead to serious personal injury.
- H7 bulbs are under high pressure and can explode if handled improperly.
- Always let a burned out light bulb cool down before replacing it.
- Never replace a light bulb unless you are familiar with all of the necessary procedures. In particular, never remove a headlight unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct tools and light bulbs.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.
- We strongly recommend that you always have headlights and H7 bulbs replaced by a qualified technician.
- Do not touch the glass of light bulbs with your bare hands. Fingerprints left on the bulb evaporate due to the heat when the bulb is switched on and cause the reflector to "cloud."
- There are sharp edges on and around the headlight housing in the engine compartment and the rear light housing. Wear hand protection if you replace bulbs.

NOTICE

After replacing a headlight bulb or other light bulb, always make sure that the rubber covers or plastic caps have been properly and securely reinstalled to help prevent water from getting into the electrical connections and the headlight housing and damaging the electrical system.

Individual LEDs cannot be replaced. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice and on page 230.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

An exterior light is not working properly

If the indicator light comes on, at least one of the exterior vehicle lights is not working.

— See an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop to replace the light that isn't working.

Failure of a single LED within a taillight is not indicated. However, the ☼ indicator light will light up if all LEDs fail. ◁

Replacing fuses

🕮 Introduction

Due to ongoing development of the vehicle, configuration-dependent allocation of fuses and the combined fuse protection of multiple loads with one fuse, an up-to-date overview of the fuse location per load is not possible at the time of printing. Detailed information regarding fuse box layout is available from authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities.

In general, one fuse can protect several loads. One load can also be protected by several fuses.

Find out why the fuse blew and correct the problem before replacing a blown fuse. If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system should be checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

High voltage systems in the engine compartment can cause electrical shock, severe burns, and even death!

- Never touch ignition cables. Never touch other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong fuse, using a blown fuse that has been repaired, and using metal objects in place of fuses to complete the electrical connection in the circuit can cause fires and serious personal injury.

- Never replace a fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. Replace a blown fuse only with a fuse of the same amperage (same color and same imprint) and same overall size.
- Never repair fuses.
- Never replace fuses with a metal strip, a paper clip, or a similar object.

NOTICE

- To help prevent damage to the electrical system, switch off all lights and accessories, switch off the ignition, and remove the key from the ignition switch (if applicable) before replacing a fuse.
- If a fuse is replaced with a fuse with higher amperage, this can also cause damage at different locations in the electrical system.
- Open fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture. Dirt and moisture in fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system. ◁

Fuses in the vehicle

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 231.

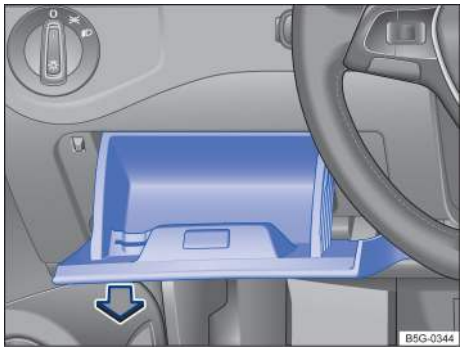


Fig. 156 On the driver side in the instrument panel: Removing the storage compartment to access fuses.

Accessing fuses in the instrument panel

— Open the storage compartment next to the steering wheel and remove any contents.

— *To remove:* Pull the lower part of the storage compartment straight out (in the direction of the arrow → fig. 156) and remove the compartment from the bottom. This action may require moderate force.

— *To install:* Fit the storage compartment on the hinges at the bottom of the opening. Guide the storage compartment into the instrument panel by pushing in the direction opposite of the arrow → fig. 156 until it latches into place.

NOTICE

- To help prevent vehicle damage, be careful when removing the storage compartment and be sure to reinstall it properly.

- Open fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture. Dirt and moisture in fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system.

The vehicle contains other fuses in addition to those mentioned in this section. Have these fuses replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. ◁

Fuses in the engine compartment

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 231.

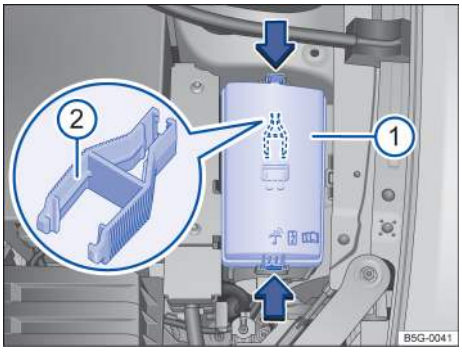


Fig. 157 In the engine compartment: Fuse box cover ① with tweezers ②.

Opening the fuse box in the engine compartment

— Open the engine hood ⚠ → page 241, *In the engine compartment*.

— *To remove:* Press the release tabs in the direction of the arrows → fig. 157 to unlock the fuse box cover ①.

— Remove the cover upward.

— *To install:* Push the cover onto the fuse box. The locking tabs must latch with an audible "click."

In some vehicles, there are plastic tweezers for removing fuses on the inside of the fuse box cover → fig. 157 ②.

NOTICE

- To help prevent vehicle damage, be careful when removing the fuse box cover and be sure to reinstall it properly.
- Open fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture. Dirt and moisture in fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system.

The vehicle contains other fuses in addition to those mentioned in this section. Have these fuses replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. ◁

Replacing blown fuses

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 231.

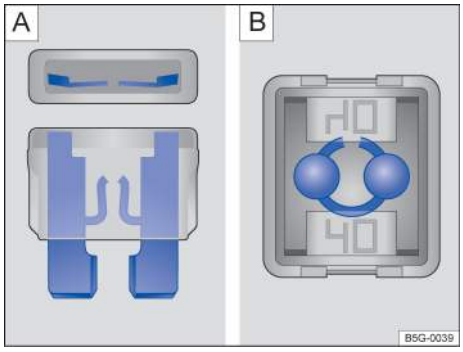


Fig. 158 Blown fuse: A: Blade fuse. B: JCASE® fuse.

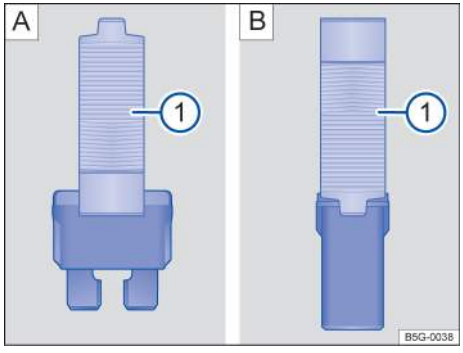


Fig. 159 Removing or installing a blade fuse with the plastic tweezers: A: Blade fuse. B: JCASE® fuse.

Replace a blown fuse only with a fuse of the same amperage (same color and same imprint) and same overall size.

Fuse types

— Regular blade fuse (ATO®).

— Mini blade fuse (MINI®).

— Cartridge fuse (JCASE®).

Fuse color coding (ATO / MINI)

Color *Amp rating*

Black 1 amp
Purple 3 amps
Orange 5 amps
Brown 7.5 amps
Red 10 amps
Blue 15 amps
Yellow 20 amps
White or clear 25 amps
Green 30 amps
Light green 40 amps

Fuse color coding (JCASE)

Blue 20 amps
Pink 30 amps
Green 40 amps
Red 50 amps
Yellow 60 amps

Preparations

— Switch off the headlights, the ignition, and all electrical consumers.

— Open the appropriate fuse box → page 231, *Fuses in the vehicle*, → page 232, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

Identifying a blown fuse

— *For blade fuses (ATO®, MINI®)*: Remove the fuse and shine a flashlight on it. This makes it easier to tell if the fuse has blown. A blown blade fuse has metal strips that have burned through, which you can see through the transparent housing from above and from the side → fig. 158 A.

— *For cartridge fuses (JCASE®)*: Shine a flashlight on the fuse. This makes it easier to tell if the fuse has blown. A blown cartridge fuse has metal strips that have burned through, which you can see through the transparent housing from above → fig. 158 B.

Replacing a fuse

In some vehicles, there are plastic tweezers for removing blade fuses on the inside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.

— Open the fuse box cover in the engine compartment → page 232, *Fuses in the engine compartment* and remove the plastic tweezers.

— Depending on the type of fuse, slide the tweezers → fig. 159 A (1) or → fig. 159 B (1) onto the fuse from the side.

— Pull out the fuse.

— If the fuse is blown, replace the fuse with a new fuse of the *same* amperage (same color and same imprint) and *same* size → (!).

— Clip the plastic tweezers back into the holder inside the fuse box cover.

— Replace the fuse box cover.

NOTICE

If a fuse is replaced with a fuse with higher amperage, damage can occur at various places in the electrical system. ◁

Jump-starting

Introduction

If your engine does not start because the vehicle battery is dead, your vehicle's battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start your engine (jump-starting). Check the battery acid level indicator on the vehicle battery before jump-starting → page 256, *Vehicle battery*.

You must use jumper cables that meet recognized industrial standards (check information provided by the jumper cable manufacturer). For vehicles with **gasoline engines**, the cross-section of the jumper cable wire must be at least 0.038 in.^{2} (25 mm^2), or about 3 ga. (AWG).

Location of the vehicle battery

The 12 Volt vehicle battery is in the engine compartment.

WARNING

Working on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, or electrical shock.

- Always keep children away from battery acid and vehicle batteries in general.
- Sulfuric battery acid is very corrosive and can cause blindness and damage to unprotected skin. Never let battery acid or lead particles contact your eyes, skin, and clothing.
- Never lean over a vehicle battery. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. To reduce your risk of injury, never tilt the batteries; acid could spill out through the vents and burn you.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is being charged.

5GM012723ST

- Always avoid fires, sparks, open flame, and smoking. Never create sparks or electrostatic charges when handling cables and electrical equipment. Never short-circuit the battery terminals. High-energy sparks can cause serious personal injury.
- If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and get medical attention immediately. If you swallow any battery acid, get medical attention immediately.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of jumper cables when jump-starting a vehicle with a dead battery can cause the battery to explode, leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of battery explosion:

- All work on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, or electrical shocks. Always read and heed the following WARNINGS and safety precautions before working on the batteries or the electrical system → page 256, *Vehicle battery*.
- Always make sure that the battery providing starting assistance (the booster battery) has the same voltage as the dead battery (12 V) and about the same amperage capacity (see battery label).
- Never jump-start a vehicle with a thawed or frozen vehicle battery. The battery can explode. A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around +32 °F (0 °C).
- A battery that is frozen or was frozen, but has since thawed, must be replaced.
- When the vehicle battery is jump-started, it gives off hydrogen gas, which is highly explosive! Always keep fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking materials far away from vehicle batteries. Never use a mobile telephone while connecting or disconnecting jumper cables.
- Jump-start batteries only in well-ventilated areas. Batteries give off highly explosive hydrogen gas during jump-starting.
- Always route the jumper cables so that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.
- Never short out the battery terminals by connecting the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals with each other.
- Never connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the dead battery, as this may cause the hydrogen gas given off by the dead battery to explode.
- Never attach the negative cable from the vehicle providing starting assistance to any part of the fuel system or to the brake hoses or brake lines.
- Never allow the non-insulated parts of the battery clamps to touch.
- Never allow the jumper cable attached to the positive battery terminal to contact metal parts of the vehicle.
- Always follow the instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer.

NOTICE

To help prevent extensive damage to the vehicle electrical system, read and heed the following:

- Connecting jumper cables improperly can cause a short circuit and do expensive damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Do not let the vehicles touch each other while the jumper cables are connected. If they do, electrical current may flow between the vehicles when the positive (+) terminals are connected, causing electrical system damage. ◁

Jump-start terminal

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 233.

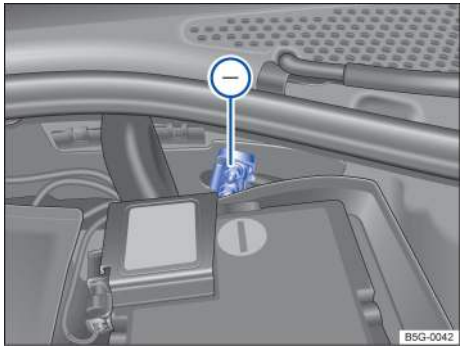


Fig. 160 In the engine compartment: Negative jump-start terminal ⊖.

The jump-start terminal for connecting the *black* (negative) jump-start cable is in the engine compartment → fig. 160 ⊖.

Your vehicle can only be jump-started or be used to jump-start another vehicle via this jump-start terminal.

Using jumper cables

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 233.

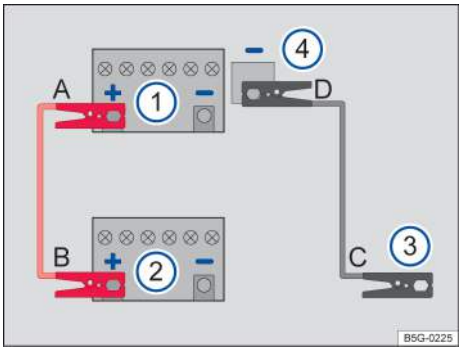


Fig. 161 Diagram for attaching the jumper cables: Dead battery ① and booster battery ②.

Key to fig. 161:

① Battery of the vehicle receiving starting assistance.

② Battery of the vehicle providing starting assistance.

③ Negative jump-start terminal on vehicle providing starting assistance.

④ Negative jump-start terminal on vehicle receiving starting assistance.

The dead battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

Make certain that the vehicles are not touching each other. Otherwise, electric current could flow as soon as the positive battery terminals (+) are connected. Use longer jumper cables if necessary.

The clamps on the jumper cables must have good contact to bare metal on the battery terminals.

If the engine does not start, stop the process after 10 seconds and repeat after about 1 minute. If the engine still does not start, get professional assistance.

The procedure for attaching and for removing the jumper cables is described below. Perform each of the following steps only in the order described, which follow the letters shown in the illustration → fig. 161 **A – B – C – D**.

Attaching jumper cables

1. Switch off the ignition in both vehicles → page 141, *Starting and stopping the engine*.
2. Open the battery cover, if necessary → page 256, *Vehicle battery*.
3. Attach one end of the *red* jumper cable **A** to the **positive battery terminal** → fig. 161 ⊕ on the dead battery: ① → ⚠.
4. Attach the other end of the *red* jumper cable **B** to the **positive battery terminal** → fig. 161 ⊕ on the good battery (booster battery): ②.
5. Attach one end of the *black* jumper cable **C** to the **negative jump-start terminal** of the vehicle **providing** assistance: → fig. 161 ③ (→ page 234, *Jump-start terminal*), or if that is not available, to a bare metal part of the vehicle **providing** assistance. This part should be connected directly to the engine block.
6. Attach the other end of the *black* jumper cable **D** to the **negative jump-start terminal** of the vehicle **receiving** assistance → fig. 161 ④ (→ page 234, *Jump-start terminal*), or if that is not available, to a bare metal part of the vehicle **receiving** assistance. This part should be connected directly to the engine block. Attach the clamp to a point that is as far away as possible from the dead battery ① → ⚠.
7. Route the jumper cables so that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment of either vehicle.

Starting the engine

— Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery that is providing help and let it run at idle speed.

— Turn on the ignition of the vehicle with the dead battery. If the engine starts, wait 2 to 3 minutes until it "runs smoothly" before removing the jumper cables as described below → ⚠. If the engine does not start within about 10 seconds, turn off the ignition and wait at least 1 minute; then try again. If the engine still does not start, get professional assistance.

Before removing the jumper cables

— Switch off the headlights (if they are on).

— In the vehicle with the dead battery, switch on the heater fan and the rear window defroster. This helps to minimize voltage spikes when the cables are disconnected.

5GM012723ST

Removing jumper cables

With the engine running, remove the jumper cables **in reverse order** to the way they were connected.

1. Disconnect the black (-) cable from the vehicle with the **dead** battery.
2. Disconnect the black (-) cable from the other vehicle (vehicle with the **good** battery).
3. Disconnect the red (+) cable from the other vehicle (vehicle with the **good** battery).
4. Disconnect the red (+) cable from the vehicle with the **dead** battery.
5. Close the battery cover.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of jumper cables when jump-starting a vehicle with a dead battery can cause the battery to explode, leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of battery explosion:

- All work on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, or electrical shocks. Always read and heed the following WARNINGS and safety precautions before working on the batteries or the electrical system → page 256, *Vehicle battery*.
- Always wear proper eye protection. Never lean over the vehicle battery.
- Attach the jumper cables in the correct order: first the positive cable, then the negative cable.
- Never connect the negative cable from the vehicle providing starting assistance to parts of the fuel system or to the brake hoses or brake lines.
- Never allow the non-insulated parts of the battery clamps to touch.
- Never allow the jumper cable attached to the positive battery terminal to contact metal parts of the vehicle.
- Check the battery acid level indicator window on the vehicle battery. Use a flashlight, never a match, cigarette lighter, or other open flame. If you cannot see the color of the window clearly, or if it is light yellow or colorless, do not jump-start the vehicle. Get expert assistance.
- Avoid electrostatic discharge in the vicinity of the vehicle battery. Sparks may cause the hydrogen gas escaping from the vehicle battery to ignite.
- Never jump-start a vehicle with a battery that is damaged or frozen or that was frozen and has thawed. The battery can explode. Replace the battery instead.
- Always follow the instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer.
- Always make sure that the battery providing starting assistance has the same voltage as the dead battery (12 V) and about the same capacity (see battery label).
- Batteries give off explosive hydrogen gas. Always keep fire, sparks, open flame and smoking materials away from batteries.
- Never connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative battery terminal on the dead battery. The hydrogen gas from the battery is explosive.
- Never short out the battery terminals by connecting the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals with each other. ◁

Towing

Introduction

Observe legal requirements when towing.

For technical reasons:

— **A vehicle with a dead battery must never be towed. Jump-start the vehicle instead.**

— **It is not possible to tow-start or push-start your vehicle → ⓘ. Jump-start the vehicle instead.**

Vehicles with Keyless Access may only be towed with the ignition on.

Towing the vehicle when the engine is turned off and the ignition is turned on drains the vehicle battery. Depending on the charge level of the vehicle battery, it is possible that even after just a few minutes, electrical devices such as the emergency flashers may not have the power necessary to work. The steering wheel might lock in vehicles with Keyless Access → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Never tow a vehicle without any electrical power.

- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.
- If the vehicle loses power while it is being towed, stop towing the vehicle immediately and contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or

authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

Towing a vehicle changes the way it handles and brakes. To help reduce the risk of an accident and serious personal injury, note the following:

- The driver of the vehicle that is being towed:
  - Since the brake booster also does not work when the engine is stopped, you will need to press harder on the brake pedal to slow down or stop. Always be alert so as not to rear-end the towing vehicle.
  - Will have to use considerably more force to turn the steering wheel because the power steering is not working.
- The driver of the vehicle that is doing the towing:
  - Must accelerate gradually and gently and avoid jerking movements.
  - Must not brake hard or steer sharply.
  - Must brake earlier and more gently than in normal driving.

NOTICE

Be careful not to damage the paint when installing and removing the towing eye and the cover for the threaded hole in the bumper.

NOTICE

Never tow-start or push-start your vehicle; if you do, unburned fuel can get into the catalytic converter and damage it. Jump-start the vehicle instead. ◁

Towing with a commercial tow truck

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 236.

To help avoid damaging the vehicle, have it towed only by a professional towing company. Read and heed the following information:

General information

Never let the vehicle be towed at speeds above 30 mph (50 km/h).

Never let the vehicle be towed for more than 30 miles (50 km).

Towing manual transmission vehicles

- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission to Neutral **(N)**.
- If possible, have the vehicle towed with the front wheels off the ground.
- If necessary, the vehicle can also be towed with the rear wheels off the ground → ⓘ.

Towing automatic or DSG transmission vehicles

- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission to Neutral **(N)**.
- Tow the vehicle only with its front wheels off the ground → ⓘ.

Special towing instructions for vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION)

- To help prevent unnecessary damage, vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) must be transported on a flatbed truck.
- To load the vehicle on the flatbed, use the towing eye found in the vehicle tool kit and attach it to the front anchorage → page 227, *Vehicle tool kit*, → page 239, *Installing the front towing eye*.

When not to tow your vehicle

If there is little or no oil in the transmission because of damage to your vehicle, it must be moved with the drive wheels off the ground. The vehicle can only be towed if its ignition is switched on and its electrical system is operating.

In the following situations, the vehicle cannot be towed and **must be transported on a flatbed truck or trailer**:

- If the front and rear wheels cannot turn.
- If the vehicle battery is dead (because the electronic steering column lock cannot be released, if engaged). *Vehicles with an electronic parking brake*: If the electronic parking brake was engaged when the battery died, it cannot be released.
- If you have to tow an automatic or DSG transmission vehicle more than 30 miles (50 km).
- If the steering or the wheel clearance might be impaired, for example, after an accident.

WARNING

It is not safe for children or anyone else to ride in a vehicle that is being towed.

- Never let children or anyone else remain in the vehicle while it is being towed.

5GM012723ST

NOTICE

The drive axle turns while the vehicle is being towed with its rear wheels off the ground. This can damage the automatic or DSG transmission.

- Never tow an automatic or DSG transmission vehicle with the rear wheels off the ground.
- Tow manual transmission vehicles with the rear wheels off the ground only if it is certain that no transmission fluid can leak out. ◁

Tips on towing

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 236.

Towing eye, tow rope or tow bar

A towing eye is included in your vehicle's tool kit. This can be installed in a threaded hole in the front bumper and used when your vehicle is being towed by another vehicle. On most vehicles, there is another threaded hole in the rear bumper, so you can use the towing eye to tow other vehicles as well. Towing a vehicle with a tow bar is safer and easier on both vehicles than using a tow rope. A tow rope should be used only if a tow bar is not available.

The tow rope should be flexible enough to help protect both vehicles from damage. Use a synthetic fiber rope or similar rope.

Attach the tow rope or tow bar only to the towing eye included in the vehicle tool kit for this purpose, or to a trailer hitch.

Towing manual transmission vehicles

Check whether your vehicle can be towed at all; see below → page 238, *When not to tow your vehicle*.

If yes, note the following for the towed vehicle:

— Shift the gearshift lever to Neutral → page 147, *Manual transmission*.

— Do not tow faster than 30 mph (50 km/h).

— Do not tow more than 30 miles (50 km).

Towing automatic or DSG transmission vehicles

Check whether your vehicle can be towed at all; see below → page 238, *When not to tow your vehicle*.

If yes, note the following for the towed vehicle:

— Shift the transmission to Neutral **(N)**.

— Do not tow faster than 30 mph (50 km/h).

— Do not tow more than 30 miles (50 km).

— When a commercial tow truck is being used, the vehicle must only be towed with the front wheels lifted off the ground.

— Follow the special instructions for towing vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION).

Towing vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION)

Vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) must be transported on a flatbed truck or trailer. Otherwise the powertrain may be damaged.

When not to tow your vehicle

In the following situations, the vehicle cannot be towed and **must be transported on a flatbed truck or trailer**:

— If transmission fluid has leaked out of the transmission.

— If there is little or no oil in the transmission because of damage to your vehicle, it must be moved with the drive wheels off the ground.

— If the front and rear wheels cannot turn.

— If the vehicle battery is dead (because the electronic steering column lock cannot be released, if engaged).

— If you have to tow an automatic or DSG transmission vehicle more than 30 miles (50 km).

— If the steering or the wheel clearance might be impaired, for example, after an accident.

Towing other vehicles

— Obey all legal requirements.

— Read and heed all towing information in the owner's manual for the other vehicle.

A vehicle can be towed only if the electronic steering column lock and the electronic parking brake (if equipped) are released. In case of a power loss or malfunctions of the electrical system, the engine may have to be jump-started → page 233, *Jump-starting* in order to release the electronic steering column lock and the electronic parking brake (if equipped). ◁

Installing the rear towing eye

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 236.

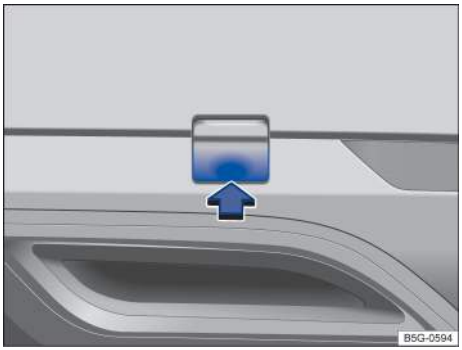


Fig. 162 In the right rear bumper: Removing the cover.

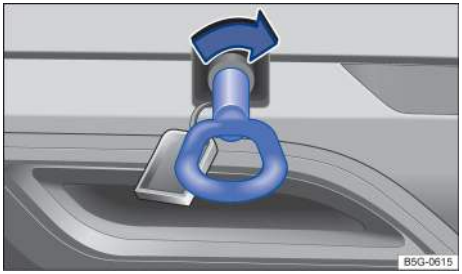


Fig. 163 In the right rear bumper: Installing the towing eye.

There is a threaded hole for the towing eye in the right rear bumper behind a cover → fig. 163.

Always keep the towing eye in the vehicle and stow it securely.

Read and follow the notes about towing → page 238, *Tips on towing*.

Installing the rear towing eye

— Take the towing eye, the lug wrench, and the screwdriver out of the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment → page 227, *Vehicle tool kit*.

— Push on the cover at the bottom marking → fig. 162 (arrow) so that it pops out.

— Remove the cover and let it hang from the bumper.

— Screw the towing eye **clockwise** into the threaded hole as far as it will go (arrow) → fig. 163 , → ⓘ.

Use the lug wrench to turn and tighten the towing eye.

— When towing is finished, unscrew the towing eye **counterclockwise** to remove it.

— Position the lower lip of the cover in the opening in the bumper and carefully push the upper lip over the edge of the opening until the cover locks in place.

NOTICE

Always make sure the towing eye is screwed all the way into threaded hole so that it is secure. If not, it could be pulled out while your vehicle is being towed. ◁

Installing the front towing eye

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 236.

Fig. 164 In the right front bumper: Removing the cover.

5GM012723ST

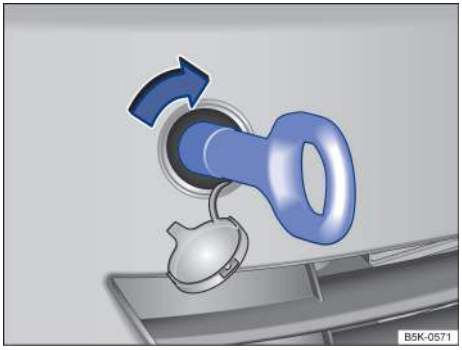


Fig. 165 In the right front bumper: Installing the towing eye.

There is a threaded hole for the towing eye in the right front bumper behind a cover → fig. 165.

Always keep the towing eye in the vehicle and stow it securely.

Read and follow the notes about towing → page 238, *Tips on towing*.

Installing the front towing eye

— Take the towing eye, the lug wrench, and the screwdriver out of the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment → page 227, *Vehicle tool kit*.

— Push on the left side of the cover → fig. 164 (arrow) so that it pops out.

— Remove the cover and let it hang from the bumper.

— Screw the towing eye **clockwise** into the threaded hole as far as it will go (arrow) → fig. 165 , → ⓘ. Use the lug wrench to turn and tighten the towing eye.

— When towing is complete, unscrew the towing eye **counterclockwise** to remove it.

— Position the left side of the cover in the opening in the bumper and carefully push the right side into the opening until the cover locks into place.

NOTICE

Always make sure the towing eye is screwed all the way into threaded hole so that it is secure. If not, it could be pulled out while your vehicle is being towed. ◁

Driving tips while towing

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 236.

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow rope. Both drivers must be familiar with the techniques required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not try to tow a vehicle or to drive a vehicle that is being towed.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle, and avoid jerking the tow rope. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the attachment points.

If your vehicle is being towed, it can still signal turns even if the emergency flashers are switched on, as long as the ignition is switched on. Use the turn signal in the normal way. The emergency flashers go off as long as the turn signal is blinking. As soon as the turn signal lever returns to its neutral position, the emergency flashers are automatically switched on again.

As the driver of the vehicle being towed:

— If your vehicle is the one being towed, the ignition must be switched on to keep the steering wheel from locking. Also make sure that the turn signals, horn, windshield wipers, and windshield washers work properly.

— Since power steering does not work when the engine is switched off, more effort is needed to steer the vehicle.

— Since the brake booster also does not work when the engine is stopped, you will need to press harder on the brake pedal to slow down or stop. Do not hit the towing vehicle.

— Read and heed the information and WARNINGS in the towing vehicle's owner's manual.

As the driver of the towing vehicle:

— Drive especially carefully and accelerate gently. Avoid sudden driving maneuvers.

— Brake earlier and more gently than usual and with light pedal pressure.

— Read and heed the information and WARNINGS in the owner's manual of the vehicle being towed. ◁

Checking and refilling

In the engine compartment

Introduction

Always position the vehicle on a firm and level surface before doing any work in the engine compartment.

The engine compartment of a vehicle is a hazardous area. Never do any work on the engine or in the engine compartment unless you

— know exactly how to carry out the job,

— have the correct technical information and the proper tools and supplies, and

— are familiar with the necessary safety precautions →.

If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

WARNING

Unintended vehicle movement during maintenance work can cause serious personal injuries.

- Never work under the vehicle unless you have safely secured the vehicle from moving. If you must work under the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure that the vehicle is on level ground, that all 4 wheels are chocked to keep them from moving, and that the key is not in the ignition.
- If you must work under a vehicle raised on a floor jack, always make sure that the vehicle is safely supported on safety stands intended for that purpose that are strong enough to support the weight of the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not strong enough for this purpose and can collapse causing serious personal injury.
- The Start-stop system must be deactivated.

WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the engine compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.
- We strongly recommend that you always have headlights and H7 bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.
- Never open or close the engine hood if steam or coolant is escaping. Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns. Always wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine.
- Always let the engine cool down completely before carefully opening the hood.
- Hot parts of the engine and the exhaust system will burn skin on contact.
- When the engine has cooled down and you are ready to open the hood:
  - — Set the parking brake and shift the transmission to Park **(P)** (automatic or DSG) or Neutral (manual only).
  - — Take the vehicle key out of the ignition.
  - — On vehicles with Keyless Access, make sure that the remote control vehicle key is out of range of the vehicle and that the vehicle cannot be started by depressing the starter button → page 142, *Starter button*.
  - — Always keep children and others away from the engine compartment and never leave them unsupervised.
- The engine coolant system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never unscrew the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. Hot coolant can spray out and cause severe burns and other serious injuries.
  - — Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counterclockwise direction while applying light downward pressure on the top of the cap.
  - — Always protect your face, hands, and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Never spill fluids on the engine or exhaust system when refilling. Spilling fluids onto hot parts of the engine or exhaust system can cause a fire.

5GM012723ST

WARNING

High voltage systems in the engine compartment can cause electrical shocks or even electrocution, severe burns, other serious injuries, and even death!

- Never short-circuit the electrical system. Be especially careful when using jumper cables. The vehicle's battery could explode!
- To reduce the risk of electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started:
  - Never touch ignition cables. Never touch other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.
- Read and heed the important information and warnings on cleaning the engine compartment → page 310, *Exterior care and cleaning*.

WARNING

Moving parts in the engine compartment can cause serious personal injury on contact.

- Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. Contact with the blades can cause serious personal injury. Always remember that the radiator fan is temperature-controlled and can come on suddenly even when the engine has been switched off for a while and the key has been removed from the ignition.
- If you have to perform a check or repair when the engine is running, there are more risks from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. Always use extreme care.
  - Always make sure that jewelry, loose clothing and long hair do not get caught in rotating engine parts. Before starting any work remove your jewelry, take off your necktie, tie back and cover your hair, and do not wear clothing that can hang down and get caught in moving engine parts.
  - Always use extreme caution if the accelerator pedal has to be depressed to perform a check. The vehicle will start to move if the transmission is in gear, even if the parking brake is on.
- Never leave any objects in the engine compartment, for example cleaning rags and tools. Objects left behind can cause malfunctions, engine damage, and even fires.

WARNING

Additional materials in the engine compartment such as blankets can interfere with the operation of the engine and can cause fires, which can lead to serious injuries.

- Never cover the engine with blankets or other materials.

WARNING

Operating fluids and some materials in the engine compartment can catch fire easily, causing burns and other serious personal injuries!

- Never smoke near the engine compartment.
- Never work next to open flames or sparks.
- Never pour or spill operating fluids or other flammable liquids on the engine. These fluids can ignite on hot engine parts and cause injuries.
- Before working on the vehicle's fuel system or 12 Volt electrical system:
  - Always disconnect the 12 Volt vehicle battery. Note that if the vehicle is locked when the 12 Volt vehicle battery is disconnected, the anti-theft alarm system will sound → page 95, *Anti-theft alarm system*.
  - Never work near a furnace, water heater, or other open flame.
- Always have a functional, approved fire extinguisher nearby.

NOTICE

When changing or topping off fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Adding the wrong type of operating fluids will cause serious malfunctions and engine damage.

Fluid leaks and spills are harmful to the environment. Regularly check the ground underneath your vehicle for this reason. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle checked by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Dispose of leaked operating fluids properly. ◁

Preparing to work in the engine compartment

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 241.

Checklist

Before any work in the engine compartment, carry out the following steps in the order in which they are listed → ⚠:

- ✓ Park the vehicle in a safe place on a firm, level surface.
- ✓ Hold the brake pedal down until the engine is switched off.
- ✓ Shift the transmission to Park **(P)** (automatic or DSG) or Neutral (manual only) → page 148, *Automatic and DSG® transmission*.
- ✓ Set the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving → page 178, *Using the parking brake (Golf, Golf GTI)*.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button and remove the key from the vehicle → page 141, *Starting and stopping the engine*.
- ✓ Let the engine cool down sufficiently.
- ✓ Keep children and others away from the vehicle.
- ✓ Make sure the vehicle cannot move unexpectedly.

⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may result in serious injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

◁

Opening or closing the engine compartment

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 241.

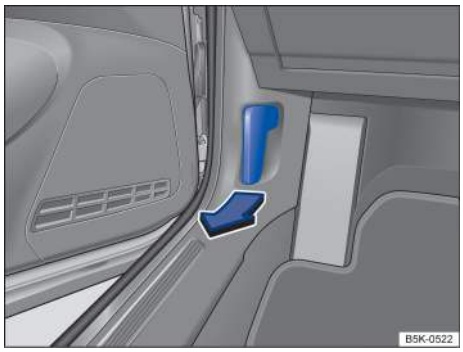


Fig. 166 In the footwell on the driver side: Inside engine hood release lever.

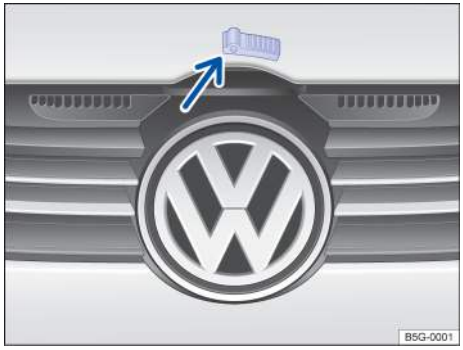


Fig. 167 Above the radiator grille: Outside engine hood release.

Opening the engine hood

— Before you open the hood, make sure that the windshield wiper arms are resting on the windshield → ⓘ.

— Open the driver door and pull the inside hood release lever in the direction of the arrow → fig. 166. The engine hood is released from its latch by a spring → ⚠.

— Push the outside hood release lever → fig. 167 (arrow) and lift the hood all the way up. A gas-pressure strut will hold the hood up.

5GM012723ST

Closing the engine hood

— Pull the hood down to overcome the resistance of the gas-pressure strut → ⚠.

— Lower the engine hood by hand until it is about 8 in. (20 cm) above its latch and then let it drop into place to latch it. *Do not* push down on it afterwards!

If the hood does not close completely, open it again and close it properly.

When the hood is properly closed, you can see that it fits flush with the other body parts. The display in the instrument cluster no longer indicates that the engine hood is open → page 244, *Display*.

⚠ WARNING

If the hood is not closed properly, it could fly up and block your view while you are driving. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.

- After closing the engine hood, check that the hood release lever is properly latched into the hood latch. The engine hood must be flush with the surrounding auto body parts.
- If you ever notice that the hood latch is not properly secured when the vehicle is moving, stop at once and close it.
- Never let anyone get in the way of the hood when closing it.

NOTICE

- Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off and the windshield wiper arms are resting on the windshield before you open the hood. Otherwise, the windshield wipers and the hood may be damaged.
- Always put the windshield wiper arms down against the windshield before driving the vehicle.

NOTICE

Before opening or closing the engine hood, make sure there is enough room to do so, for example when the vehicle is in a garage. ◁

Display

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 241.

Fig. 168 In the instrument cluster display: Engine hood open or not properly closed.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

If the engine hood is not closed properly, the vehicle icon appears in the instrument cluster display indicating the engine hood is open → fig. 168. **Stop!** Open and close the engine hood again.

The icon may still be displayed even after the ignition is switched off. The instrument cluster display goes out a short time after the vehicle has been locked.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights or other warnings can result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. ◁

Operating fluids and equipment

Operating fluids and parts that wear out with use (such as timing belts, tires, engine coolants, engine oils, spark plugs, and vehicle batteries) are constantly being improved. For this reason, it is important to have operating fluids changed and worn parts replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized

Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are always up-to-date regarding new developments and changes.

WARNING

Improper use of operating fluids and equipment can cause accidents, serious personal injuries, burns and/or poisoning.

- Always store vehicle care products in a safe place in original containers that are securely closed.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always keep vehicle care products out of the reach of children.
- Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package before using vehicle care products.
- When using products that give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well ventilated area.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are poisonous and highly flammable. They could cause fires and explosions!

NOTICE

- Only refill with suitable operating fluids. When changing or topping off fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Adding incorrect fluids will cause serious malfunctions and engine damage! Under no circumstances should you mix up operating fluids. Otherwise serious malfunctions and engine damage can occur!
- Accessories and other things installed in front of the cooling air intakes impair the efficiency of the engine coolant. The engine can overheat under high outside temperatures or under high engine loads!

Leaking operating fluids can pollute the environment. Collect leaking operating fluids in suitable containers and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations. ◁

Windshield washer fluid

Fig. 169 In the engine compartment: Cap of the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Check the windshield washer fluid level regularly and refill as necessary.

There is a filter screen in the filler neck of the windshield washer fluid reservoir. The screen helps to keep large particles and debris from getting into and clogging the windshield washer nozzles when adding windshield washer fluid. Take the screen out only to clean it. If the screen is damaged or missing, have it replaced immediately, otherwise the system may become clogged and not work properly.

— Open the engine hood ⚠ → page 241, *In the engine compartment*.

— The windshield washer fluid reservoir can be identified by the symbol on its cap → fig. 169.

— Check if there is still enough windshield washer fluid in the reservoir.

— Refill with clear water (not distilled water) and an appropriate windshield washer fluid that is recommended by Volkswagen → ⓘ. Follow the directions on the container.

— In cold weather, always use a special windshield washer antifreeze solution that will help keep the water from freezing → ⚠.

Recommended cleaners

— For the warmer months, Windscreen Clear SummerG 052 184 A2 or equivalent. Mixing ratio 1:100 (1 part concentrate to 100 parts water) in the windshield washer reservoir.

— All-season Windscreen ClearG 052 164 M2 or equivalent. Mixing ratio in winter to 0 °F (-18 °C) about 1:2 (1 part concentrate to 2 parts water), otherwise, mixing ratio 1:4 in the windshield washer reservoir.

5GM012723ST

Filling capacity

Depending on vehicle equipment, the windshield washer fluid reservoir holds between 3.1–5.2 quarts (3–5 liters).

WARNING

Never mix antifreeze or similar additives into the windshield washer reservoir. This could produce an oily film on the windshield, which would considerably reduce visibility.

- Use clear water (not distilled water) with a cleaning solution recommended by Volkswagen.
- If necessary, blend with a suitable windshield washer fluid antifreeze agent.

NOTICE

- Never mix cleaning solutions recommended by Volkswagen with other cleaning agents. If you do, this could cause sediments or other by-products that can clog the windshield washer nozzles.
- When changing or topping off fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Adding the wrong type of operating fluids will cause serious malfunctions and engine damage. ◁

- Always wear eye protection.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Store engine oil only in the closed original container. This also applies to used oil until disposal.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never drain the oil into empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.
- Engine oil becomes extremely hot when the engine is running and can cause severe burns. Always let the engine cool down to the touch.

Like all other operating fluids, engine oil can pollute the environment. Collect leaked or spilled operating fluids and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations. ◁

Engine oil

Introduction

WARNING

Improper handling of engine oil can cause severe burns and other serious injuries.

Engine oil specifications

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 246.

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

Using the proper engine oil is important for the functionality and service life of the engine. Your engine was factory-filled with a high-quality multigrade oil which can usually be used throughout the entire year.

Engine oils are constantly being improved. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are always up-to-date regarding new developments and changes. Volkswagen therefore recommends that you have the engine oil changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Engine oil quality is based not only on requirements for engines and exhaust treatment systems, but also on fuel quality. Engine oil comes into contact with fuel and fuel residue in all internal combustion engines, causing engine oil to age and its lubricating qualities to deteriorate.

Always use an approved oil that expressly complies with the Volkswagen oil quality standard that applies to your vehicle's engine.

Approved engine oil

Engines	Engine oil specification	Viscosity grade
1.4 L gasoline engines (Golf)	VW 508 00	SAE 0W-20
2.0 L gasoline engines (Golf GTI)	VW 508 00	SAE 0W-20

At the time this Manual was printed, the engine oils available in the U.S. that meet these Volkswagen standards are "synthetic" oils. This does not mean, however, that any "synthetic" engine oil will meet Volkswagen standards. Always use an approved oil that expressly complies with the Volkswagen oil quality standard that applies to your vehicle's engine.

General recommendations

If engine oil that meets the applicable Volkswagen oil quality standard and viscosity grades are not available in your area, be sure to use a viscosity grade suitable for the climate, season, and operating conditions that exist where the vehicle is used. Make sure the oil and viscosity grades meet the quality standard listed in the table . If none is available that meets this engine oil specification, see the information in → ⓘ.

Volkswagen recommends Castrol engine oils.

NOTICE

- If you need to add oil and there is none available that expressly meets the Volkswagen oil quality standard your engine requires, you may add **a total of no more than 1/2 quart (0.5 liter)** of a high-quality "synthetic" oil that meets ACEA A3/B4 or API SN (API SM) specifications and has a viscosity grade that matches the approved viscosity for your vehicle's engine listed in the table .
- If there is no oil available that has a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-20, you may add **a total of no more than 1/2 quart (0.5 liter)** of an engine oil that meets the oil quality standard VW 502 00 or VW 504 00 and has a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-30, or SAE 5W-40.
  - Using oil with a viscosity grade other than SAE 0W-20 may cause vehicle emissions and fuel consumption to increase slightly. **Only use other oils in case of emergency!**
- Use only an engine oil that expressly complies with the Volkswagen oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage that will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.
- Do not mix any lubricants or other additives into the engine oil. Doing so can cause engine damage! Damage caused by these kinds of additives are not covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty. ◁

Changing engine oil

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 246.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your → *Warranty and Maintenance*.

Changing oil at regular intervals is very important because the lubricating properties of oil decrease gradually during normal vehicle use. If you are not sure when to have the oil changed, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Sometimes, engine oil should be changed more often than specified for normal use. Change oil more frequently if you often drive short distances, in dusty areas or in stop-and-go traffic, or if you use your vehicle where temperatures stay below freezing for long periods.

Volkswagen recommends that you have your oil and oil filter changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility → ⚠. They have the required expertise and special tools and will dispose of the old oil properly.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running a short time. This is normal and no reason to change engine oil more often.

5GM012723ST

⚠ WARNING

If you must change the engine oil yourself, be sure to take the following precautions:

- Always wear eye protection.
- To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down completely before beginning.
- When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never drain the oil into empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always use an oil that has been specifically approved for your vehicle → page 246, *Engine oil specifications*.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Before changing the oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the old oil.

Dispose of the old oil in an environmentally-responsible manner. Never dump the old oil on garden soil, in wooded areas, in the street, into streams, rivers, or bodies of water, or down sewage drains.

Recycle used oil by taking it to a collection facility for used engine oil in your area, or contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Volkswagen recommends that you always have your oil and oil filter changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. They have the required expertise and special tools and will dispose of the old oil properly. ◁

Engine oil consumption

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 246.

To provide effective lubrication and cooling for internal engine parts, all internal combustion engines use some oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change over the life of the engine. Engines tend to use more oil during the break-in period than they do afterward, when oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on oil quality as well as viscosity, engine speed (rpm), outside temperature, road conditions, the amount of oil dilution caused by condensed water or fuel residue, and oxidation of the oil. Oil consumption may increase with engine wear over time, until replacement of worn engine parts may become necessary.

Volkswagen recommends that you to check the engine oil level at regular intervals, preferably every time you fill the fuel tank, and always before a long trip. Your vehicle may consume engine oil depending on several variables. A maximum of 1 quart per 1200 miles (1 liter per 2000 km) would be considered normal. New vehicles may consume more oil over the first 3000 miles (5000 km).

The oil pressure warning light is not an indicator of low engine oil level. If the warning light stays on or flashes while driving (above 1500 rpm), a chime will sound. It indicates that the oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine in a safe place immediately, check the engine oil level and add oil if necessary. If the engine oil level is normal, but the light continues to flash, do not keep driving or let the engine idle, as damage may occur.

If you believe your engine uses too much oil, we recommend that you consult your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility so that the cause of your concern can be properly diagnosed. Please keep in mind that accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility have instructions for how to measure oil consumption accurately.

Depending on the way the vehicle is driven and the operating conditions, oil consumption can be up to 1 quart per 1200 miles (1 liter per 2000 km). Consumption may be higher for new vehicles during the first 3000 miles (5000 km). ◁

Checking the engine oil level and adding oil

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 246.

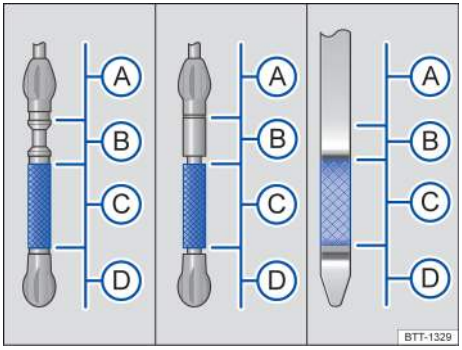


Fig. 170 Engine oil dipstick with oil level marks.

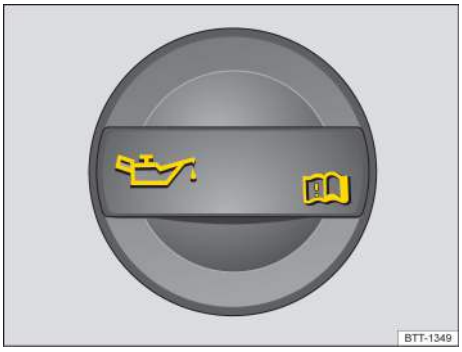


Fig. 171 In the engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap (cap design may vary depending on vehicle equipment).

Key to fig. 170:

Ⓐ Engine oil level too high. **Do not start the engine** → Ⓘ. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

Ⓑ **Do not** refill oil → Ⓘ.

Ⓒ **You may** add oil, as long as the oil level does not go above the Ⓑ range.

Ⓓ Engine oil level too low. **You must** add oil (about 1 quart / 1.0 liter). After adding oil, make sure that the oil level is about in the middle of the Ⓒ range.

Checklist

Perform the steps in the order listed → ⚠:

1. With the engine at **operating temperature**, park the vehicle on a level surface to help prevent an incorrect oil level reading.
2. Switch off the engine and wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil pan.
3. Open the engine hood ⚠ → page 241.
4. Find the oil filler opening and the dipstick. You can identify these by the symbol on the engine oil filler cap → fig. 171 and the colored handle on the dipstick. If you are not sure where the cap and the dipstick are located, see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.
5. Remove the dipstick from the guide tube and wipe the dipstick off using a clean cloth.
6. Reinsert the dipstick into the guide tube and push it all the way in. If there is an alignment tab on the top of the engine oil dipstick, make sure it lines up with the notch in the guide tube, and that the dipstick goes all the way in.
7. Remove the dipstick again and read the oil level on the dipstick → fig. 170 as described below:

   Ⓐ: Engine oil level too high. **Do not start the engine** → Ⓘ. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

   Ⓑ: **Do not** add any oil → Ⓘ. Continue with step 15.

   Ⓒ: Oil may be added, depending on the oil level. Continue with step 8 or step 15.

   Ⓓ: **You must** add oil (about 1 quart / 1.0 liter). Continue with step 8.
8. After reading the oil level, reinsert the dipstick back into the guide tube and push it all the way in.
9. Remove the cap on the engine oil filler opening → fig. 171.
10. Only add engine oil that Volkswagen has approved for that engine → page 246, *Engine oil specifications*. Add the oil gradually in small quantities (no more than 1 pint / 0.5 liter).
11. To help prevent overfilling, you must wait about 1 minute each time you add oil so that the oil can flow into the oil pan up to the marking on the dipstick.
12. Read the oil level on the dipstick again before adding another small amount, if necessary. Never add too much oil → Ⓘ.

5GM012723ST

13. After adding oil, the level must at least be in the center of the → fig. 170 Ⓒ range and can enter range Ⓑ, but should never enter range Ⓐ → ⓘ.
14. After adding oil, securely install the cap on the engine oil filler opening. Otherwise, oil could leak out while the engine is running.
15. Insert the oil dipstick back in the guide tube and push it all the way in.
16. Close the hood → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 241.

⚠ WARNING

Engine oil can ignite when it touches hot engine parts. This can cause fires, burns, and other severe injuries.

- Never spill oil on the engine. Oil spilled on a cold engine can also cause a fire when the engine warms up.
- Always make certain that you screw the cap of the engine oil filler opening back on tightly after adding oil and that the dipstick has been pushed all the way back into the in the guide tube. This helps prevent engine oil from leaking onto the hot engine when the engine is running.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- Do not start the engine if the engine oil level is in range → fig. 170 Ⓐ. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise the catalytic converter and engine can be damaged!
- When changing or topping off fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Adding the wrong type of operating fluids will cause serious malfunctions and engine damage.

The engine oil level should never be in range → fig. 170 Ⓐ. Otherwise oil can be drawn in by the crankcase ventilation system and enter the atmosphere via the exhaust system. ◁

Warning and indicator lights

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 246.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

Depending on equipment, the engine oil temperature may be displayed in the Volkswagen Information System **Driving data** menu → page 13, *Volkswagen Information System*.

Engine oil pressure too low

The red indicator light flashes.

— **Stop!**
— Switch off the engine.
— Check the engine oil level → page 249.
— If the warning light flashes although the oil level is normal, *do not* continue driving or let the engine idle. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged.
— Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Engine oil level too low

The yellow indicator light comes on.

— **Stop!**
— Switch off the engine.
— Check the engine oil level → page 249.
— If necessary, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

Engine oil system malfunction

The yellow indicator light flashes.

— Have the engine oil sensor checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage. ◁

Engine coolant

Introduction

Never do any work on the coolant system unless you

— know exactly how to carry out the job,

— have the correct technical information and the proper tools, supplies, and operating fluids, and

— are familiar with the necessary safety precautions → ⚠!

If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

⚠ WARNING

Engine coolant is poisonous!

- Always keep the coolant in its original container stored in a safe place.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never store engine coolant in empty food or beverage containers or in any other containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always keep engine coolant out of reach of children.
- Always make sure there is enough of the correct coolant additive to provide proper antifreeze protection at the coldest temperatures that can be expected where the vehicle will be used.
- At extremely cold temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to break down. The heater would also not work, and vehicle occupants could be without protection at subfreezing temperatures.

Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Collect leaking operating fluids and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations. ◁

Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 251.

For more information, please see → page 22. ◁

Engine coolant specifications

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 251.

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of specially prepared water and at least 40% coolant additive.

Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to find out which engine coolant is suitable for your vehicle. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

To protect the engine cooling system, there must *always* be at least a 40% proportion of coolant additive. If greater freeze protection is needed due to the climate, the proportion of coolant additive can be increased. However, the proportion of coolant additive must not exceed 60%, because otherwise the freeze protection will be reduced and the cooling effect will be decreased.

The engine coolant additive can be recognized by its purple color. The mixture of water and coolant additive provides freeze protection down to -13 °F (-25 °C), protects the aluminum alloy parts of the cooling system from corrosion, prevents limescale deposits, and increases the boiling point of the coolant.

If the engine coolant is being topped up, a blend of **distilled water** and at least 40% of an appropriate engine coolant additive must be used to ensure optimum corrosion protection → page 251.

⚠ WARNING

Gilt für Verbrennungsmotoren #

Insufficient freeze protection in the engine cooling system can cause engine malfunctions, which can result in serious injuries.

- Make sure that the correct proportion of engine coolant additive based on the lowest outside temperature that is expected is used in the vehicle.
- In extremely low temperatures, the coolant can freeze and the vehicle would be unable to start. Because the heater will also no longer function in that situation, vehicle occupants could freeze if they do not have sufficient warm clothing.

⚠ WARNING

Gilt für Hybridmotoren #

Insufficient freeze protection in the vehicle cooling system can cause malfunctions in the hybrid drive system, which can result in serious injuries.

5GM012723ST

- Make sure that the correct proportion of engine coolant additive based on the lowest outside temperature that is expected is used in the vehicle.
- In extremely low temperatures, the coolant can freeze and the vehicle would be unable to start. Because the heater will also no longer function in that situation, vehicle occupants could freeze if they do not have sufficient warm clothing.

WARNING

Gilt für Elektroantrieb #

Insufficient antifreeze in the vehicle cooling system can cause malfunctions in the electric drivetrain, which can result in serious injuries.

- Make sure that the correct proportion of engine coolant additive based on the lowest outside temperature that is expected is used in the vehicle.
- In extremely low temperatures, the coolant can freeze and the vehicle would be unable to start. Because the heater will also no longer function in that situation, vehicle occupants could freeze if they do not have sufficient warm clothing.

NOTICE

Never mix Genuine Volkswagen coolant additives with coolants that are not approved by Volkswagen.

- *Gilt für Verbrennungsmotoren #* If the fluid in the coolant expansion tank is not pink-colored (the color comes from the mixture of the purple coolant additive with distilled water) but is, for example, brown instead, the suitable engine coolant was mixed with another engine coolant that is not suitable. In this case, have the engine coolant changed immediately. Otherwise, serious malfunctions or damage to the engine and cooling system could occur.

  Gilt für Hybridmotoren # If the fluid in the coolant expansion tank is not pink-colored (the color comes from the mixture of the purple coolant additive with distilled water) but is, for example, brown instead, the suitable engine coolant was mixed with another engine coolant that is not suitable. In this case, have the engine coolant changed immediately. Otherwise, serious malfunctions or damage to the hybrid drive system and cooling system could occur.

  Gilt für Elektroantrieb # If the fluid in the coolant expansion tank is not pink-colored (the color comes from the mixture of the purple coolant additive with distilled water) but is, for example, brown instead, the suitable engine coolant was mixed with another engine coolant that is not suitable. In this case, have the engine coolant changed immediately. Otherwise, serious malfunctions or damage to the electric drivetrain and cooling system could occur.

Engine coolant and coolant additives can harm the environment. Catch any leaking operating fluids and dispose of them correctly according to environmental regulations. ◁

Engine coolant specifications

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 251.

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of specially prepared water and at least 40% coolant additive.

Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to find out which engine coolant is suitable for your vehicle. Volkswagen recommends contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

To protect the engine cooling system, there must *always* be at least a 40% proportion of coolant additive. If greater freeze protection is needed due to the climate, the proportion of coolant additive can be increased. However, the proportion of coolant additive must not exceed 60%, because otherwise the freeze protection will be reduced and the cooling effect will be decreased.

The engine coolant additive can be recognized by its purple color. The mixture of water and coolant additive provides freeze protection down to -13 °F (-25 °C), protects the aluminum alloy parts of the cooling system from corrosion, prevents limescale deposits, and increases the boiling point of the coolant.

If the engine coolant is being topped up, a blend of **distilled water** and at least 40% of an appropriate engine coolant additive must be used to ensure optimum corrosion protection → page 251.

WARNING

Insufficient freeze protection in the engine cooling system can cause engine malfunctions, which can result in serious injuries.

- Make sure that the correct proportion of engine coolant additive based on the lowest outside temperature that is expected is used in the vehicle.
- In extremely low temperatures, the coolant can freeze and the vehicle would be unable to start. Because the heater will also no longer function

in that situation, vehicle occupants could freeze if they do not have sufficient warm clothing.

NOTICE

Never mix Genuine Volkswagen coolant additives with coolants that are not approved by Volkswagen.

- If the fluid in the coolant expansion tank is not pink-colored (the color comes from the mixture of the purple coolant additive with distilled water) but is, for example, brown instead, the suitable engine coolant was mixed with another engine coolant that is not suitable. In this case, have the engine coolant changed immediately. Otherwise, serious malfunctions or damage to the engine and cooling system could occur.

Engine coolant and coolant additives can harm the environment. Catch any leaking operating fluids and dispose of them correctly according to environmental regulations. ◁

Checking engine coolant level and topping off

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 251.

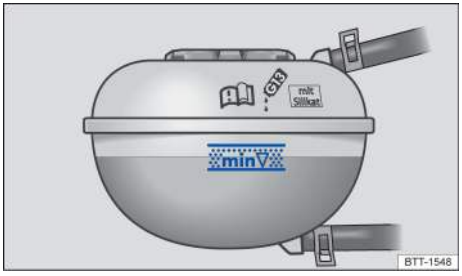


Fig. 172 Coolant expansion tank in the engine compartment.

Fig. 173 Coolant expansion tank cap in the engine compartment.

If the coolant level drops too low, the engine coolant level/temperature warning light comes on.

Preparations

— Park the vehicle on level ground.

— Always let the engine cool down → ⚠.

— Open the engine hood ⚠ → page 241, *In the engine compartment*.

— There is a 🌡 symbol on the cap of the engine coolant expansion tank → fig. 173.

Checking engine coolant level

— When the engine is cold, check the engine coolant level relative to the marking on the side of the expansion tank → fig. 172.

— If the coolant level in the tank is below the minimum mark ("min"), add coolant. When the engine is warm, the engine coolant level may be slightly above the upper edge of the marked range.

Adding engine coolant

— Always protect face, hands, and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.

— Carefully unscrew the cap → ⚠.

— Add only **new** engine coolant according to Volkswagen specifications () → ⓘ.

— Only refill coolant if there is coolant in the expansion tank. If there is no coolant visible in the expansion tank, the engine could be damaged. If you cannot see any coolant in the expansion tank, **do not drive the vehicle**. Seek professional assistance.

— If you can see coolant in the expansion tank, refill coolant until the level remains stable.

— The engine coolant level must be inside the marks on the side of the expansion tank → fig. 172. **Do not fill above the top edge of the filling range!** → ⓘ

5GM012723ST

— Screw the lid tightly.

— Even in an emergency, **do not** use any other kind of coolant additive if engine coolant that meets Volkswagen specifications () is not available! Instead, add **distilled water only** → ⓘ. As soon as possible, have the correct coolant ratio restored using engine coolant that meets Volkswagen specifications.

⚠ WARNING

Hot steam and hot engine coolant can cause serious burns.

- Never open the hood if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Always wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine.
- Always let the engine cool down completely before carefully opening the hood. Hot components will burn skin on contact.
- When the engine has cooled down and you are ready to open the hood:
  - — Firmly apply the parking brake and shift the transmission to Park **(P)**.
  - — Take the vehicle key out of the ignition.
  - — On vehicles with Keyless Access, make sure that the remote control vehicle key is out of range of the vehicle and that the vehicle cannot be started by depressing the starter button → page 142, *Starter button*.
  - — Always keep children and others away from the engine compartment and never leave them unsupervised.
- The engine coolant system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never unscrew the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. Hot coolant can spray out and cause severe burns and other serious injuries.
  - — Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counterclockwise direction while applying light downward pressure on the top of the cap.
  - — Always protect your face, hands, and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Never spill fluids on the engine or exhaust system when refilling. Spilling fluids onto hot parts of the engine or exhaust system can cause a fire. Under some conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.

NOTICE

- Use distilled water only when adding coolant! All other types of water contain chemical compounds that can cause extensive corrosion damage to the engine. This can even lead to engine failure. If you have added non-distilled water, take the vehicle immediately to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the coolant system drained, flushed, and refilled completely with the proper coolant.
- Refill engine coolant only up to the top edge of the marked fill range → fig. 172. Excess engine coolant may be forced out of the engine cooling system when it gets hot and cause damage.
- In the case of significant engine coolant loss, refill engine coolant only when the engine is *completely cooled down*. Significant engine coolant loss is a sign of leaks in the cooling system. Have the engine cooling system checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise the engine may be damaged!
- Do not refill engine coolant if there is no coolant in the expansion tank. Air could enter the cooling system. Do not drive the vehicle! Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so can result in engine damage.
- When changing or topping off operating fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Serious malfunctions and engine damage can result if you pour operating fluids into the wrong reservoir. ◁

Brake fluid

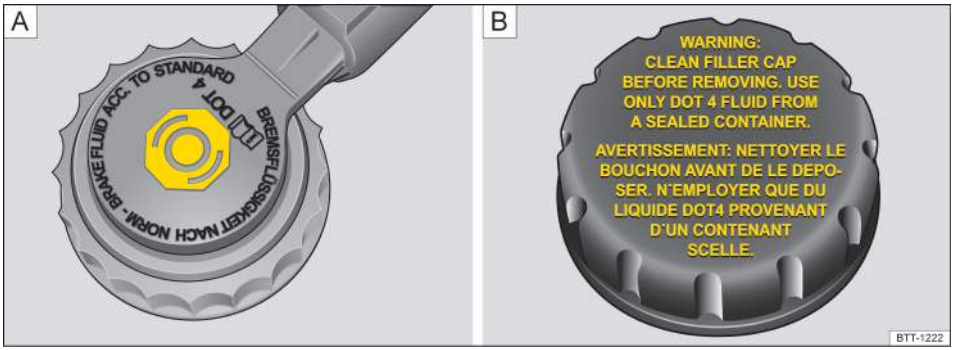


Fig. 174 In the engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir cap (cap design may vary depending on vehicle equipment).

Brake fluid absorbs water from the air over time. Too much water in the brake fluid will damage the brake system. Water also lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid. Too much water in the brake fluid can cause vapor lock during heavy brake use or hard braking. Vapor lock reduces braking performance, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure. Your safety and the safety of others depends on brakes that are working properly at all times → ⚠.

Brake fluid specifications

Volkswagen has developed a special brake fluid that is optimized for the brake system in your Volkswagen. Volkswagen recommends that you use brake fluid that expressly conforms to quality standard **VW Standard 501 14** for optimum performance of the brake system. Check the information on the container for the brake fluid you want to use to make sure it meets the requirements for your vehicle.

Brake fluid that complies with **VW Standard 501 14** can be purchased from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If this special brake fluid is not available you may – under these circumstances – use another high quality brake fluid that complies with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4 Class 6 → ⚠.

Please note, however, that not all brake fluids that comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4 Class 6 have the same chemical composition. Some of these brake fluids can contain chemicals that could, over time, degrade or damage internal parts of the vehicle's brake system.

Volkswagen therefore recommends that you use brake fluid that expressly complies with **VW Standard 501 14** for optimum brake system performance over the long term.

Brake fluid level

The fluid level in the transparent brake fluid reservoir must always be between the MIN and MAX marking → ⚠.

On some vehicles, engine components may partially block the view of the brake fluid reservoir and make it impossible to see the brake fluid level. If you cannot clearly see the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

Changing brake fluid

Brake fluid must be changed according to the service schedule in your → *Warranty and Maintenance*. Have the brake fluid checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Refill only with new brake fluid that meets the standards listed above.

⚠ WARNING

Brake failure and reduced brake performance can be caused by not having enough brake fluid in the reservoir or by old or incorrect brake fluid.

- Have the brake system and brake fluid level checked regularly.
- Have the brake fluid changed according to the service schedule in your → *Warranty and Maintenance*.

5GM012723ST

- Hard braking with old brake fluid may cause vapor lock. Vapor lock reduces braking performance, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure.
- Only use brake fluid that expressly conforms to VW Standard 501 14.
- If a brake fluid that conforms to VW Standard 501 14 is not available, only use a high-quality brake fluid that conforms to U.S. Standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 Class 6 requirements.
- Brake fluid in an opened container can quickly become unusable. Refill your brake fluid reservoir only with new brake fluid from an unopened container.

⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous.

- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use food, beverage, or other non-original containers to store brake fluid. Someone might be misled by the original label on the container, or by the shape of the container, and drink the brake fluid. This could occur even if you relabel the container as “brake fluid.”
- Store brake fluid out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

Brake fluid will damage vehicle paint, plastic parts, and tires. Wipe any brake fluid off vehicle paint and other vehicle parts immediately.

Brake fluid can pollute the environment. Brake fluid that has leaked out must be collected and disposed of properly, following all applicable environmental regulations. ◁

Vehicle battery

Introduction

The standard 12 Volt vehicle battery is part of the vehicle electrical system.

Never do any work on the vehicle electrical system unless you

— know exactly how to carry out the job,

— have the correct technical information and the proper tools, and

— are familiar with the necessary safety precautions → ⚠!

If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Location of the vehicle battery

The 12 Volt vehicle battery is in the engine compartment.

Explanation of the warnings on the vehicle battery

Always wear eye protection!

Battery acid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!

Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are prohibited!

When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is highly explosive!

Always keep children away from battery acid and vehicle batteries!

Always read and follow the information and WARNINGS in this Owner's Manual!

⚠ WARNING

Working on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, explosions, or electrical shocks. Always read and heed the following WARNINGS and safety precautions before working on the batteries or the electrical system.

- Before working on the electrical system, always switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative (-) cable from the standard 12 Volt battery.
- When you change a light bulb, always switch off the light first.
- Always keep children away from battery acid and vehicle batteries in general.
- Always wear eye protection. Never let battery acid or lead particles come into contact with your eyes, skin, or clothing.
- Sulfuric battery acid is very corrosive. It can burn unprotected skin and cause blindness. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. To reduce your risk of injury, never tilt the batteries, as this could spill acid through the vents and burn you.
- If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and then get immediate medical attention. If you swallow any battery acid, get medical attention immediately.
- When disconnecting the batteries from the vehicle electrical system, always disconnect the

negative cable (-) first and then the positive cable (+).

- Always switch off all electrical consumers before reconnecting 12 Volt batteries. Reconnect the plus cable (+) first and then the negative cable (-). Never reverse the polarity of the connections. This could cause a fire.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is being charged.
- Do not smoke and avoid fires, sparks, and open flames when working. Never create sparks or electrostatic charges when handling cables and electrical equipment. Never short circuit the battery terminals. High-energy sparks can cause serious personal injury.
- Never use or attempt to charge a damaged or frozen battery, or a battery that was frozen but has thawed. Charging a frozen or thawed battery could cause explosions and chemical burns! Replace damaged or frozen vehicle batteries immediately. A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around +32 °F (0 °C).
- If the battery has a vent line or tube, make sure that it is properly connected to the battery.

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning

- Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead components, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash your hands after handling.

NOTICE

- Do not expose the vehicle battery to direct sunlight for an extended period of time as ultraviolet rays may damage the battery housing.
- If the vehicle is left standing in the cold for a long time, protect the vehicle battery from freezing. A battery will be permanently damaged by freezing.

Emergency starting and starting the engine with a very weak vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, driver personalization, and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge. ◁

Checking the vehicle battery electrolyte level

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 256.

Check the electrolyte level of the battery regularly if the vehicle has high mileage (km), in places with a warm climate, and if the vehicle has an old battery. Otherwise the vehicle battery does not require maintenance.

Preparations

— Prepare the vehicle for work in the engine compartment → page 241, *In the engine compartment*.

— Open the engine hood → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 241.

Checking the vehicle battery acid level

— If the lighting conditions are poor, use a flashlight so that you can clearly see the battery acid level indicator and tell what color it is. Never use an open flame or an unprotected light source.

— The round battery window ("acid level indicator") on the top of the battery changes color, depending on the battery's electrolyte level.

Light yellow **or** *colorless* Battery electrolyte level is too low. The vehicle battery may need to be replaced. Have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Black Battery electrolyte level is satisfactory.

⚠ WARNING

Working on the batteries can cause serious acid burns, explosion, or electrical shock.

- Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.
- Sulfuric battery acid is very corrosive. It can burn unprotected skin and cause blindness. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection.
- Never tilt the vehicle battery. Acid could spill out of the battery vents and burn you.
- Never open a vehicle battery.
- If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and then get immediate medical attention.
- If you swallow any battery acid, get medical attention immediately. ◁

5GM012723ST

Charging, replacing, disconnecting, and connecting the vehicle battery

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 256.

Charging the vehicle battery

Vehicle batteries should be charged by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility because the factory-installed battery requires a charger with overload protection → ⚠.

Replacing the vehicle battery

The battery in your vehicle is specially developed for its location, with special dimensions and safety features. Before buying a new battery, ask an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility what batteries are suitable with regard to electro-magnetic compatibility, dimensions, required maintenance, performance, and safety specifications.

Only use maintenance-free vehicle batteries meeting standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. These standards must date from October 2014 or later.

Particularly in vehicles with a special vehicle battery, for example, vehicles with the Start-stop system → page 146, *Start-stop system*, always replace the vehicle battery with a battery with the same specifications.

Have the battery replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the battery must be disconnected from the vehicle's electrical system, note the following:

— Switch off all electrical systems and devices and the ignition.

— Unlock the vehicle before disconnecting the battery; otherwise the alarm system will go off.

— First disconnect the negative cable (-) and then the positive cable (+) → ⚠.

Connecting the vehicle battery

— Prior to reconnecting the battery, switch off all electrical systems and devices and the ignition.

— Connect the positive cable (+) first and then the negative cable (-) → ⚠.

After the battery is connected and the ignition is switched on, different indicator lights may light up. They should go out after you drive a short distance at 10–12 mph (15–20 km/h). If the indicator lights do not go out, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the vehicle checked.

If the battery was disconnected for a long time, the next scheduled service may not be correctly calculated and displayed → page 15, *Instrument cluster*. The maximum permissible service and maintenance intervals are shown in the → *Warranty and Maintenance*.

Vehicles with Keyless Access

If the ignition will not start after reconnecting the vehicle battery, lock the vehicle from the outside and unlock it again → page 89, *Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access*. Then try to start the ignition again. If the ignition cannot be switched on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop for assistance.

Automatic electrical load deactivation

If the vehicle battery drain is high, the intelligent onboard electrical system management automatically takes steps to help prevent battery drain.

— The idle speed is increased so that the alternator provides more power.

— The power to devices that consume a lot of electricity is cut back or switched off completely.

— When the engine is started, the power supply to the 12 Volt sockets is temporarily interrupted.

The onboard electrical system management cannot always keep the battery from being drained. For example, the battery will drain if the engine is not running, but the ignition is switched on or the parking lights are left on for a long time when parked.

What drains the vehicle battery?

— Long periods when the engine is not running, especially when the ignition is on.

— Using electrical systems or devices when the engine is switched off.

— Leaving the vehicle unlocked for several days when not in use.

— Leaving the selector lever for a long period of time in any position other than Park **(P)** when the ignition is switched off → page 149, *Automatic or DSG® transmission selector lever*.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to use the proper battery with proper mounting and connections may cause short circuits, fires, and serious personal injuries.

- Always use only maintenance-free or cycle-free, leak-proof batteries with the same specifica-

tions and dimensions as the original equipment battery. Specifications are listed on the battery housing.

WARNING

When the vehicle battery is charged, it produces highly explosive hydrogen gas.

- Charge vehicle batteries only in well-ventilated areas.
- Never charge a frozen or thawed battery. A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around +32 °F (0 °C).
- You must replace the vehicle battery if it was frozen.
- Incorrectly connected cables can cause a short-circuit. First connect the positive cable (+) and then the negative cable (-).

NOTICE

- Never disconnect the vehicle battery or connect 2 vehicle batteries to each other when the ignition is switched on or the engine is running. Doing this may damage the electrical system or electronic components.
- Never use a vehicle battery that does not meet the specifications for the vehicle battery for your vehicle. Using the wrong battery can damage the electrical system or electronic components and cause electrical malfunctions.
- Never connect power generating equipment, such as a solar panel or battery charger, to the 12 Volt socket in order to charge the vehicle battery. This can damage the vehicle's electrical system.

Dispose of the vehicle battery according to regulations. Vehicle batteries contain poisonous substances such as sulfuric acid and lead.

Battery acid can pollute the environment. Catch leaking operating fluids and dispose of them properly. ◁

Tips and troubleshooting

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice and on page 256.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

Alternator malfunction

— Switch off unnecessary electrical loads. The vehicle battery will not be charged by the alternator as you drive.

— See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Have the electrical system checked.

WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage. ◁

5GM012723ST

Tires and wheels

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Introduction

Your vehicle's Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) uses the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) sensors to indirectly check the tire pressure of all 4 tires while you are driving. The sensors monitor the tread circumference (rolling circumference) and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. TPMS warns if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires while the vehicle is moving. Pressure loss is signaled by the indicator light (!) (described below) as well as by acoustic warnings and text warnings in the instrument cluster display if your vehicle has this display Infotainment system or the Multi-Function Display (MFD).

The original benchmark pressure is the recommended maximum load cold tire inflation pressure for the tires that come with your vehicle. This pressure is listed on the tire pressure label on the driver door jamb → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*. After adjusting the tire pressures in all 4 tires, you must confirm and store the new cold inflation pressures through the Infotainment system, which changes the benchmark pressure to match the current pressure of the tires on your vehicle → page 265, *Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

Recalibrating the TPMS to reset the benchmark cold tire inflation pressure is explained on → page 265, *Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can cause sudden tire failure, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury or even death.

- When the warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster, stop and inspect the tires.
- Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle and stopping ability.
- Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tire pressures for all tires on the vehicle. The recommended tire pressure values are listed on a sticker inside the driver door → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.
- The TPMS can only work correctly when all tires on the vehicle are filled to the correct cold tire inflation pressure.
- Using incorrect tire pressure values can cause accidents or other

damage. Always inflate the tires to the correct specified cold tire pressure values for the tires installed on the vehicle.

- Always maintain correct cold tire inflation pressure so that TPMS can do its job.
- Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.
- Driving with underinflated tires causes them to flex (bend) more, letting them get too hot, resulting in tread separation, sudden tire failure, and loss of control.
- Excessive speed and/overloading can cause heat buildup, sudden tire failure, and loss of control.
- If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tire is not "flat" and you do not have to change a wheel immediately, drive carefully and at reduced speed to the nearest service station to check the tire pressure and add air as required.
- When replacing tires or wheel rims on vehicles equipped with TPMS always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS regarding → page 269, *Important information on tires and wheels*.
- The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.

⚠ WARNING

Improper recalibration can cause the TPMS to give false warnings or to give no warning despite dangerously low tire pressure → page 265, *Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

Underinflation increases fuel consumption and tire wear.

Do not rely solely on the Tire Pressure Monitoring System. Check your tires regularly to make sure they are properly inflated and have no signs of damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and blisters. Remove any objects that become embedded in the tire tread but have not penetrated into the body of tire itself.

When you take delivery of the vehicle, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is calibrated for the factory-recommended cold tire inflation pressure for the tires on your vehicle, as shown on the label inside the driver door → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.

– The system must be recalibrated through the Infotainment system whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstal-

5GM012723ST

led or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change → page 265, *Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

– If you have to adjust the tire pressure on a warm tire, fill the tire with 2.0 - 4.35 psi (20 - 30 kPa) more than the pressure specified on the tire pressure label inside the driver door → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.

– At the next opportunity, check and adjust the tire pressure on all 4 tires when they are cold. Cold tires are tires that have not been driven more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speed within the last 3 hours. Then be sure to recalibrate the TPMS.

– If the TPMS determines that the air pressure in at least one tire is too low, carefully check the pressure in all 4 tires with an accurate tire pressure gauge. Low tire pressure usually cannot be determined by looking at the tire. This is especially true of low-profile tires.

If you have work done on your wheels or tires, inform the workshop that the vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

New tires may expand slightly the first time they are driven at high speeds, which can trigger a tire pressure warning. Remember that tire pressure can only be properly measured when the tire is "cold" → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.

Only replace old tires with tires that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. ◁

Indicator light (telltale)

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 260.

Lights up	Possible cause or meaning → ⚠	Proper response
	Lights up and a chime may also sound. The inflation pressure of one or more tires is significantly lower than the benchmark pressure set by the driver or a tire has structural damage. Depending on vehicle equipment, a message may also appear in the instrument cluster display.	**Stop safely as soon as possible!** Reduce speed immediately! Avoid fast cornering and hard braking! Check the condition and inflation pressure of all tires. Have damaged tires replaced.

Flashes	Possible cause or meaning → ⚠	Proper response
	Flashes for about a minute and then stays on: System malfunction.	Check and, if necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure in all four tires. If the tire pressure is correct, switch the ignition off and back on. If the indicator light flashes again and then stays on or does not go out after checking and adjusting the air pressure in all four tires and recalibrating, take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Have the system checked.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can cause sudden tire failure, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury, or even death.

5GM012723ST

- When the warning symbol (!) appears in the instrument cluster, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and inspect all tires.
- Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle and its stopping ability.
- Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tire pressures for all tires on the vehicle. The recommended tire pressure values are listed on a sticker inside the driver door → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.
- The TPMS can only work correctly when all tires on the vehicle are filled to the correct cold tire inflation pressure. Always maintain the correct cold tire inflation pressure so that TPMS can do its job.
- Using incorrect tire pressure values can cause accidents or other damage. Check the pressure in all 4 tires when the tires are still cold. Never reduce air pressure in warm tires to match cold tire inflation pressure.
- Always inflate the tires to the correct specified cold tire pressure values for the tires installed on the vehicle; see the tire inflation pressure label on the driver door jamb → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.
- Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.
- Driving with underinflated tires causes them to flex (bend) more, letting them get too hot, which can result in tread separation, sudden tire failure, and loss of control.
- Excessive speed and/or overloading can cause heat buildup, sudden tire failure, and loss of control.
- If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tire is not “flat” and you do not have to change the tire or wheel immediately, drive at reduced speed to the nearest service station to check the tire pressure and add air as required.
- When replacing tires or wheel rims on vehicles equipped with TPMS, always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS in the section → page 269, *Important information on tires and wheels*.
- The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are

identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change → page 265, *Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

⚠ WARNING

Improper recalibration can cause the TPMS to give false warnings or to give no warning despite dangerously low tire pressure → page 265, *Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

If the ignition is switched on, an acoustic warning sounds when low tire pressure is detected. An acoustic warning also sounds if a system malfunction is detected.

Driving for a longer period of time on rough roads or with a dynamic and sporty style can make the TPMS system temporarily unavailable. The indicator light will come on, signaling a malfunction, but will go out again once the road condition or driving style changes. ◁

Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 260.

Your vehicle's Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indirectly checks the tire pressure of all 4 tires while you are driving by using the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) sensors to monitor the tread circumference (rolling circumference) and vibration characteristics of the individual tires.

The tread circumference of a tire can change:

- If a tire's inflation pressure is too low.
- If the tire's tread is damaged or the tire is structurally damaged.
- If one side of the vehicle is more heavily loaded than the other.
- If there is more weight on one axle than the other (such as when towing a trailer).

5GM012723ST

– If a compact spare wheel has been mounted.
– If a wheel was replaced on each axle.
– If a tire was changed.
– If the tire pressure was changed, or wheels were rotated or replaced.
– If there are snow chains on the tires. Using snow chains can cause the system to give false warnings because snow chains increase tire circumference.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (!) may not react at first or may not react at all when you are driving in a sporty manner, or on snow-covered or unpaved roads, when you are driving with snow chains, or in certain other situations. A change in the tread circumference of a tire is signaled by the Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator in the instrument cluster (telltale).

The tire pressure recommended for the tires originally installed on the vehicle is on a sticker on the driver door jamb → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Resetting and recalibrating the benchmark tire pressure

Resetting the tire pressures in the Infotainment system resets the benchmark tire pressure used by the TPMS to the current tire pressure in the tires based on the circumference of the tires.

– Switch on the ignition.
– Press the MENU Infotainment button → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.
– **OR:** Press the CAR Infotainment button → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.
– Tap the Vehicle and function keys to open the **Vehicle settings** menu.
– Tap the Tires function key.
– Tap the SET function key in the **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** menu.
– If all 4 wheels are set to the correct values, tap the Confirm function key to store the tire pressures.
– Tapping the Cancel function key will prevent the current tire pressures from being stored and the system will not be recalibrated.

The recalibration must be performed each time the tire pressure in one or more tires has been adjusted or after one or more tires has been changed, exchanged, or repaired. The new tire pressures are stored in the system only after at least 20 minutes of normal driving.

If you have reset the benchmark tire pressure when your tires do not have the correct tire pressure, this will prevent the TPMS from working properly. It may then give false warnings or may not give any warning even if the tire pressure is too low.

For this reason, it is vital to make certain that all 4 tires are inflated to the correct pressure when they are cold before calibrating the system. Cold tires are tires that have not been driven more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speed within the last 3 hours.

During normal vehicle operation, the system calibrates itself to the tires installed and the changed tire pressures. The calibrated values are stored and monitored after a long journey at various speeds.

If the wheels are loaded more heavily than normal, for example, if the

5GM012723ST

vehicle is carrying heavy load, the tire pressure must be raised to the recommended full-load tire pressure before recalibaration → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.

Recalibrate the system to reset the benchmark TPMS pressure in the following situations:

- After installing tires on your vehicle that have recommended cold tire inflation pressures that are different from the tires that were taken off.
- After any tire on your vehicle is removed and then remounted, even if the same tire and wheel rim that were taken off are reinstalled (for instance, after repair).
- After any tire on your vehicle is changed and replaced by another tire, even if the replacement tire is the same type and is inflated to the same pressure as the tire it replaced.
- After adjusting the tire pressure of any tire on the vehicle to its correct cold tire inflation pressure, either by putting air in one or more tires or by letting air out. Do this even though air was only added (or let out) to bring the tire to the inflation pressure it should have had all along.
- After rotating the front and rear wheels → page 271, *Tire and wheel handling*.
- After mounting the compact spare wheel.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect recalibration can cause the TPMS to give false warnings or to give no warning despite dangerously low tire pressure. Make certain the tire inflation pressure of all tires is correct before recalibrating the system.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressure can cause sudden tire failure, loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- Always check and correct air pressure in all 4 tires, particularly after changing, exchanging, or repairing tires.
- After that, always make sure that all 4 tires are inflated to the correct tire pressure for the tires installed on the vehicle. Then recalibrate the system so that it can properly monitor the pressure in the tire.
- See the tire pressure label → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure* and the Owner's Literature for recommended cold tire inflation pressure and other important information.
- When replacing tires or wheel rims, always read and heed all of the information and WARNINGS → page 269, *Important information on tires and wheels*.
- The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the

vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System stops working if there is an ESC/ABS malfunction → page 191, *Braking assistance systems*.

After a low tire pressure warning, the vehicle must stand and must not be driven for at least 1 minute before the new benchmark tire pressures can be stored. ◁

Important information on tires and wheels

Introduction

Volkswagen recommends that all work on tires and wheels be done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. They are familiar with the technical requirements and recommended procedures, have the necessary special tools and spare parts, and can properly dispose of old tires.

WARNING

New tires or tires that are old, worn or damaged cannot provide maximum control and braking performance.

- Improper care and handling of tires and wheels can reduce driving safety and cause accidents and severe injuries.
- Install only radial tires of the same make, the same dimensions (tread circumference), and similar tread profile on all 4 wheels.
- New tires tend to be slippery and must be broken in. Always drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km) to help reduce the risk of losing control, a collision, and serious personal injuries.
- Check tire inflation pressure regularly when the tires are cold and always maintain the prescribed tire pressure. Low tire pressure can cause tires to get too hot, resulting in tread separation, sudden loss of pressure, and blowouts. Tires with excessively low pressure flex (bend) more, which can cause the tire to overheat and fail suddenly without warning.
- Check tires regularly for wear and damage.
- Never drive with worn or damaged tires (for example, tires with punctures, cuts, cracks, blisters, or bumps). Driving with worn or damaged tires can lead to loss of vehicle control, sudden tire failure including blowouts and sudden deflation, crashes, and serious personal injuries.
- Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.

5GM012723ST

- Never exceed the maximum speed rating or the maximum load rating of the tires on your vehicle.
- The effectiveness of the driver assistance systems and the braking support systems depends on the tire traction.
- If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the wheels and tires for damage.
- To reduce the risk of losing control, crashes, and serious personal injuries, never loosen the bolts on wheels with bolted rim rings.
- Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their past use. Old, used tires and wheels may have damage that cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.
- Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds, causing loss of vehicle control, accidents, and severe personal injuries. Tires that are more than 6 years old can be used only in an emergency and even then only with special care and at low speed.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly tightened or missing wheel bolts can come loose while driving, causing loss of vehicle control, collisions, and serious personal injuries.

- Never drive with missing or loose wheel bolts.
- Only use wheel bolts that are designed for your vehicle and for the wheel being installed.
- Always tighten the wheel bolts to the correct tightening torque. If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the wheel bolts with a lug wrench and have the torque checked as soon as possible by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

For technical reasons it is usually not possible to use wheel rims from other vehicles. Even wheel rims from the same model may not fit properly. Check with an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility if necessary. ◁

Tire and wheel handling

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

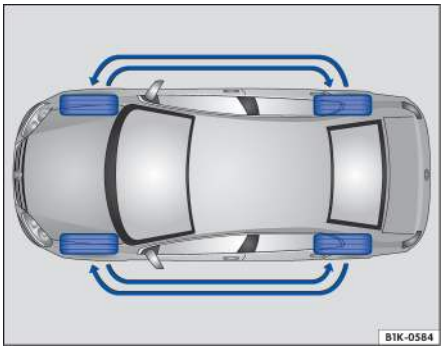


Fig. 175 Tire rotation diagram.

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle. Tires are very important, since their small patches of rubber are the only contact between your vehicle and the road.

Maintaining correct tire pressure, making sure that your vehicle and its tires do not have to carry more weight than they can safely handle, and regularly inspecting tires for damage (such as cuts, slashes, irregular wear, and overall condition) are the most important things that you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure, including tread separation and blowout.

The tires and wheels are essential parts of the vehicle's design. The tires and wheels approved by Volkswagen are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle for good road holding and safe handling when in good condition and properly inflated.

Avoiding tire damage

- If you must drive over a curb or other obstacle, drive very slowly and as much as possible at a right angle to the curb with the tire tread of both front wheels contacting the curb at the same time.
- Regularly check tires for damage, such as punctures, cuts, tears and blisters.
- Remove embedded material in the tread profile that **has not yet penetrated the inside of the tire** → page 280, *Tire wear and damage*.
- Heed all warning messages from the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) → page 260, *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.
- Replace worn or damaged tires immediately → page 280, *Tire wear and damage*.
- Damage to tires and wheels is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibration or the vehicle pulls to one side, this may indicate that one of the tires is damaged. The tires must be checked immediately for **hidden damage** by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. See also → page 280, *Tire wear and damage*.

5GM012723ST

– Never exceed the load and permissible maximum speed rating of the tires → page 284, *Tire labeling*.
– Always keep aggressive chemicals including grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid off the tires, including the compact spare wheel → ⚠.
– Replace missing valve caps immediately.

Unidirectional tires

Unidirectional tires are designed to rotate only in one direction. Unidirectional tires have arrows on the sidewalls that show the direction of rotation → page 284, *Tire labeling*. Unidirectional tires must always be mounted according to the specified direction of rotation in order to deliver their best grip, braking performance, low road noise, and good wear as well as good hydroplaning resistance.

If you have to mount a tire opposite to its proper direction of rotation, you must drive more carefully, since the tire is no longer being used as designed. This is particularly important on wet roads. You must replace or remount the tire as soon as possible in order to restore the correct direction of rotation.

Rotating tires

To help ensure even wear on all tires, regular tire rotation according to the diagram → fig. 175 is recommended. In this way all tires can have about the same service life.

Volkswagen recommends that you have your tires rotated by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Tires more than 6 years old

Tires age even if they are not being used. Physical and chemical processes reduce tire strength and performance and cause them to harden and become brittle. Old tires can fail suddenly and without warning.

Volkswagen recommends replacing tires that are 6 years and older. This also applies to tires that look new (including the tire on the compact spare wheel) or that seem to still be usable with tread depth that has not yet reached the legal minimum depth → ⚠.

The age of each tire can be determined with the manufacturing date that is part of the U.S. DOT tire identification number (**TIN**) → page 284, *Tire labeling*.

Tire storage

Mark tires before removing them to help make sure that the previous location (left, right, front, rear) and rolling direction can be maintained when remounting them. Store tires in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. Do **not** store tires mounted on wheels standing up.

Tires not mounted on wheels should be covered to help protect them from dirt and stored vertically (sitting on the tread).

Lower profile tires (low aspect ratio tires)

Lower profile tires have a wider tread surface, larger rim diameter, and lower sidewalls than conventional wheel/tire combinations → ⓘ. Lower profile tires can improve the vehicle's handling and precision. They may, however, result in a less comfortable ride, for example, on uneven road surfaces.

⚠ WARNING

Aggressive fluids and materials can cause visible and invisible tire damage that can cause tire blowouts.

- Always keep chemicals, oils, grease, fuels, braking fluids and other aggressive substances away from tires.

⚠ WARNING

Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds, causing loss of vehicle control, accidents, and severe personal injuries.

- Tires that are more than 6 years old can be used only in an emergency and even then only with special care and at low speed.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Tires and rims, especially lower profile tires and their rims, can be severely damaged and even destroyed by driving through potholes or over curbs and other obstacles.

Always dispose of old tires in accordance with legal requirements. ◁

Wheel rims and bolts

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

The design of the wheel bolts is matched to the factory-installed wheels. If different wheels are installed, wheel bolts with the right length and bolt head shape must be used. This helps to ensure that wheels can be mounted securely and that the brakes will work correctly → page 299, *Changing a wheel*.

In most cases, you cannot use wheel bolts from a different vehicle. Even wheel rims from the same model may not fit properly.

Tires and wheel rims approved by Volkswagen have been matched precisely to your vehicle model and contribute considerably to good handling and safe vehicle performance.

The wheel bolt tightening torque must be checked regularly with an accurate torque wrench.

Tightening torque

Wheel bolts must always be installed with the correct tightening torque → page 299, *Changing a wheel*. The required tightening torque for your vehicle's wheel bolts is **88 ft-lbs**

5GM012723ST

(120 Nm). After changing a wheel, the bolt torque must be checked as soon as possible with an accurate torque wrench. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Wheel rims with bolted rim rings

Wheel rims with bolted rim rings have several parts. The parts are bolted together with special screws in a special process. This helps to ensure that they will work properly, prevent leaks, run true and safely. Damaged wheel rims must be replaced, and you must never take them apart or try to repair them yourself. Have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility repair them for you → ⚠.

Wheel rims with bolted decorative covers

Light-alloy wheels may have interchangeable decorative covers attached to the rim with self-locking screws. If you want to replace damaged wheel covers, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Using improper or damaged wheel rims can affect driving safety, cause accidents and severe personal injury.

- Use only wheel rims approved for the vehicle.
- Regularly check wheel rims for damage and replace them if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

Improper loosening and tightening of the bolts on wheel rims with bolted rim rings can cause accidents and severe personal injury.

- Never loosen bolted connections on wheel rims with bolted rim rings.
- Have all work on wheel rims with bolted rim rings performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. ◁

New and replacement tires

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

New tires

– Drive a vehicle with new tires especially carefully for the first 350 miles (560 km) because the tires must first be *broken in*. Tires that are not broken in have reduced traction and braking performance → ⚠.

– Install only radial tires of the same make, the same dimensions (tread circumference), and similar tread profile on all 4 wheels.

– The tread depth of new tires can differ between tire models and

manufacturers because of different design features and tread design.

Replacing tires

– Tires should be replaced in pairs and not individually (both front tires or both rear tires at the same time) → ⚠.
– Replace tires only with tires that have the same specifications, including width and diameter, load and top speed rating as the tires approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle and model.
– Never use tires that are larger or wider than the dimensions of the tires approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle and model. Larger tires could scrape and rub on the vehicle body or other parts of the vehicle.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) considerations: The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) must be recalibrated whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change → page 260, *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

⚠ WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must be broken in.

- Always drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km) to help reduce the risk of losing control, a collision, and serious personal injuries.

⚠ WARNING

Tires must have the required clearance. Tires that do not have enough clearance can rub against parts of the vehicle body, suspension, and brake system, causing brake system failure, tread delamination, and sudden blowouts.

- Always make sure that new tires are not larger than the tires approved for your vehicle and that the new tires do not rub against parts of the vehicle.

NOTICE

- When switching to different tires, make certain the valves are not damaged.
- Never drive without valve stem caps. The valves could be damaged.

Always dispose of old tires in accordance with legal requirements.

If the replacement wheel is different from the tires that you have mounted on your vehicle — for example, winter tires, wider, low-profile tires, or a compact spare — only use the replacement wheel for a short time and drive cautiously.

– Replace it with a tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.

5GM012723ST

Although tire size specifications can be the same, the actual dimensions may differ from those nominal values for different tire makes, or the tire contours may be significantly different. ◁

Tire inflation pressure

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

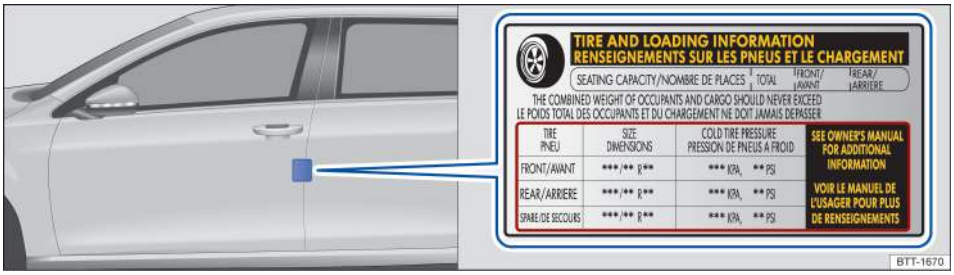


Fig. 176 On the driver door jamb: Location of the tire inflation pressure label.

The correct tire inflation pressure for the factory-installed tires is listed on a label. The factory-installed tires may be summer, winter, or all-season tires. The label → fig. 176 is on the driver door jamb.

Under- or over-inflation significantly shortens the service life of your tires and affects the handling of the vehicle → ⚠. The correct tire pressure is very important, particularly when the vehicle is driven at **higher speeds**. Incorrect tire pressure causes increased wear and even sudden tire failure and blowouts.

Therefore, tire pressure should be checked at least once a month and always before long trips.

The specified tire inflation pressure applies to a **cold tire**. When tires are warm, the pressure will be higher than when the tires are cold.

Do not reduce the tire pressure on warm tires to match the required cold tire inflation pressure. The tire inflation pressure would then be too low and could cause sudden tire failure and blowout.

Checking tire inflation pressure

Always check the tire pressure only on "cold" tires when the vehicle has not been driven more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speed within the last 3 hours.

– Check tire inflation pressure regularly and on cold tires. Check all the tires, including the compact spare, if any. In colder climates tire pressure should be checked more often, but only when the tires are

cold. Always use an accurate tire pressure gauge.

– After adjusting the tire inflation pressures, make sure to screw the valve caps back on; replace missing valve caps immediately. Please read and heed the information on resetting the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), if necessary → page 260, *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

– Remember that the vehicle manufacturer, not the tire manufacturer, determines the correct tire pressure for the tires on your vehicle. Never exceed the maximum inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall for any reason.

Inflate a **spare wheel** to the pressure specified for the vehicle's road wheels on the tire pressure label; inflate a **compact spare wheel** to the pressure specified for the compact spare on the tire pressure label or on a separate label for the compact spare, if there is one.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressure can cause a sudden tire failure or blowout, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury, and even death.

- Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct cold tire pressure before driving off.
- Low tire pressure can cause tires to get too hot, resulting in tread separation, sudden loss of pressure, and blowouts. Tires with excessively low pressure flex (bend) more, which can cause the tire to overheat and fail suddenly without warning.
- Excessive speed and/or overloading can cause heat buildup, sudden tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.
- If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- Regularly check tire inflation pressure, at least once a month, and also especially before a long trip.
- Check the pressure in all 4 tires when the tires are still cold. Never reduce air pressure in warm tires to match cold tire inflation pressure.

NOTICE

- Make sure not to jam the tire pressure gauge into the valve stem. Otherwise, you can damage the tire valves.
- Driving without valve caps, with the wrong valve caps, or with valve caps that are not properly screwed on can damage the tire valves. To help prevent damage, always use valve stem caps like those originally installed at the factory. The caps must be screwed on tightly. Do not use metal valve caps or “comfort” valve stem caps.

Underinflation increases fuel consumption.

5GM012723ST

When the TPMS warns that the pressure in at least one tire is too low, check the tire pressure in all 4 tires with an accurate tire pressure gauge. Low tire pressure usually cannot be spotted by looking at the tire. This is especially true for low-profile tires. When checking the tire pressures, refer to → page 260, *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

Tire inflation pressure in cold tires

📖 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

Model	Tire size	Standard tire pressure (full load)		
		psi	kPa	bar
Golf	195/65 R15 91H	32	220	2.2
	205/55 R16 91H	32	220	2.2
	225/45 R17 91H	32	220	2.2
	225/40 R18 92H XL	35	240	2.4
Golf GTI	225/45 R17 91W	35	250	2.5
	225/45 R17 91H	35	250	2.5
	225/40 R18 92H XL	39	270	2.7
	225/40 R18 92Y XL	39	270	2.7

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is configured at the factory with the correct tire inflation pressure applicable for the vehicle model, engine and factory-installed tires. The tire inflation pressure is listed on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver door jamb → fig. 176. The tire inflation pressures for the road tires are listed on this label. The inflation pressure for the compact spare is as specified on the tire pressure label or on a separate label for the compact spare, if there is one. In the event of a discrepancy between the above figures and the tire pressures listed on the tire inflation pressure label, the pressures listed on the label are the ones you should use. The listed pressure applies to all road tires. The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) must be recalibrated whenever you change or adjust the cold tire inflation pressures or remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not

change → page 260, *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

Tread depth and tread wear indicators

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

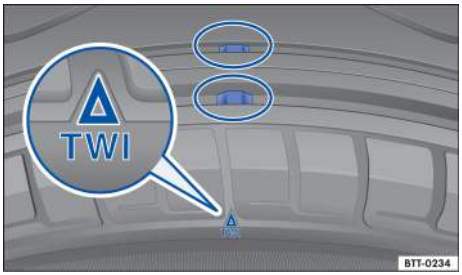


Fig. 177 Tread pattern: Wear indicator.

Tread depth

Most driving situations require as much tread depth as possible and similar tread depth for the tires on the front and rear wheels. This is especially true when driving in winter weather, at low temperatures and under wet conditions → ⚠.

In most countries the legally permissible minimum tread depth is 1/16 in. (1.6 mm), as measured in tread grooves next to the wear indicators. Please be sure to obey country-specific legal requirements.

Winter tires are no longer suitable for winter operation once the tread pattern is worn down to a depth of 3/16 in. (4.8 mm).

The tread depth of new tires can differ between tire models and manufacturers because of the different design features and tread patterns.

Make sure to use snow chains when required and to install them only on the approved tire and rim combinations → page 289, *Snow chains*.

Tread wear indicator (TWI) in the tire

The 1/16 in. (1.6 mm) high wear indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves of the original tires running across the treads → fig. 177. Several wear indicators are evenly spaced around the tire. Markings on the sides of the tires (for example "TWI" or symbols) show the position of the wear indicators.

Wear indicators show when the tires are worn down. The tires must be replaced no later than when the tread pattern is worn down to the wear indicators.

⚠ WARNING

Worn tires are dangerous and can cause loss of vehicle control including serious personal injuries.

- Never drive a vehicle when the tread on any tire is worn down to

5GM012723ST

the wear indicators, replace them sooner.

- Worn tires do not grip the road properly, especially on wet roads, increasing your risk of "hydroplaning" and loss of control.
- Worn tires reduce the ability of your vehicle to handle well in normal and difficult driving situations and increase braking distances and the risk of skidding.

Tire wear and damage

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

Wheel rim and tire damage is often difficult to see. Unusual **vibrations** or **pulling to one-side** can be an indication of tire damage → ⚠.

– If you suspect tire damage, immediately reduce speed!

– Check tires and wheel rims for damage.

– If a tire is damaged, do not drive any farther. Change the damaged wheel → page 299, *Changing a wheel*. If necessary, get expert assistance.

– If no external damage is visible, slowly and carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop and have the vehicle checked.

Objects embedded in the tire

– If embedded objects have penetrated to the inside of the tire, do not remove them! If objects are stuck in the tread grooves of the tire, they can be removed.

– If necessary, change the damaged wheel → page 299, *Changing a wheel*. If necessary, get professional assistance to change the wheel.

– Check tire pressure and adjust if necessary.

Tire wear

Tire wear depends on several factors, including:

– Driving style.

– Unbalanced wheels.

– Wheel alignment.

Driving style – Fast cornering, hard acceleration and braking increase tire wear. If you experience increased tire wear under normal driving conditions, have the vehicle suspension checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Unbalanced wheels – The wheels on a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, various conditions can cause a wheel to become unbalanced. Unbalanced wheels can cause wear to the steering and suspension systems. Have all wheels rebalanced. A wheel must always be rebalanced if a new tire has been mounted.

Wheel alignment – Incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive and uneven tire wear, impairing vehicle safety. If you notice excessive or uneven tire wear, have the wheel alignment checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Unusual vibrations or pulling to one side can indicate tire damage.

- Reduce speed immediately and stop when it is safe to do so.
- Check tires and wheel rims for damage.
- Never drive with a damaged tire or rim. Get expert assistance instead.
- If no external damage is visible, slowly and carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop and have the vehicle checked.

◁

Spare wheel or compact spare wheel

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

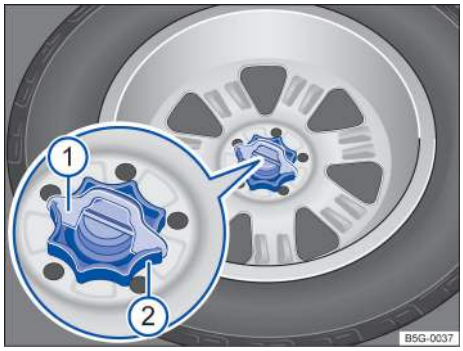


Fig. 178 In the luggage compartment: Handwheel holding the spare wheel in place (if equipped).

Fig. 179 In the luggage compartment: Compact spare wheel (label design may vary).

Removing the spare wheel or compact spare wheel (if applicable)

– Open the trunk lid and remove the variable luggage compartment

5GM012723ST

floor → page 215, *Variable luggage compartment floor*.

– Pull the securing clip → fig. 178 ① (if equipped) out and up.
– Completely unscrew the handwheel ② in the center of the spare wheel or compact spare wheel → fig. 179 counterclockwise.
– If applicable, remove the subwoofer → page 204, *Removing the subwoofer*.
– Remove the spare wheel.

Stowing the replaced wheel

– Open the trunk lid and remove the variable luggage compartment floor → page 215, *Variable luggage compartment floor*.
– If the wheel you took off the vehicle fits in the spare wheel well, position it so that the center hole of the rim is aligned with the threaded pin in the center of the well.
– Turn the handwheel → fig. 178 ② clockwise until the wheel is securely in place.
– Insert the securing clip ① (if equipped) in the stud slot so that the handwheel can no longer be turned.
– If necessary, return the vehicle tool kit to its location in the luggage compartment.
– Reinstall the variable luggage compartment floor in the luggage compartment.
– Close the trunk lid.

If the replaced wheel does not fit in the spare wheel well, stow it securely in the luggage compartment on top of the luggage compartment floor.

Differences between the road wheels and the compact spare

The compact spare wheel is different in design from the road wheels and must be used only in the event of a flat tire, only for a brief time, and only when driving with extra caution → ⚠.

Replace it with a tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.

Please heed the following:

– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h)!
– Avoid full-throttle acceleration, hard braking, and fast cornering!
– Do not use snow chains on the compact spare wheel → page 289, *Snow chains*.
– After installing the spare wheel or compact spare wheel, check the tire pressure as soon as possible → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.

Check the tire inflation pressure of the spare or compact spare whenever you check the tire pressure of the road wheels, at least once a month. Inflate a **spare wheel** to the cold tire pressure specified for the vehicle's road wheels on the tire pressure label; inflate a **compact spare wheel** to the cold tire pressure specified for

the compact spare on the tire pressure label or on a separate label for the compact spare, if there is one.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of a spare wheel or a compact spare wheel can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, and serious personal injury.

- Never use a spare wheel or compact spare wheel if it is damaged or worn down to the wear indicators.
- In some vehicles, the spare wheel or compact spare wheel is smaller than the original tire. A smaller compact spare wheel is identified with a sticker and the words "50 mph" or "80 km/h". This is the maximum permissible speed when driving with this tire.
- Never drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a compact spare wheel. Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering!
- Never drive more than 125 miles (200 km) if a compact spare wheel is installed.
- Replace the compact spare with a normal wheel and tire as soon as possible. Compact spare wheels are designed for brief use only.
- Regularly check the U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN) to determine the age of the compact spare wheel → page 284, *Tire labeling*. Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at higher speeds.
- Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.
- The compact spare wheel must always be secured with the wheel bolts provided by the factory.
- Never drive using more than one compact spare wheel.
- After installing the compact spare wheel, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible → page 276, *Tire inflation pressure*.
- Snow chains cannot be used on the compact spare wheel. If you must use snow chains and have a compact spare wheel mounted, move the compact spare wheel to the rear axle if a front tire has to be replaced. The tire taken off the rear axle can then be used to replace the flat front tire. Be sure you do not change the tire's direction of rotation. Install the snow chains on the full-sized road tire.

NOTICE

When the spare wheel or compact spare wheel is being used, the TPMS indicator light can light up after several minutes → page 260, *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

5GM012723ST

If possible, attach the spare wheel, the compact spare wheel, or the wheel you took off the vehicle securely in the luggage compartment. ◁

Tire labeling

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

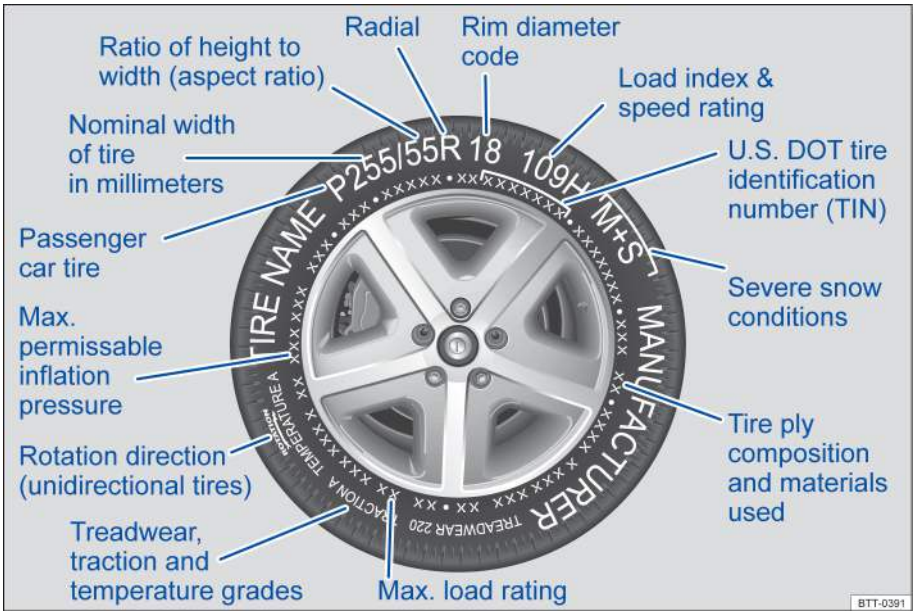


Fig. 180 International tire labeling.

Knowing about tire specifications makes it easier to choose the correct replacement tires. Radial tires have specifications marked on the sidewall.

Tire labeling (example)	Meaning
Brand, Logo	*Manufacturer*
Tire name	Individual tire designation of the manufacturer.

Tire labeling (example)	Meaning	
P255 / 55 R 18	Dimensions:	
	P	Tire application: Passenger car
	255	Nominal sidewall-to-sidewall width of tire in millimeters.
	55	Ratio of height to width (aspect ratio)
	R	Tire belt design letter code for radial.
	18	Rim diameter (in inches)
109 H	Load rating code → page 286 and speed rating code → page 287.	
XL	Indicates "reinforced" tire (heavy-duty)	
M+S *or* M/S	Indicates Mud and Snow capability (also M/S) → page 287.	
RADIAL TUBELESS	Tubeless radial tire.	
E4 ...	Labeling according to international regulations (E) including number of the approving country. The multi-digit approval number is listed next.	
DOT BT RA TY5 1709	Tire identification number (**TIN**) [a] – In some cases the manufacturing date is only on one side of the tire:	
	DOT	The tire complies with the requirements of the United States Department of Transportation, responsible for issuing safety standards.
	BT	Identification letter of the manufacturing site.
	RA	Manufacturer information regarding tire dimensions.
	TY5	Tire characteristics provided by the manufacturer.
	1709	Manufacturing date: 17th week in 2009.
TWI	Marks the position of the treadwear indicator → page 279.	
Made in Germany	Country of manufacture.	
MAX LOAD 615 KG (1356 LBS)	United States maximum load rating per wheel.	
MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 PSI)	United States maximum permissible inflation pressure.	
ROTATION	Rotation direction (unidirectional tires)	

5GM012723ST

Tire labeling (example)	Meaning
SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON	Tire ply composition and materials used: 1 layer of rayon.
TREAD 4 PLIES 1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON	Tire tread composition and materials used: In this example there are 4 layers under the tread: 1 layer of rayon, 2 layers of steel belt and 1 layer of nylon.
Consumer information regarding comparison to specified base tires (standardized test procedure) → page 297 , → ⚠:	
TREADWEAR 220	Relative service life expectancy of the tire referenced to a U.S.-specific standard test.
TRACTION A	Traction rating under wet conditions (AA, A, B or C).
TEMPERATURE A	Temperature stability of the tire at increased test bench speeds (A, B or C).
Additional numbers found on the tire could either be tire manufacturer internal labels or country-specific labels (such as for Brazil and China).	

[a] TIN represents the serial number of the tire.

Unidirectional tires

Unidirectional tires are designed to rotate only in one direction. Unidirectional tires have arrows on the sidewalls that show the direction of rotation. Make sure you mount the tire so that it rotates in the proper direction. The tire's performance with regard to hydroplaning, traction, noise, and wear is worse if it is not mounted in the proper direction of rotation.

If you have to mount a tire opposite to its proper direction of rotation, you must drive more carefully, since the tire is no longer being used as designed. This is particularly important on wet roads. You must replace or remount the tire as soon as possible in order to restore the correct direction of rotation.

Load rating code

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load per individual tire in pounds (kilograms).

91 1356 lbs (615 kg)
92 1388 lbs (630 kg)
93 1433 lbs (650 kg)
95 1521 lbs (690 kg)
97 1609 lbs (730 kg)
98 1653 lbs (750 kg)
99 1709 lbs (775 kg)
100 1763 lbs (800 kg)
101 1819 lbs (825 kg)
102 1874 lbs (850 kg)
103 1929 lbs (875 kg)
104 1984 lbs (900 kg)

110 2337 lbs (1060 kg)

Speed rating code letter

The speed rating code letter indicates the maximum permissible road speed of the tires.

P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 112 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)
Z	over 149 mph (over 240 km/h)

Some tire manufacturers label tires with a maximum permissible road speed above 149 mph (240 km/h) with the letter combination "ZR."

⚠ WARNING

Using incorrect or unmatched tires and/or wheels or improper tire and wheel combinations can lead to loss of control, collision and serious personal injury.

- Always use tires, wheels and wheel bolts that meet the specifications of the original factory-installed tires or other combinations that have been specifically approved by the vehicle manufacturer.
- All 4 wheels must be fitted with radial tires of the same type, the same size (tread circumference), and the same tread pattern. Driving with different tires reduces vehicle handling and can lead to a loss of control.
- Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the tires installed on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated speed can fail suddenly.
- Overloading tires can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.
- Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over- or underinflated. ◁

Winter tires

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

Winter tires improve the handling characteristics of your vehicle significantly when driving under wintry road conditions. Summer tires have less traction on snow and ice because of their design (width, rubber composition, tread design). Volkswagen strongly recommends that you always have winter tires or all-season tires installed on all 4 wheels on

5GM012723ST

your vehicle, especially when winter road conditions are expected. Winter tires also improve the vehicle's braking performance and help reduce stopping distances during winter weather. Volkswagen recommends installing winter tires once temperatures are below +45 °F (+7 °C).

Winter tires are no longer suitable for winter driving once the **tread pattern** is worn down to a depth of 3/16 in (4.8 mm). In addition, winter tire performance decreases with **age** – independent of the tread profile depth.

When using winter tires:

- Obey state and country-specific legal requirements.
- Install winter tires on all 4 wheels.
- Use winter tires only under wintry road conditions.
- Only use winter tires with dimensions approved for the vehicle.
- Use only winter tires of the same tire belt design, the same dimensions (tread circumference), and the same tread design.
- Follow speed restrictions according to the winter tire's speed rating code letter → ⚠.

Speed restrictions

Winter tires are certified up to a top speed identified by speed rating code letters on the sidewall → page 284, *Tire labeling*.

In appropriately equipped vehicles, the speed warning can be set and changed in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Top speed rating and tire inflation pressure for **V winter tires** depend on the engine installed in your vehicle. Be sure to ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about the maximum permissible speed and the required tire inflation pressure for the winter tires that you plan to use.

All-wheel drive (4MOTION)

Vehicles with all-wheel drive and standard road wheels have good forward motion and traction even under wintry road conditions. However, Volkswagen recommends installing winter tires or all season tires on *all* 4 wheels to improve handling as well as *braking performance*.

If you use **snow chains**, please read and heed information and directions → page 289, *Snow chains*.

⚠ WARNING

Driving faster than the maximum speed for which the winter tires on your vehicle were designed can cause sudden tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation, loss of control, crashes and serious personal injuries.

- Winter tires have a maximum speed rating that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed.

- Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the winter tires installed on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated speed can fail suddenly.
- Never exceed the maximum load rating for the winter tires installed on your vehicle.

Install summer tires promptly in the spring. Summer tires offer better handling characteristics for temperatures above +45 °F (+7 °C). They are quieter, do not wear as quickly, and can help reduce fuel consumption.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change → page 265, *Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

If necessary, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about permissible winter tire dimensions. ◁

Snow chains

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

Obey local regulations as well as the applicable speed limits when driving with snow chains.

Snow chains improve forward motion, traction and braking characteristics under wintry conditions.

Snow chains may be used **only on the front wheels** and only in tire and wheel combinations that have been approved by Volkswagen. This applies even to **all-wheel drive vehicles** (4MOTION).

Please contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about appropriate wheel, tire and snow chain dimensions.

If possible, use only chains with low profile links that are not thicker than 37/64 in. (15 mm) including the tensioner.

Remove center hubcaps and decorative rim rings before installing snow chains → ⓘ. However, for safety reasons, caps must be installed on the wheel bolts. These are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities.

Compact spare wheel

For technical reasons, snow chains cannot be used on the compact

5GM012723ST

spare wheel → page 281, *Spare wheel or compact spare wheel*.

If you must use snow chains and have a compact spare wheel mounted, move the compact spare wheel to the rear axle if a front tire has to be replaced. The tire taken off the rear axle can then be used to replace the flat front tire. Be sure to install the unidirectional tires so that they will run in the proper direction. Volkswagen recommends installing the snow chains before mounting the wheel to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong snow chains or installing snow chains improperly can cause accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Always use the proper snow chains.
- Follow the installation instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Never exceed the permissible speed limit when driving with snow chains.

NOTICE

- Remove snow chains when roads are free of snow. Otherwise, the chains can damage the tires, impair vehicle handling and can be quickly worn down.
- Snow chains can scratch or damage wheel rims if they have direct contact with the rims. Volkswagen recommends using coated snow chains. ◁

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

Accessory weight

The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic or DSG transmission, electro-mechanical power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

The ratio of sidewall height to tire width, expressed as a percentage. A number of 50 (0.5:1 or 50%) means that the cross-sectional height is 50% of the tread width. A shorter sidewall can improve steering response and provide better overall handling, for example, on dry pavement.

Bead
The part of a tire made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords, with the shape and structure to ensure proper fit to the wheel rim.

Bead separation
A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Carcass
The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load.

Chunking
The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall.

Cord
The strands of material forming the plies in the tire.

Cord separation
The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds.

Cracking
Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or inner liner of the tire extending to cord material.

Cold tire inflation pressure
The tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a specified size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the 3 hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight
The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioner, and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire
A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)
The load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured where the tire contacts the ground.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)
The maximum loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove
The space between 2 adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)
The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating
The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight
The total of:

– Curb weight.

– Accessory weight.

5GM012723ST

– Vehicle capacity weight.
– Production options weight.

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure
The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight
Means 150 lbs (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution
The placement of passengers in a vehicle.

Outer diameter
The diameter of a new, properly inflated tire.

Overall width
Total width measured at the exterior sidewalls of an inflated tire, including the additional width of labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Passenger car tire
A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 pounds or less.

Ply
A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Ply separation
A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies.

Pneumatic tire
A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric, and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load.

Production options weight
The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs (2.3 kg) more than the standard items they replace, and not previously considered as curb weight or accessory weight. These include, for example, heavy-duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy-duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tires
A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure
The tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a specified size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the 3 hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Reinforced tire
A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pres-

sures than the corresponding standard tire.

Rim

The outer edge of a wheel upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

The nominal diameter of the wheel's tire bead seating surface. If you change your wheel size, to wheels of a different diameter, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheels.

Rim size

Designation means rim diameter and width.

Rim type designation

The industry or manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code.

Rim width

The nominal distance between wheel rim flanges.

Section width

The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling decoration, or protective bands.

Sidewall

The portion of a tire between the bead and the tread.

Sidewall separation

The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall.

Speed rating (letter code)

A standardized letter code indicating the maximum speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) "P" to 186 mph (300 km/h) "Y".

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall → page 284, *Tire labeling*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

A system that detects when at least one of a vehicle's tires is underinflated and illuminates a low tire-pressure warning light.

Tread

The portion of a tire that normally touches the road.

Tread rib

A tread section running circumferentially around a tire.

Tread separation

Tire failure caused by the tread pulling away from the tire carcass.

Tread wear indicators (TWI)

Raised areas within the main tread grooves that show, visually, when tires are worn and near the end of their useful life → page 279, *Tread depth and tread wear indicators*.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG)

A tire information system developed by the U.S. National Highway Traffic

5GM012723ST

Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers compare tires. UTQG is not a safety rating, nor is it a guarantee that a tire will last for a certain number of miles or perform a certain way. It gives tire buyers more information to compare with factors such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in 3 areas: tread wear, traction and temperature resistance. UTQG information is molded into the tire sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

A tire's serial number. It begins with the letters "DOT" ("Department of Transportation") and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next 2 numbers or letters indicate the plant where the tire was manufactured. The last 4 numbers represent the week and year of manufacture.

For example, the numbers 1709 mean that the tire was produced in the 17th week of 2009. Any other numbers are marketing codes used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to help identify affected consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

The total rated cargo, luggage and passenger load. Passenger load is 150 lbs (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's total seating capacity (as listed on the label inside the driver door).

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

The load on an individual tire that is determined by taking each axle's share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight (GAWR) and dividing by 2.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

The load on an individual tire that is determined by taking each axle's share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed according to the table below) and dividing by 2.

Wheel size designation

Wheel rim diameter and width.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2, 3, or 4	2	2 in front
5	3	2 in front, 1 in back

Tires and vehicle load limits

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

There are limits to the load any vehicle or any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can damage important parts of the vehicle. Overloading can also lead to blowout, sudden loss of pressure or other tire failure that can cause loss of control.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)**.

The GVWR includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory-installed and other accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry (seating capacity) with an assumed weight of 150 lbs (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle.

The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) is the maximum load that can be carried at each of the vehicle's 2 axles (by the front or rear tires). GVWR and GAWR are listed on the safety compliance label on the driver door jamb. Because there is an upper limit to your vehicle's total weight (GVWR), the weight of whatever is being carried is also limited. More passengers, or passengers who are heavier than the assumed 150 lbs (68 kg), mean that less weight can be carried as luggage or other cargo. The tire pressure label on your Volkswagen also lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.
- The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle in a safe distance.
- Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.
- Always make sure that the total load being transported does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. ◁

5GM012723ST

Determining the correct load limit

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

Never overload tires. The following example illustrates how to determine the combined weight of all vehicle occupants and luggage or other vehicle payloads. Never overload the vehicle!

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit:	
1.	Locate the statement “THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS” on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) → page 276.
2.	Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3.	Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4.	The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5.	Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6.	If your vehicle is capable of towing a trailer: The load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.
	Check the tire sidewall to determine the load index specified for the tire. ◁

UTQG classification

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 269.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and maximum section width. Example:

– Treadwear (number)

– Traction: AA, A, B or C

– Temperature: A, B or C

For example: Treadwear 200, Traction AA, Temperature A.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 (Treadwear-value 150) would wear one-and-one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance → ⚠.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat, and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

5GM012723ST

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. ◁

Wheel trim

Introduction

WARNING

Unsuitable wheel covers and improper installation of wheel covers can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Improperly installed wheel covers can come loose while driving and endanger other motorists and cyclists.
- Do not use damaged wheel covers.
- Always make sure that the flow of air for brake system cooling is not blocked or reduced before installing wheel covers. This applies to both factory-installed wheel covers and aftermarket wheel covers. Insufficient air supply may significantly increase stopping distance.

NOTICE

To help prevent damage to the vehicle, be careful when removing wheel covers and be sure to install them properly. ◁

Hubcaps

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 298.

Fig. 181 Pulling the hubcap off.

Fig. 182 Twisting the hubcap off.

The hubcaps are designed to protect the wheel bolts and should be installed again after a wheel change.

Depending on the vehicle model, the hubcaps can either be pulled off → fig. 181 or removed by twisting → fig. 182.

Vehicles with pull-off hubcaps

— *To remove:* Take the wire clip out of vehicle tool kit and hook it into one of the holes in the hubcap → fig. 181.

— Pull the hubcap off in the direction of the arrow.

— *To install:* Press the hubcap against the rim until it latches.

Vehicles with twist-off hubcaps

— *To remove:* Twist the hubcap to the left or right until it loosens from the wheel rim → fig. 182.

— Grasp behind one of the lugs and pull the hubcap off.

— *To install:* Push the hubcap onto the center of the rim.

— Press the hubcap against the rim until it latches. ◁

Wheel covers

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 298.

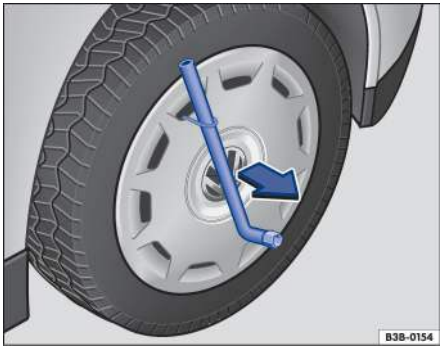


Fig. 183 Pulling the wheel cover off.

Pulling off the wheel cover

— Take the lug wrench (if equipped) and wire clip out of the vehicle tool kit → page 227, *Vehicle tool kit*.

— Place the wire clip hook in one of the openings of the wheel cover.

— Slide the lug wrench through the clip → fig. 183 and pull the wheel cover off in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the wheel cover

— Screw the anti-theft wheel bolt (if equipped) into position → fig. 186 ② or ③ in relation to the position of the tire valve. Otherwise, the wheel cover cannot be installed.

— Align the valve cutout with the valve → fig. 186 ①, and press the wheel cover onto the wheel rim.

Make sure that the wheel cover is latched onto the rim along the entire circumference. ◁

Wheel bolt caps

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ and ⓘ on page 298.

Fig. 184 Pulling cover caps off wheel bolts.

— Take the wire clip out of the vehicle tool kit → page 227, *Vehicle tool kit*.

— Insert the wire clip through the opening of the cover cap → fig. 184 and pull off in the direction of the arrow.

The caps are designed to protect the wheel bolts and should be installed again after the wheel change.

The **anti-theft wheel bolt** (if equipped) has a separate cap. This only fits the anti-theft wheel bolt, but not the standard wheel bolts. ◁

Changing a wheel

🕮 Introduction

Change a wheel by yourself only if the vehicle is parked in a safe location, you are familiar with safety procedures and the technical steps, and you have proper tools available. Otherwise, get expert assistance.

The vehicle jack can only be safely used to change the wheel on a vehicle that has **only one** flat or damaged tire. If the vehicle does not have the support it needs from 3 fully inflated tires, the vehicle can fall off the jack. If more than 1 tire on the vehicle is flat or damaged, do not lift the vehicle with the vehicle jack. Instead, get expert assistance.

5GM012723ST

⚠ WARNING

Changing a wheel, especially on the side of the road, can be dangerous. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to change the wheel.
- Always make sure that all passengers, especially children, are in a safe place outside the vehicle and away from the vehicle and traffic (such as behind a guard rail).
- Turn on the emergency flashers and set up another warning device about 25 yards (25 meters) behind the vehicle to warn approaching traffic.
- Change a wheel by yourself only if you are familiar with the necessary steps. Otherwise, get expert assistance.
- Always make sure that the ground is level and firm. If necessary, place the jack on a large and sturdy board or on a similar ground support.
- Always use proper and undamaged tools when changing a wheel.
- Never loosen the screws on rims with threaded rim rings.
- After changing a wheel, check the wheel bolt tightening torque with an accurate torque wrench.
- After changing a wheel or tire, reset the Tire Pressure Monitoring System → page 260, *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

⚠ WARNING

Sudden vehicle movement when changing a tire can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injury. Only placing the transmission in Park (P) (automatic or DSG transmission) or in any gear (manual only) will not prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly when one wheel is off the ground. Before raising the vehicle:

- *Automatic or DSG transmission:* Always shift the transmission to Park (P), firmly apply the parking brake, stop the engine, and remove the key from the vehicle.
- *Manual transmission:* Firmly apply the parking brake, stop the engine and remove the key from the vehicle, and shift to any gear.
- Always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed with chocks or other similar things.

◁

Preparations for changing a wheel

🕮 Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 299.

Checklist

Getting ready to change a wheel. Follow these steps in the order listed here → ⚠:

1. If you have a flat tire, move as far away from traffic as possible. Park the vehicle on a flat and level surface where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.
2. Switch on the emergency flashers to warn oncoming traffic → page 84, *In an emergency*. Observe all legal requirements.
3. *Automatic or DSG transmission:* Shift the transmission to Park **(P)** → page 149, *Automatic or DSG® transmission selector lever*.
4. Set the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving → page 178, *Using the parking brake (Golf, Golf GTI)*.
5. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button and remove the key from the vehicle → page 141, *Starting and stopping the engine*.
6. *Manual transmission:* Shift into a gear → page 147, *Manual transmission*.
7. Have all passengers exit and go to a safe place, such as behind a guard rail.
8. Block the diagonally opposite wheel with chocks or other suitable things.
9. If the luggage compartment is loaded: Remove the luggage.
10. Raise and secure the luggage compartment floor.
11. If applicable: Remove the subwoofer → page 204, *Removing the subwoofer*.
12. Unscrew the fastening screw with washer counterclockwise and remove.
13. Take the spare or compact spare wheel and the vehicle tool kit out of the luggage compartment.
14. Take off the wheel covers → page 298, *Wheel trim*.

⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense. ◁

Wheel bolts

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 299.

Fig. 185 Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts.

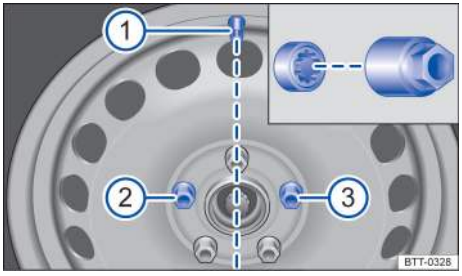


Fig. 186 Changing a wheel: Tire valve ① and installation points for the anti-theft wheel bolt (if equipped) ② or ③.

Loosen the wheel bolts only with the lug wrench produced by Volkswagen for your vehicle.

Loosen the wheel bolts only about 1 turn before lifting the vehicle with the jack.

If a wheel bolt does not come loose, carefully push the end of the lug wrench with your foot. Make sure you are standing firmly on the ground and hold on to the vehicle for support.

Loosening the wheel bolts

— Push the lug wrench over the wheel bolt all the way → fig. 185.

— Holding the lug wrench at the end, loosen the wheel bolt by turning it counterclockwise about *1* complete turn (360°) → ⚠.

Loosening the anti-theft wheel bolt (if equipped)

— Take the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolt out of the vehicle tool kit.

— Push the adapter all the way over the anti-theft wheel bolt.

— Slide the lug wrench onto the adapter until it stops.

— Holding the lug wrench at the end, loosen the wheel bolt by turning it counterclockwise about *1* complete turn (360°) → ⚠.

Important information regarding wheel bolts

The design of rims and wheel bolts is matched to the factory-installed wheels. If different wheels are installed, wheel bolts with the right length and bolt head shape must be used. The attachment of the wheels and function of the brake system depend on this.

It may not be possible to use wheel bolts from different vehicles of the same model.

On a wheel with a wheel cover, the anti-theft wheel bolt (if equipped) must be installed at points → fig. 186 ② or ③ in relation to the position of the tire valve ①. Otherwise, the wheel cover cannot be installed.

Wheel bolt tightening torque

Correctly tightened bolts for steel and alloy wheel rims should have a torque of **88 ft-lbs (120 Nm)**. After changing a wheel, have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked right away with an accurate torque wrench.

Before you check the tightening torque, replace corroded and difficult-to-turn wheel bolts and clean the threads in the wheel hub.

Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. The bolts can come loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the required torque.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly tightened wheel bolts can come loose while driving and cause you to lose control over the vehicle, resulting in accidents and serious injuries.

- Only use wheel bolts that belong your vehicle and to the wheel being installed.
- Never use different wheel bolts.

5GM012723ST

- Wheel bolts and wheel hub threads must always be clean, easy-to-turn and free of oil and grease.
- Only use the lug wrench produced by Volkswagen for your vehicle to loosen the wheel bolts.
- Loosen the wheel bolts only about 1 turn before lifting the vehicle with the jack.
- Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. The bolts can come loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the required torque.
- Never loosen bolted connections on wheel rims with bolted rim rings.
- If the wheel bolts are not tightened to the proper torque, the wheel can come off the vehicle when it is moving. Extremely high torque can damage the wheel bolts and/or their threads.
- Check the wheel bolt tightening torque regularly with an accurate torque wrench. ◁

Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (Golf)

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 299.

Fig. 187 Lift points for the jack.

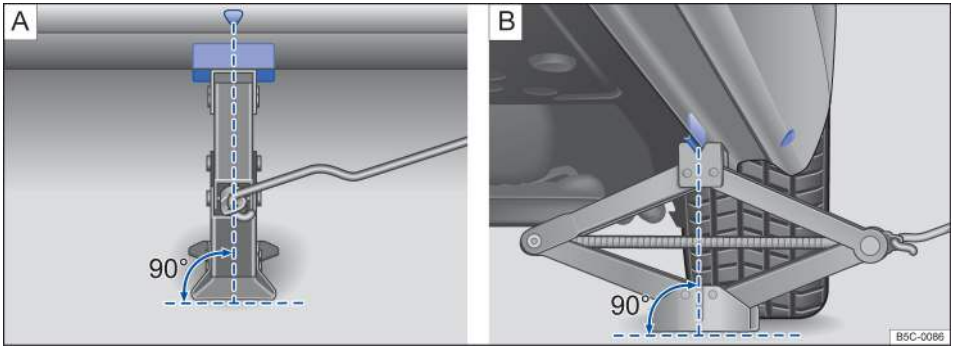


Fig. 188 Jack in position at the left rear lift point.

The jack must be positioned at one of the 4 lift points located behind the markings on the vehicle body (2 on each side as shown in → fig. 187). You must use the lift point closest to the wheel being changed → ⚠.

The vehicle may only be lifted by a jack positioned at one of the 4 jack lift points.

Checklist

For your own safety and that of your passengers, carry out the following steps in the order listed → ⚠:

1. Find a level spot on firm ground for lifting the vehicle.
2. Straighten the steering wheel so that the front wheels point straight forward.
3. *Automatic or DSG transmission:* Shift the transmission to Park **(P)** → page 149, *Automatic or DSG® transmission selector lever*.
4. Firmly apply the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving → page 178, *Using the parking brake (Golf, Golf GTI)*.
5. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button and remove the key from the vehicle → page 141, *Starting and stopping the engine*.
6. *Manual transmission:* Shift into a gear → page 147, *Manual transmission*.
7. Block the diagonally opposite wheel with chocks or other suitable things.
8. Loosen the wheel bolts of the wheel to be changed → page 301, *Wheel bolts*.
9. Find the jack lift point → fig. 187 on the vehicle frame that is closest to the wheel to be changed.
10. Insert the crank → fig. 152 ⑦ into the opening on the vehicle jack → fig. 152 ⑤.
11. Crank up the jack so that it still just fits underneath the lift point.
12. Position the jack so that its base is directly underneath the lift point → fig. 188, making sure that the entire base of the jack rests securely on the ground.
13. Align the jack and wind up the jack claw at the same time, until the claw cradles the vertical rib underneath the vehicle → fig. 188 (arrow).
14. Continue cranking up the jack until the wheel is just a little off the ground.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of your vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to fall off the jack leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Use only jacks approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Other jacks might slip, even those approved for other Volkswagen models, but not for your vehicle.
- Always set up the jack on firm and level ground. The vehicle may slip off the jack if the jack is resting on soft or sloping ground. If necessary, place a sturdy board under the jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as a tiled floor), use an anti-skid rubber mat or something similar to help prevent the jack from slipping.
- Position the jack only at the described vehicle lift points. Before you raise your vehicle, always make sure the jack claw properly grips the vertical rib under the sill so that the jack does not slip off when you are raising the vehicle → fig. 188.
- Never have any part of your body (such as your arm or leg) under the vehicle when it is supported by the jack. Never let other persons have any part of their body under the vehicle, either!
- If you must work under a vehicle raised on a floor jack, always make sure that the vehicle is safely supported on safety stands intended for that purpose that are strong enough to support the weight of the vehicle.
- Never lift the vehicle when it is tilted or inclined to one side or the engine is running.
- Never lift the vehicle when more than 1 tire is flat or damaged.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by a jack. Engine vibrations may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense. ◁

5GM012723ST

Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (Golf GTI)

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 299.

Fig. 189 Lift points for the jack.

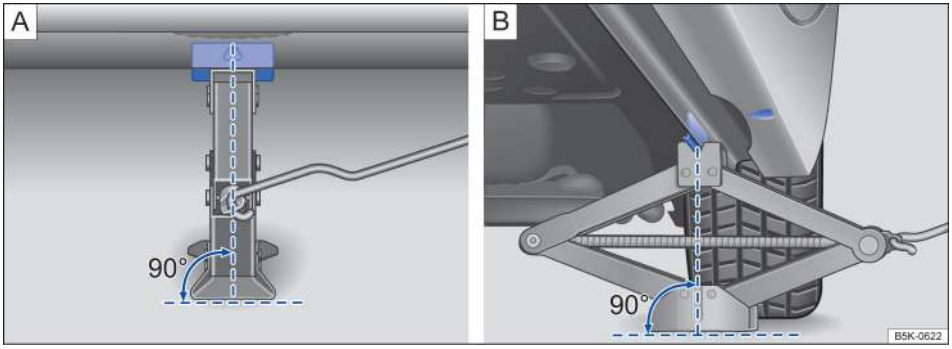


Fig. 190 Jack in position at the left rear lift point.

The jack must be positioned at one of the 4 lift points located behind the markings on the vehicle body (2 on each side as shown in → fig. 189). You must use the lift point closest to the wheel being changed → ⚠.

The vehicle may only be lifted by a jack positioned at one of the 4 jack lift points.

Checklist

For your own safety and that of your passengers, carry out the following steps in the order listed → ⚠:

1. Find a level spot on firm ground for lifting the vehicle.
2. Straighten the steering wheel so that the front wheels point straight forward.
3. *Automatic or DSG transmission:* Shift the transmission to Park **(P)** → page 149, *Automatic or DSG® transmission selector lever*.
4. Set the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving → page 178, *Using the parking brake (Golf, Golf GTI)*.
5. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button and remove the key from the vehicle → page 141, *Starting and stopping the engine*.
6. *Manual transmission:* Shift into a gear → page 147, *Manual transmission*.
7. Block the diagonally opposite wheel with chocks or other suitable things.
8. Loosen the wheel bolts of the wheel to be changed → page 301, *Wheel bolts*.

9. Find the jack lift point → fig. 189 on the vehicle frame that is closest to the wheel to be changed.
10. Insert the crank → fig. 152 (7) into the opening on the vehicle jack → fig. 152 (5).
11. Crank up the jack so that it still just fits underneath the lift point.
12. Position the jack so that its base is directly underneath the lift point → fig. 190, making sure that the entire base of the jack rests securely on the ground.
13. Align the jack and wind up the jack claw at the same time, until the claw cradles the vertical rib underneath the vehicle → fig. 190 (arrow).
14. Continue cranking up the jack until the wheel is just a little off the ground.

WARNING

Improper use of your vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to fall off the jack leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Use only jacks approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Other jacks might slip, even those approved for other Volkswagen models, but not for your vehicle.
- Always set up the jack on firm and level ground. The vehicle may slip off the jack if the jack is resting on soft or sloping ground. If necessary, place a sturdy board under the jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as a tiled floor), use an anti-skid rubber mat or something similar to help prevent the jack from slipping.
- Position the jack only at the described vehicle lift points. Before you raise your vehicle, always make sure the jack claw properly grips the vertical rib under the sill so that the jack does not slip off when you are raising the vehicle → fig. 190.
- Never have any part of your body (such as your arm or leg) under the vehicle when it is supported by the jack. Never let other persons have any part of their body under the vehicle, either!
- If you must work under a vehicle raised on a floor jack, always make sure that the vehicle is safely supported on safety stands intended for that purpose that are strong enough to support the weight of the vehicle.
- Never lift the vehicle when it is tilted or inclined to one side or the engine is running.
- Never lift the vehicle when more than 1 tire is flat or damaged.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by a jack. Engine vibrations may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense. ◁

5GM012723ST

Changing a wheel

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 299.

Fig. 191 Changing a wheel: Remove previously loosened wheel bolts using the screwdriver handle.

Removing the wheel

- Review the checklist → page 300, *Preparations for changing a wheel*.
- Loosen the wheel bolts → page 301, *Wheel bolts*.
- Lift the vehicle → page 302, *Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (Golf)* or → page 304, *Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (Golf GTI)*.
- Completely unscrew and remove the previously loosened wheel bolts using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle → fig. 191. Place the wheel bolts on a clean surface.
- Remove the wheel.

Mounting a spare or compact spare wheel

If the tire is a unidirectional tire, be sure to install it in the proper rolling direction → page 260, *Tires and wheels*.

- Place the spare wheel or compact spare wheel on the axle.
- Place the anti-theft wheel bolt (if equipped) in position → fig. 186 ② or ③ in relation to the position of the tire valve ①. Hand tighten it using the adapter by turning clockwise.
- Screw in the wheel bolts clockwise and tighten them *slightly* using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle.
- Lower the vehicle with the jack.
- Use the lug wrench to firmly tighten all wheel bolts (turn clockwise) → ⚠. Do not tighten them in sequence! Tighten any wheel bolt to begin, then tighten the wheel bolt diagonally opposite the first bolt, and so forth.
- Install the wheel bolt caps, center wheel hubcap, or wheel cover, if any → page 298, *Wheel trim*.

⚠ WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or installed improperly can come loose, causing loss of vehicle control, a crash, and serious personal injury.

- Always keep wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hub clean and free of oil and grease. The wheel bolts must turn easily and must be tightened with the right torque.
- Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle only to turn the wheel bolts when they are loose, never to loosen them or tighten them firmly.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of a compact spare wheel can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, and serious personal injury.

- Never use a compact spare wheel if it is damaged or worn down to the wear indicators.
- Never drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a compact spare wheel. Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering!
- Never drive more than 125 miles (200 km) if a compact spare wheel is installed.
- Replace the compact spare with a normal wheel and tire as soon as possible. Compact spare tires are designed for brief use only. ◁

After changing a wheel

Please read the introductory information and heed the Warnings and Notice ⚠ on page 299.

- Clean the tools in the vehicle tool kit if necessary and stow them in the foam insert in the luggage compartment → page 227, *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Securely store the spare wheel, compact spare wheel, or the wheel you took off the vehicle in the luggage compartment.
- Have the wheel bolt tightening torque immediately checked with a torque wrench → page 301, *Wheel bolt tightening torque*.
- Have the damaged wheel replaced as soon as possible.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated after each tire change

→ page 260, *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*. ◁

5GM012723ST

Vehicle maintenance

Vehicle care

Tips on vehicle care

Regular and expert care helps to **preserve the value** of your vehicle. Such expert care may also be one of the requirements of your New Vehicle Limited Warranty if corrosion repair or repainting is necessary.

The longer stains, dirt, and other deposits remain on the surfaces of vehicle components and upholstery, the more difficult it may be to clean them. High temperatures (including strong sunlight) increase the corrosive effects. If stains, dirt and deposits are left untreated for a long time, they may become impossible to remove.

Vehicle care products are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

WARNING

Improper care and cleaning of vehicle components can impact the safety features of the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always clean and maintain vehicle components according to manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use approved or recommended cleaners.
- Never use vehicle care products containing solvents. Solvents can damage plastics, the airbag housing, and other vehicle materials.
- Protect arms and hands from sharp vehicle parts, for example, while cleaning the underbody of the vehicle.

WARNING

Dirty or fogged up windows reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Do not drive until you have clear visibility through all windows.
- Remove ice, snow, and condensation from all inside and outside window surfaces.
- Do not treat the windshield with water-repellent window coating agents. In unfavorable conditions, they can reduce visibility.

WARNING

Vehicle care products can be dangerous. Improper use can cause accidents, burns, poisoning, or other serious personal injuries.

- Always store vehicle care products only in original containers that are securely closed.
- Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always keep vehicle care products out of the reach of children.
- Always use such products outdoors or in well-ventilated areas, because harmful vapors may be released when these products are used.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are poisonous and highly flammable.

CAUTION

Sharp edges under the vehicle can cut exposed skin.

- Always protect your hands and arms from cuts on sharp metal edges when cleaning the underbody, the inside of the wheel housings, etc.

NOTICE

Stains, dirt, and other deposits with aggressive and solvent-based ingredients can cause irreparable damage to the vehicle equipment, even if left for only a short time.

- Do not let stains, dirt, and other deposits dry.
- Have stubborn stains removed by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

NOTICE

Vehicle care products containing solvents can damage plastics and other vehicle materials.

When buying vehicle care products, try to choose those that are not harmful to the environment.

Never throw out vehicle care products with ordinary household waste. Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package. ◁

Washing the vehicle

The vehicle **underbody** should be washed regularly and thoroughly.

Automatic car wash

Pay close attention to the information provided by the car wash operator, especially if you have installed additional accessories on the vehicle, such as a spoiler, a roof rack, or an antenna → ⓘ.

— Volkswagen recommends using brushless car wash facilities.

— Switch off the windshield wipers and the rain sensor.

— Fold in the outside mirrors.

Washing with a power washer

Always follow the instructions for the power washer. This especially applies to the **pressure** and **spraying distance** → ⚠.

— Use water only up to a maximum temperature of +140 °F (+60 °C).

— Do not clean windows that are iced over or covered in snow with a power washer.

— Move the jet of water smoothly so that the nozzle is at least 20 inches (50 cm) away from the vehicle.

— Do not point the water jet at the same location for too long. Instead, leave stubborn dirt to soak.

— If possible, do not direct the water jet at seals, decorative trim, tires, rubber hoses, insulation materials, door locks or any other sensitive components.

— Sensors, camera lenses, and decorative and protective films should be sprayed directly only for brief periods of time → ⓘ.

Never use **concentrated jet nozzles** or so-called **dirt blasters** → ⚠.

Never use a power washer to clean the engine compartment → page 311, *Engine compartment and plenum chamber*.

Washing by hand

Washing by hand is a gentle way to clean your vehicle. However, there are also some things to note for this → ⓘ.

— First soften the dirt with plenty of water and then rinse off as much dirt as possible.

— Clean the vehicle with a soft sponge, washing mitt, or brush using only light pressure. Start on the roof and work down.

— Rinse the sponge, glove, or brush thoroughly and often.

— Clean the wheels and under the door sills last. Use a different sponge or wash mitt.

Use a cleaning shampoo for very stubborn dirt only.

Waxing

A good coat of wax helps to protect the vehicle paint. When water no longer forms small drops and runs off when the paint is *clean*, apply a new coat of good hard wax to protect the vehicle again.

Even if a wax solution is used regularly at the car wash, Volkswagen recommends applying a coat of hard wax at least twice a year to protect the paint.

Polishing

Polish your vehicle if the paint has lost its shine and the gloss cannot be brought back with wax.

The vehicle must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint.

⚠ WARNING

After the vehicle has been washed, the wet brakes or, in winter, brake discs or pads coated with ice, react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- Always dry the brakes and clean off any ice coatings with a few careful applications of the brake. Make sure not to endanger other motorists or cyclists or disobey legal requirements.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of power washers can cause serious invisible permanent damage leading to tire failure and loss of vehicle control. This can cause accidents and severe personal injury.

- Keep sufficient distance between water jet and tires. Never wash tires with a nozzle that sprays the water out in a direct stream regardless of the distance to the tire and even for a very short time.
- Never use "dirt blasters" to clean tires. Even spraying from a relatively long distance for a very short time can do visible or invisible damage to tires.

NOTICE

Serious vehicle damage may occur if the vehicle is not washed correctly.

- The water temperature must not be more than +140 °F (+60 °C).
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- Do not use insect sponges, abrasive kitchen sponges or similar things to clean the vehicle. These can damage the paint finish.
- Never clean headlights with a dry cloth or sponge. Always use a wet cloth or sponge. For best results use soapy water.

5GM012723ST

- When washing or rinsing the vehicle in cold weather, do not let water get into the lock cylinders or point the hose at gaps around the doors, hood, or trunk lid. The water could freeze on the locks and seals and make it difficult to open the vehicle!
- When outside temperatures are low, wipe the rubber seals and their contact surfaces dry to help prevent freezing.
- In order for any sensors located on the outside of the vehicle to work correctly, they must be kept clean and clear of snow and ice.
- When using a power washer or steam cleaner, only spray the sensors directly for a short period of time and always keep the nozzle at least 4 inches (10 cm) from the sensor.
- Do not clean icy or snow-covered windows with a power washer.

NOTICE

To help prevent vehicle damage in a **car wash:**

- Compare the vehicle track width with the dimensions of the guide rails in the car wash to help prevent damage to wheel rims and tires!
- Switch off the rain sensor before driving the vehicle through a car wash → page 120, *Rain sensor*.
- Make sure there is enough clearance for the height and width of the vehicle.
- To help prevent paint damage to the engine hood, place wiper blades against the windshield after they have dried. Do not let them snap back into place.
- Fold the outside mirrors toward the vehicle body.
- Lock the trunk lid to help prevent unintentional opening in the car wash.

Wash the vehicle only at specifically designated wash locations to help prevent water contaminated with oil, grease and fuel from entering the storm drain sewer system. In some areas it is against the law to wash motor vehicles anywhere than other than at specified designated car washing locations. ◁

Exterior care and cleaning

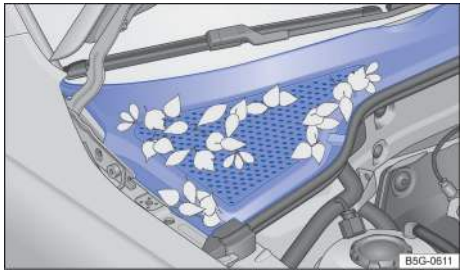


Fig. 192 Between the engine compartment and the windshield: plenum chamber.

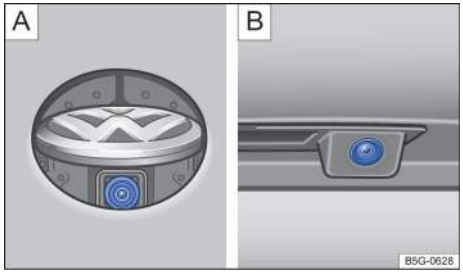


Fig. 193 In the trunk lid: Location of the rear view camera (depending on equipment). A Under the Volkswagen emblem or B above the rear license plate.

Windows and outside mirrors

Use a commercially available alcohol-based window cleaner or a silicone remover to remove rubber, oil, grease and silicone deposits from the windows and outside mirrors → ⓘ.

Dry windows and mirrors with a clean chamois or a lint-free cloth. Do not use a chamois that has been used to wipe painted surfaces because it will have absorbed an oily residue that will smear the glass surfaces.

Remove snow from all windows and outside mirrors with an appropriate brush. When using an ice scraper, always scrape in one direction by pushing the scraper away from you. Dirt can scratch the glass when pulling the scraper backward. The best way to remove ice is with a deicer spray.

Removing wax residue

Automatic car washes and vehicle care products can leave a **wax residue** on all glass surfaces. These wax residues can only be removed with special cleaners or cleaning cloths. Wax residue left on the windshield can cause the windshield wipers to grab and squeak instead of gliding smoothly. We recommend

that after every car wash you remove any wax residue left on the windshield with a window cleaning cloth/chamois.

Windshield wiper squeak and grab can be reduced by filling the windshield washer fluid tank with a wiper fluid containing wax-removing agents. Make sure to maintain the proper mixing ratio when refilling the washer fluid tank. Grease-removing cleaning agents cannot remove wax residue → ⓘ.

Windshield cleaners, special cleaners, and cleaning cloths are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Wiper blades

→ page 228, *Windshield wiper blades*.

Paint

Always treat surfaces carefully in order to prevent damage to the paint coat. Use a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap solution[1)] or cleaning clay to remove any light dirt immediately, e.g. deposits, insect residue, or cosmetics.

Repair minor paint damage with a touch-up pen. Refer to the vehicle identification label for the paint code.

More information:

— Overflowing fuel or service fluids: clean immediately.

— Flash rust deposits: moisten deposits with a soap solution. Then remove any deposits with cleaning clay.

— Corrosion: have removed by a qualified workshop.

Engine compartment and plenum chamber

The engine compartment of a vehicle is a dangerous area → page 241, *In the engine compartment*.

Regularly remove leaves and other debris from the plenum chamber cover by hand or with a vacuum cleaner → fig. 192. Have the area under the perforated cover cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If necessary, have the engine compartment professionally cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Incorrect cleaning procedures could remove corrosion protection and damage electrical components, among other things.

Never use a power washer to clean the engine compartment → ⚠. Water sprayed or poured into the engine compartment could enter directly into the vehicle interior through the plenum chamber.

Camera lenses and sensors

Wet the camera lens with a commercially available alcohol-based glass cleaner and clean with a soft cloth → ⓘ.

For the camera lens in the rear Volkswagen emblem → fig. 193:

— Park the vehicle in a safe place on a firm, level surface.

— Switch on the ignition (but *do not* start the engine).

— Apply the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving → page 178.

— Shift into reverse **(R)**.

Keep camera lenses and sensors clean and free of snow and ice.

Remove snow with a brush. Do not use warm or hot water to remove ice. Remove ice with deicer spray → ⓘ.

Chrome and aluminum parts

— Clean the surface in a dust-free environment using a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap solution[1)].

— If the surface is especially dirty, use a special **solvent-free** cleaning material.

— Then polish chrome and aluminum parts with a soft, dry cloth → ⓘ.

— Chrome parts can be treated with hard wax.

— Clean anodized parts with a chrome and aluminium cleaning material.

Headlights and taillights

Clean the lights with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap solution[1)]. Only use alcohol-free, solvent-free cleaning materials.

Wheel rims

Remove dirt and gritting salt deposits with plenty of water. If road salt and brake dust are not removed regularly, they can corrode the metal.

For alloy wheels: **Every 2 weeks:** clean the wheel rims with an acid-free detergent specifically designed for light alloy wheels. **Every 3 months:** Volkswagen recommends applying a hard wax compound to the wheel rims. Do not use car polish or other abrasive products.

1) Mild soap solution: 2 tablespoons of liquid soap in 1 quart (liter) of water.

5GM012723ST

More information:

— Paint or protective coating damage: Repair the damaged area right away. If necessary, have the damage repaired by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

— Stubborn brake dust: Remove with an industrial cleaner.

Deicing door lock cylinders

Volkswagen recommends using only genuine Volkswagen deicer spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties to deice door lock cylinders. Do not use door lock deicer sprays containing grease solvents as they can cause the lock cylinder to rust.

Cleaning the power sunroof

Dirt and debris can prevent the power sunroof from working properly.

Remove leaves and other objects from the sunroof guide rails regularly either by hand or using a vacuum cleaner → ⓘ.

⚠ WARNING

Undercoating and rustproofing products can catch fire on the hot exhaust system or any other hot engine component.

- Never apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, the exhaust pipes, the catalytic converter, the heat shields, or any other hot vehicle component.

⚠ WARNING

Injuries, scalding, electric shock, accidents, and fire hazards can occur while working on the engine or in the engine compartment!

- Before working in the engine compartment, be sure to familiarize yourself with the necessary procedures and generally accepted safety precautions → page 241, *In the engine compartment*.
- Volkswagen recommends having the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

ⓘ NOTICE

Antennas and heating elements on the insides of windows can be damaged if not cleaned properly.

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
- The heating elements for the rear defroster are on the inside of the rear window. Do not put stickers over the heating elements on the inside of the rear window and never clean the inside of the windows with corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals that could damage the heating elements.
- Antennas installed on the insides of windows can be damaged by abrasive objects or by corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals. Do not place any stickers on the windshield-integrated antenna and never clean the antenna with corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals.

ⓘ NOTICE

Serious vehicle damage may occur if the vehicle is not cared for correctly.

- Do not clean or polish in direct sunlight.
- Do not clean, wax or polish your vehicle if it is dirty, or in a sandy or dusty place.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners or abrasive sponges.
- Do not polish dirty surfaces.
- Do not use cleaning materials that contain solvents.
- Do not use hard wax or polish on matte-finished parts, plastic parts, headlights and rear lights, or chrome and aluminum parts.
- Do not spray or pour water (for example, with a power washer) into the plenum chamber.

ⓘ NOTICE

Chrome wheel covers and hubcaps can have an extra coating. Do not treat them with chrome care or polishing products. Use regular paint care and polishing products.

ⓘ NOTICE

Do not attempt to clean the drain tubes for the power sunroof. This could result in vehicle damage caused by punctured or damaged drain tubes.

- Volkswagen recommends having the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

ⓘ NOTICE

Improper cleaning may damage the camera lenses.

- Never use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the camera lens.
- Never remove snow or ice on the camera lens with warm or hot water.

ⓘ NOTICE

The plenum chamber can become blocked by leaves and dirt. Any water that cannot drain away could enter the passenger compartment.

- Have the area under the perforated cover cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Wash the engine compartment only in special wash bays so that the oily dirt and fuel residue that are washed off the vehicle will not enter the sewage system. In some areas it illegal to wash the engine compartment anywhere other than at such specified locations.

Do not apply any rubber care products to the rubber seals on the body in the areas around the windows in the driver and front passenger doors. The product could run down onto the windows and smudge them. ◁

Interior care and cleaning

Fabrics, microfiber fabric, and leatherette

Only use cleaning products approved by Volkswagen. Do not treat fabrics with leather care products, solvents, floor wax, shoe polish, stain remover or similar products.

If the upholstery and fabric trim pieces are heavily soiled, see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before you begin cleaning to learn about suitable cleaning options. If necessary, have the cleaning done by a professional.

More information:

— Dust and dirt particles in pores, folds, and seams can have a "scouring" effect on surfaces: Vacuum upholstery, fabric trim, microfiber fabric, and carpeting regularly with a suitable brush attachment to help prevent permanent surface damage.

— Grease-based stains such as oil, lipstick, etc.: Remove fresh stains with an absorbent cloth.

— Special stains such as ballpoint pen or nail polish: Use cleaning products approved by Volkswagen or a mild soap solution[1].

Leather upholstery

Clean with a cotton cloth and a mild soap solution[1] → ⓘ. Do not let water soak through the leather or penetrate into seams.

Clean dried stains with a special stain remover designed for leather.

After each cleaning, apply cream that waterproofs the leather and protects it against the sun. Such creams also nourish the leather, let it breathe, keep it flexible and moisturized. At the same time it protects the surface.

Do not treat leather with solvents, floor wax, shoe polish, stain remover, or similar products.

Treating stains:

— If necessary, refresh fading spots with a specially-colored leather cream.

— *Grease-based stains, such as oil, lipstick, etc.:* Remove fresh stains as soon as possible with an absorbent cloth.

— *Special stains, such as ballpoint pen, marker, nail polish, latex paint, or shoe polish:* Clean with a special stain remover designed for leather.

Plastic components, the instrument panel, storage compartments, and cup holders

Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with a mild soap solution[1] and clean plastic or rubber parts.

If this is not sufficient, then use a special **solvent-free** care and cleaning product designed for plastics → ⚠.

Some storage compartments and cup holders may have a removable rubber or felt insert at the bottom. Clean inserts with a vacuum cleaner.

Controls

Remove coarse dirt and dirt that is difficult to reach using a soft brush. Then use a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap solution[1]. Do not allow liquids to enter the controls.

Displays

Use a cleaning cloth with a little water, a suitable glass cleaner or LCD cleaner. Do not clean displays with a dry cloth. Switch off the Infotainment system before cleaning.

Rubber door and window seals

Use a soft, lint-free cloth and water to remove dust and dirt from the rubber seals.

Treat regularly with a suitable rubber care product.

Safety belts

If a safety belt is dirty, this can prevent the belt from working properly. Keep safety belts clean and regularly check all safety belts for damage.

Safety belts must never be taken apart for cleaning.

Carefully pull the dirty safety belt out of the retractor and keep it out. Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush → ⚠. Clean the safety belt with a *mild* soap solution[1]. After cleaning, always give the safety

[1] Mild soap solution: 2 tablespoons of liquid soap in 1 quart (liter) of water.

5GM012723ST

belts time to dry thoroughly before letting them retract. This helps prevent damage to the retractor.

Wooden trim

Clean with a soft cloth and a mild soap solution[1].

Care and treatment of upholstery

Modern clothing fabrics such as dark denim may not be completely colorfast. Even with normal use, dye from these and other fabrics can rub off on seat upholstery and leave visible discolorations (especially on light-colored seat upholstery). This is caused by a lack of colorfastness in the clothing fabric, not by any fault in the seat upholstery fabric. To help prevent damage to the seat upholstery, always make sure your clothing is colorfast. Volkswagen recommends having a qualified specialist remove any discolorations from the seat upholstery.

Airbag components and electrical connectors may be installed in the driver seat, the front passenger seat, and in the outer rear seats. Damaging, cleaning and handling incorrectly, or wetting or soaking these seat surfaces and backrests can damage the vehicle electrical system and prevent the airbag system from working properly → ⚠.

Electrical components and connectors that could be damaged by incorrect cleaning or handling are installed in power seats and heated seats → ⓘ. This can also result in damage to other parts of the vehicle electrical system.

Please note the following when it comes to the care and preservation of the upholstery → ⓘ:

— Do not use power washers, steam cleaners, or cooling spray.

— Do not turn on the seat heating to dry the seats.

— Do not use detergent pastes or mild detergent solutions.

— Do not wet the surface completely.

— Open Velcro® fasteners can damage upholstery, fabric, and trim. Before you get into the vehicle, close all Velcro® fasteners that could come into contact with upholstery fabrics and cloth trim.

— Sharp-edged objects and items on clothing and belts (such as belt clips, mobile phone cases, zippers, rivets, and rhinestones) can damage upholstery material and fabric trim. To help prevent damage, do not let such items come into direct contact with the upholstery and fabric trim.

— In the event of uncertainty, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

If there is a malfunction in the airbag system, the airbag may not deploy correctly or at all, or it may deploy unexpectedly. This could cause fatal injuries.

- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

Using solvents or other improper cleaning products on surfaces where airbags are located can change the way airbags deploy in a crash.

- Products containing solvents will change the properties of the plastics and may cause plastic parts to break and fly around when the airbag deploys in a crash, causing injury.
- Never use solvents or cleaners on the steering wheel horn pad or on the instrument panel because they can damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- When cleaning the horn pad and instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or a cloth moistened with plain water.

⚠ WARNING

Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.

- Check the condition of all safety belts and buckles regularly. If you notice that the safety belt webbing, hardware, retractor, buckle, or any other part of the safety belts is damaged, immediately have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility replace the safety belt with the correct replacement belt for your vehicle model and model year.
- Never use chemical cleaning agents, solvents, or any substance that may damage or weaken the safety belt webbing or any other parts of the safety belt. Never let the belts come into contact with corrosive fluids or sharp objects. Otherwise, the safety belt webbing will be significantly weakened.
- After cleaning, always give the safety belts time to dry completely before letting them retract.

[1] Mild soap solution: 2 tablespoons of liquid soap in 1 quart (liter) of water.

The moisture can damage the retractor and keep it from working properly.

- Never let foreign objects or liquids get into the safety belt latch. This could prevent the belt buckles and safety belts from working properly.
- Damaged safety belts must be replaced; they cannot be repaired.
- Never try to repair a damaged safety belt yourself. Never remove or modify the safety belts in any way.
- Safety belts that were subject to stress in an accident and stretched must be replaced with a correct, new safety belt, preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Replacement after a crash may be necessary even if a safety belt shows no visible damage. Anchorages that have been loaded must also be inspected.

NOTICE

- Vehicle care products containing solvents can cause irreparable damage to plastics and other vehicle materials.
- Stains, dirt and other deposits that contain aggressive substances or solvents can corrode vehicle materials and cause permanent damage, even after brief contact with the surface.
- Remove stains, dirt, and other deposits as quickly as possible and do not allow them to dry.
- To help prevent damage, have stubborn stains removed by a professional who has the necessary expertise and experience.

NOTICE

Disregarding the upholstery-related checklist may lead to damage or discoloration of upholstery and fabric trim.

- Please note and follow the points listed in the checklist.

NOTICE

If the upholstery on power seats, heated seats, or seats with airbag components is wet, electrical components and the vehicle electrical system could be damaged.

- If the seating surface becomes soaked, have it dried and the system components checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Do not use steam cleaners because the steam could cause the dirt to penetrate deeper into the fabric and make it impossible to remove.
- Power washers and cooling sprays can damage the upholstery.

NOTICE

- Clean only the carpet and floor mats with brushes. Other textile surfaces can be damaged by brushes.
- If detergent pastes or mild detergent solutions are applied with a damp cloth or sponge, the surfactants in the detergent may cause visible lines to form at the edges of the area where the detergent was applied. These lines are generally difficult or impossible to remove.

NOTICE

- Do not soak microfiber fabric.
- Do not treat microfiber fabric with leather care products, solvents, floor wax, shoe polish, stain remover or similar products.
- Do not use brushes for damp cleaning, because they can damage upholstery surfaces.
- Do not use a steam cleaner, because dirt will penetrate deeper into the fabric.

NOTICE

- Stains that have been left in place too long will penetrate the surface of the leather and cannot be removed.
- Never treat leather with solvents, floor wax, shoe polish, stain remover or similar products.
- Wipe up spilled liquids immediately with an absorbent cloth. Liquid can penetrate leather surfaces and seams within a few seconds.
- If the vehicle is left in the sun for a long time, cover the upholstery to protect the leather from direct sunlight and to help prevent fading and discoloration.

NOTICE

- Do not clean leatherette with solvents, floor wax, shoe polish, stain remover, or similar products. These can cause the material to become brittle and break.
- Sharp-edged objects and items on clothing and belts (such as belt clips, mobile phone cases, zippers, rivets, and rhinestones) can damage upholstery material and fabric trim.
- If the vehicle is left in the sun for a long time, cover the upholstery to protect the leatherette from direct sunlight and to help prevent fading or discoloration.

Volkswagen recommends having any discoloration removed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Slight discoloration caused by wear and tear is normal. ◁

Parts, accessories, repairs, and modifications

Parts and accessories

Volkswagen recommends that you consult an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before purchasing accessories, spare parts or other equipment. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility can provide information about legal requirements and factory-recommended accessories, spare parts, and other equipment.

Volkswagen recommends that you use only approved **Volkswagen accessories and Volkswagen Genuine Parts**®. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability, and safety. Volkswagen dealerships are qualified to install them correctly.

Although the market is constantly scrutinized, Volkswagen cannot assume responsibility for the reliability, safety, and suitability of products **Volkswagen has not approved**. Volkswagen can therefore assume no responsibility for these parts, even if they have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official approval certificate.

WARNING

Improper vehicle modifications and repairs affect the performance of the airbag system and cause malfunctions and severe personal injuries.

- Never store, mount, or attach objects, such as cup holders or phone cradles, on or next to the airbag module covers or within the airbag deployment zones.
- Objects on or near the surface where airbags are located can come loose and cause serious personal injury if the airbag deploys.

WARNING

Inappropriate spare parts and accessories as well as improperly performed work, modifications and repairs can cause vehicle damage, accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Volkswagen strongly recommends to only use accessories approved by Volkswagen and Genuine Volkswagen Parts®. These parts and accessories have been evaluated by Volkswagen for their suitability, reliability, and safety.
- Have repairs and vehicle modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities have the required tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information, and trained personnel to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Only install parts on the vehicle that are consistent with factory-installed parts with respect to design and characteristics.
- Only use wheel rim/tire combinations approved by Volkswagen for the respective vehicle type. ◁

Repairs and technical modifications

Volkswagen guidelines for repairs and technical modifications must be followed → ⚠!

Changes to electronic components and related software can cause malfunctions. These malfunctions can also affect other systems that are related to the component or software that was modified. The vehicle's operational safety can be seriously jeopardized, increased vehicle component wear can occur, and the vehicle may no longer meet applicable emissions requirements.

Volkswagen recommends having all repairs and technical modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility using **Genuine Volkswagen Parts**®.

Damage that is caused by improper repairs or unapproved technical modifications will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

WARNING

Improperly performed repairs and modifications can cause vehicle damage and malfunctions, and can impair the efficiency of driver assistance systems. This can lead to accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Have repairs and vehicle modifications done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

NOTICE

Improperly performed repairs and modifications can cause increased component wear and result in vehicle emissions that no longer meet applicable requirements. ◁

Repairs and other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Repairs and modifications of front bumpers, doors, front seats, headliners and the chassis can affect proper airbag performance and should be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. These vehicle areas can contain important parts of the airbag system.

Components of the airbag system can be damaged during removal, assembly and repair activities on the airbag system itself or related components. Damage to airbag parts can prevent the system from working properly in a collision.

Observe all regulations so that the effectiveness of the airbag is not affected and to prevent disassembled parts from causing injuries and pollution. Authorized Volkswagen dealers, authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities, and other qualified workshops are familiar with these regulations.

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the airbag system works in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

Never install leather upholstery on a vehicle that originally had cloth upholstery. Never install cloth upholstery on a vehicle that originally had leather upholstery. The capacitive passenger detection system for the Advanced Airbag system will not work properly if different upholstery is installed on the passenger seat than the upholstery originally installed on the vehicle when it was originally manufactured.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

- Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
- Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen.

WARNING

Items stored between the safety belt buckle and the center console can cause safety belt buckle to send the wrong information to the airbag control unit and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.

WARNING

Improper care and servicing, and improper modification and repair work, can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the airbag system, steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, mobile telephones and CB radios, etc.) should be performed by authorized Volkswagen dealers or authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities. They have the necessary manuals, training, and special equipment.
- The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced.
- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen. Have them installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Undeployed airbag modules and safety belt pretensioners are classified as **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – see http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding handling

5GM012723ST

and disposal of the vehicle or parts of its restraint system, including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you. ◁

Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. **NOTE:** EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDRs installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Volkswagen will not access the EDR and/or similar data or give it to others - unless the vehicle owner (or lessee if the vehicle has been leased) agrees, or;

- upon the official request by the police;
- upon the order of a court of law or a government agency; or
- for the defense of a lawsuit through the judicial discovery process.

Volkswagen may also use the data for research about vehicle operation and safety performance or provide the data to a third party for research purposes without identifying the specific vehicle or information about the identity of its owner or lessee.

NOTE: Your vehicle may be equipped with VW Car-Net. Please see → page 205, *Data transfer* and the VW Car-Net Terms of Service and Privacy Policy at (http:// www.vw.com/carnet) for details regarding how Volkswagen collects, processes, transmits, uses and shares information obtained through the VW Car-Net equipment and service.

Your vehicle is also equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems, such as engine management, emission control, airbags, and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record data during normal vehicle operation that may be needed by trained technicians for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capability of these modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded). Only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time, or stored when a system fault is detected by a control module. Some of the data stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, or braking, as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash. Stored data can also only be read and downloaded with special equipment that is directly connected to the vehicle. ◁

Using a mobile phone in a motor vehicle when it is not connected to a vehicle telephone antenna: Some important things to know

Mobile or cellular telephones send and receive radio waves, sometimes called "radiofrequency energy" (RF energy), both when they are being used and when they are in standby mode. Current scientific literature indicates that radio waves that exceed a certain level can have effects on the human body. Limits and guidelines have been established by governmental authorities and international committees in an effort to keep the electromagnetic radiation from mobile phones at levels that will not cause health problems. However, there is no scientifically based proof that wireless phones are absolutely safe.

Therefore, some experts recommend a precautionary approach regarding the use of mobile phones by taking measures that lower the personal exposure to electromagnetic fields. When using a mobile telephone inside a motor vehicle without a proper connection to an integrated vehicle telephone antenna, the personal exposure to electromagnetic fields will be higher than when using the mobile telephone while properly connected to an integrated or other outside vehicle telephone antenna.

Your vehicle may be equipped with an optional hands-free system that will permit many of the features of compatible Bluetooth® enabled mobile telephones to be used for greater convenience and is consistent with the laws of an increasing number of states and localities that prohibit the use of mobile telephones without some kind of hands-free device.

The hands-free system in your vehicle can be used with certain mobile phones that are connected by wire and hardware connector or via compatible Bluetooth® enabled phones with a cradle that is designed to fit your mobile telephone. The special cradle offers several advantages: The phone cradle must be safely secured to the base plate. Your phone is firmly attached to the instrument panel and is within reach at all times. Placing the phone in its cradle permits it to be charged, but more importantly connects the mobile phone to the vehicle's outside antenna. A mobile telephone that is properly connected to the integrated or other outside vehicle telephone antenna will lower the personal exposure to electromagnetic fields. You should also experience a better quality of service. Although a mobile telephone can be used inside your vehicle without a cradle, the phone will not be securely attached to the vehicle, will not be charged through the cradle wiring, and more importantly will not be connected to the vehicle's integrated telephone antenna. The mobile phone will also not be recharged. You might also experience more dropped calls and an overall impaired quality of the connection.

Therefore we strongly recommend that you use your mobile telephone in your vehicle only when it is properly attached to an appropriate cradle mounted on a base plate on the instrument panel.

Because of the large number and variety of mobile telephones on the market and the frequency with which new models are introduced, Volkswagen does not offer cradles for mobile telephones. Please check with the manufacturer of the mobile telephone that you plan to use.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

⚠ WARNING

A mobile phone on the seat, instrument panel or in other places can be thrown around the inside of the vehicle during a sudden braking maneuver, a crash or other accident and injure vehicle occupants.

- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, on the windshield, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the steering wheel, instrument panel, backrests or between these areas and the occupant. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially if an airbag inflates.

⚠ WARNING

Using a mobile phone or CB radio inside the vehicle without a properly installed and separate outside antenna can be dangerous to your health and that of your passengers because the electromagnetic radiation energy that mobile phones and CB radios emit may be above established limits. This also applies if the outside antenna is not installed properly.

- Always keep the mobile phone antenna at least 8 in. (20 cm) away from pacemakers. Heart specialists advise that mobile phones can adversely affect the way pacemakers work.
- Never carry a mobile phone that is switched on in the breast pocket directly over a pacemaker.
- If you suspect there may be interference with a pacemaker or other medical device, switch the mobile phone off immediately. ◁

5GM012723ST

Consumer information

Important vehicle labels

Factory-installed safety certificates, stickers, and signs containing important information regarding vehicle operation can be found in the engine compartment and on certain vehicle components, such as inside the fuel filler flap, on the passenger sun visor, in the driver door jamb, or on the luggage compartment floor.

— Do not remove, alter, or make unusable or illegible any safety certificates, stickers, and labels.

— If vehicle components bearing safety certificates, stickers, or labels are replaced, make certain that the firm doing the work attaches new conforming certificates, stickers, or labels to the same part of the new components.

Safety Compliance Certification Label

A safety certificate affixed to the door jamb in the driver door confirms that at time of production all necessary safety standards and requirements of the traffic safety agency of the respective country were met. The month and year of production as well as the vehicle identification number may be listed as well.

Radiator fan and high voltage warning sticker

A warning sticker about the radiator fan and the high voltage of the electrical system is in the engine compartment next to the engine hood release. The vehicle ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.

Tire inflation pressure label

A tire inflation pressure label is on the driver door jamb → page 260, *Tires and wheels*.

Fuel grade sticker

An information sticker listing the minimum required fuel grade for your vehicle → page 222, *Refueling*.

WARNING

Disregarding or exceeding stated values for weights, loads, dimensions and maximum speed may result in accidents and serious personal injuries.

WARNING

Improper vehicle care and use, as well as improper changes to the vehicle, increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- Obey all applicable legal requirements.
- Perform service according to the specifications in the → *Warranty and Maintenance*.
- Read your Owner's Manual and heed all WARNINGS.

NOTICE

Improper vehicle care and use, as well as improper changes to the vehicle, can result in damage to the vehicle.

- Obey all applicable legal requirements.
- Perform service according to the specifications in the → *Warranty and Maintenance*.
- Read your Owner's Manual and heed all WARNINGS. ◁

Air conditioning system operating fluids

Refrigerant

A label in your engine compartment identifies the type and amount of refrigerant included in your vehicle's air conditioning system. The label is at the front of the engine compartment, near the refrigerant cap.

Warning: System should only be serviced by trained technicians.

Refrigerant type.

Lubricant type.

See service information (available at authorized Volkswagen dealers or Volkswagen Service Facilities).

Only trained technicians may service the air conditioning system.

Flammable refrigerant.

Properly dispose of all components and never permit salvaged or recycled components to be installed in your vehicle.

Air conditioning system lubricant

The compressor of your air conditioning system contains up to about 7 oz. (210 ml) of lubricant. The specific type and amount of lubricant used in your vehicle's compressor can be found in:

https://erwin.vw.com

WARNING

The air conditioning system should only be serviced by a trained technician to help ensure proper and safe operation.

NOTICE

- Never permit the air conditioning evaporator to be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.
- New replacement MAC evaporators must be certified and labeled as meeting SAE Standard J2842 HFO-1234yf and R744. ◁

Driving your vehicle outside of the United States and Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you want to drive the car in another country for a short time, please see the information in the checklist → page 32, *General information*.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

— Fuel with the appropriate rating for your vehicle's engine requirements may not be readily available.

— Service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools, or testing equipment.

— Replacement parts may not be readily available.

— DVD navigation systems for vehicles built for the United States and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside of the United States and Canada.

NOTICE

Volkswagen is not responsible for mechanical damage that may result from substandard fuel or service or the unavailability of Genuine Volkswagen parts.

- Volkswagen is not responsible if the vehicle does not meet the respective legal requirements in other countries and continents. ◁

Radio antenna and reception

If the Infotainment system was installed at the factory, the radio antenna may be installed in different locations in the vehicle:

— On the inside of the rear window with the rear window defroster,

— On the inside of the rear side windows,

— On the inside of the windshield,

— On the vehicle roof.

Antennas on the insides of windows are thin wires.

NOTICE

Antennas installed on the insides of windows can be damaged by abrasive objects or by corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals. Do not place any stickers on the windshield-integrated antenna and never clean the antenna with corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals.

NOTICE

If retrofitting a radio or a navigation system, make sure that the vehicle's standard integrated antenna amplifier is compatible with the radio or navigation system. If not, use an additional antenna adapter. Otherwise, the antenna amplifier could be overloaded and damaged.

Operating electrical devices near the integrated windshield antenna may interfere with AM radio reception. ◁

Component protection

Some electronic components and control units in the vehicle may be equipped with a component protection feature, for example, the Infotainment system.

Component protection is a protective feature that helps to:

— Prevent any factory-installed parts from functioning fully if they are installed into other vehicles (for example, after theft),

— Prevent full function of components outside of the vehicle,

— Allow legitimate installation or exchange of parts and control units by a professional should they require service.

If a component protection-related message appears in the instrument cluster display or the Infotainment system display, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. ◁

5GM012723ST

Volkswagen service information

Volkswagen service information is published as soon as possible after model introduction.

To order service information contact:

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center

literature.vw.com

WARNING

Improperly performed repairs and modifications can cause vehicle damage and malfunctions, and can impair the efficiency of driver assistance systems and the airbag system. This can lead to accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Have repairs and vehicle modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

NOTICE

Improper vehicle care and use, as well as improper changes to the vehicle, can result in damage to the vehicle.

- Obey all applicable legal requirements.
- Perform service according to the specifications in the → *Warranty and Maintenance*.
- Read your Owner's Manual and heed all WARNINGS. ◁

Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

Radio-based equipment

— Mobile Phone Package
— Electronic immobilizer
— Remote control vehicle key
— Keyless Access with push-button start
— Car-Net (US only)
— Park Distance Control (PDC) system
— Park Assist system
— Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system
— Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist) system
— Blind Spot Monitor
— Rear Traffic Alert

These devices comply with:

FCC Part 15.19

These devices comply with **Part 15 of the FCC Rules**. Operation is subject to the following 2 conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

These devices comply with **RSS-210 of Industry Canada**.

Operation is subject to the following 2 conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. ◁

Reporting Safety Defects

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Volkswagen of America, Inc. 3800 Hamlin Road, Auburn Hills, MI 48326.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become in-

volved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Volkswagen of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153);

go to http://www.nhtsa.gov;

or write to:

Administrator
NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE.
Washington, D.C. 20590
You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov. ◁

5GM012723ST

Technical data

Weights and axle weights

The actual gross weight of any vehicle depends on the engine, basic equipment, any factory-installed optional equipment for the given model, and any accessories that have been installed. The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross front and Rear Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) for a given vehicle are printed on the vehicle's Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver door jamb → page 320, *Important vehicle labels*.

The **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** includes the weight of the vehicle itself with all of its factory-installed equipment, plus a full tank of gasoline, the engine oil and coolant, all vehicle occupants (150 lbs/68 kg per seating position) and cargo.

The **Gross Axle Weight Ratings** specify the maximum allowable load for each axle.

The cargo payload may not be increased by using a roof rack without subtracting the weight of the roof rack and the cargo being carried on it → ⚠. See → page 296, *Determining the correct load limit*.

Vehicle payload consists of the combined weight of the following:

— Passengers.

— Total luggage and other cargo.

— Roof load, including the roof rack system, if permitted → page 218, *Roof rack*.

— Factory-installed or retrofitted accessories.

Please refer to the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross front and rear Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) for your vehicle, which are printed on the vehicle's Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver door jamb → page 320, *Important vehicle labels*.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding maximum permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents, and serious personal injury.

- Never let the actual weights at the front and rear axles exceed the permissible Gross Axle Weight Rating. Also, never let the total of these actual weights exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
- Always remember that the vehicle's handling and braking will be affected by extra load and the distribution of this load. Adjust your speed accordingly.

NOTICE

- Always distribute the load evenly and as low as possible in the vehicle. The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage).
- When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as close to the rear axle (as far forward) as possible so that the vehicle's handling and braking are affected as little as possible. ◁

Vehicle identification label

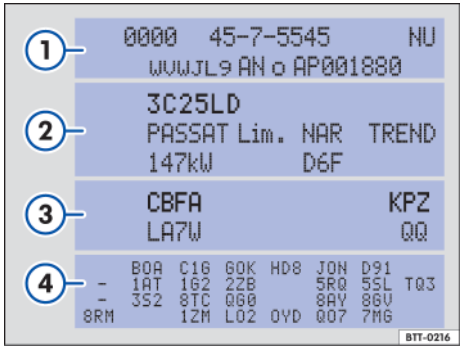


Fig. 194 Vehicle identification label: Shown in the example with engine identification code CBFA ③.

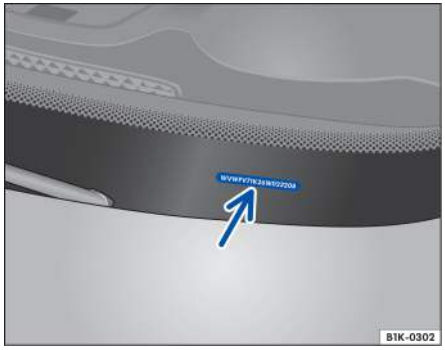


Fig. 195 Vehicle identification number (VIN).

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is on a plate on top of the instrument panel on the driver side, and is visible from the outside through the windshield → fig. 195 (arrow). The view window is on the side at the bottom of the windshield. The vehicle identi-

fication number is also stamped into the top of the right drip channel in the engine compartment. The drip channel is between the spring strut tower and the right fender. Open the engine hood to read the vehicle identification number ⚠ → page 241, *In the engine compartment*.

The vehicle identification number can be displayed in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system → page 26, *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label → fig. 194 is affixed to the area of the spare wheel well underneath the luggage compartment floor panel and contains the following information:

① Vehicle identification number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, and transmission
③ Engine and transmission identification codes, paint number, and interior type. In the example, the engine identification code is "CBFA" → fig. 194.
④ Optional equipment and part numbers ◁

Dimensions

Length	166.7–168.0 inches (4236–4268 mm)
Width	70.8 inches (1799 mm)
Height (unloaded)	56.5–58.1 inches (1436–1477 mm)
Wheelbase	103.1–103.4 inches (2620–2626 mm)
Minimum turning circle diameter (wall to wall) [a]	about 35.8 feet (10.9 m)
Track [a], front	60.3–70.0 inches (1533–1549 mm)
Track [a], rear	59.2–59.9 inches (1504–1521 mm)
Ground clearance (unloaded) [a]	about 5.0–5.6 inches (128–142 mm)

[a] Slight differences to these figures are possible, depending on wheel and tire size fitted, tire inflation pressure, equipment level, driving situation, and other factors.

NOTICE

- Please be careful when parking your vehicle in areas with parking barriers or curbs. These vary in height and could damage your bumper and related parts if the front of your vehicle hits a barrier or curb that is too high while you are getting into or out of a parking spot.
- Always be careful when you enter a driveway or drive up or down steep ramps or over curbs or other obstacles. Parts of the vehicle close to the ground may be damaged (such as bumper covers, spoilers, and parts of the engine, suspension, and exhaust systems). ◁

Fuel capacities

Model	Fuel tank capacity
Golf, Golf GTI	About 13.2 gallons (50.0 liters), of which about 1.3 gallons (5.0 liters) are reserve.

◁

Engine data

Introduction

Fuel recommendations for gasoline engines

The minimum required fuel grade for your engine is shown on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap → fig. 150. Using gasoline that does not meet minimum octane requirements can cause loss of engine performance, while the use of poor quality gasoline or octane levels below 87 can also cause engine damage. If Regular gasoline is recommended for your engine, you may be able to enhance engine performance by using Premium gasoline. ◁

5GM012723ST

Golf, 1.4L engine

Maximum power output	147 hp (110 kW) at 5000–6000 rpm
Injection technology	TSI®
Engine ID code	DGXA
Maximum torque	184 lb-ft (250 Nm) at 1600–3500 rpm
No. of cylinders	4 cylinders
Displacement	85 CID (1395 ccm)

Golf GTI, 2.0L engine

Maximum power output [a)]	228 hp (170 kW) at 6500 rpm
Injection technology	TSI®
Engine ID code	DKFA
Maximum torque [a)]	258 lb-ft (350 Nm) at 4100 rpm
No. of cylinders	4 cylinders
Displacement	121 CID (1984 ccm)

a) Engine performance data using Premium grade gasoline → page 221, *Fuel and emission control system*

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control
AFS	Adaptive Front Lighting System
AKI	Anti-Knock Index
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ASL	Automatic Shift Lock
ASR	Anti-Slip Regulation
ATA	Anti-Theft Alarm system
BAS	Brake Assist System
ccm	Cubic centimeter – metric unit of measure for engine displacement
CID	Cubic inch displacement – unit of measure for engine displacement
cm	Centimeter – metric unit of measure for length
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
DIN	Deutsches Institut für Normung (German Institute for Standardization)
DRL	Daytime Running Lights
DSG®	DSG automated transmission
EDL	Electronic Differential Lock
EDR	Event Data Recorder
EN	European Norm
EPC	Engine control (Electronic Power Control)
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
g/mi (g/km)	Generated carbon monoxide amount in grams per mile (kilometer) driven
GAWR	Gross Axle Weight Rating
GVWR	Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
hp	Horsepower – unit of measure for engine power
kg	Kilogram – metric unit of measure for weight
kN	Kilonewton – unit of measure for force
kp	Kilopond – unit of measure for force
kPa	Kilopascal – unit of measure for tire pressure
kW	Kilowatt – engine rating
LED	Light Emitting Diode
m	Meter – metric unit of measure for length
MFD	Multi-function Display
MIL	Malfunction Indicator Light (engine)
MTBE	Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether
Nm	Newton meter – unit of measure for engine torque
PDC	Park Distance Control
RON	Research Octane Number – measurement of anti-knock resistance of gasoline
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute (engine speed)
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
SIM	Subscriber Identity Module. Subscriber Identity Module.
TSI®	Turbocharged gasoline engine with direct fuel injection
XDL	Extension of the Electronic Differential Lock system

5GM012723ST

Index

Numbers and Symbols

12 Volt sockets 201
3-blink turn signal 112

A

Abroad
- Extended stays with the vehicle 321
- Sale of the vehicle 321

ABS
- See Braking assistance systems 192

ACC 162
Accelerometer 27
Accessories 316
Acoustic warnings
- Lights 114
- Warning and indicator lights 13

Active Blind Spot Monitor 174
- Indicator lights 174

Adaptive chassis control DCC 157
- Indicator light 159

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 162
- Adjusting settings 165
- Radar sensor 162, 163
- Special driving situations 163
- Switching on and off 165
- System limits 163
- Tips and troubleshooting 166

Adaptive Front Lighting System 114
Adjusting
- Electrical controls on the front seats 105
- Front and rear head restraints 108
- Manual controls on the front seats 106
- Proper seating position 35
- Rear seat backrest 107
- Steering wheel 103

Adjusting the driving mode 159
Advanced Airbag System 57
- and child restraints 67

AFS 114
Aftermarket equipment 316
Air conditioning 126
- Air recirculation 130
- Air vents 126
- Climatronic 127
- Controls 127
- Manual air conditioning 127
- Special considerations 132
- Tips and troubleshooting 132

Air recirculation
- Switching on and off 130

Air vents 126
Airbag system 44
- Advanced Airbag System 57
- Advanced Airbags 58
- Capacitive passenger detection system 58
- Cleaning the instrument panel 313
- Deactivation of the front passenger front airbag 58
- Description 49
- Front airbags 54
- Functionality 49
- Indicator light 46
- Locking vehicle after inflation 95
- PASSENGER AIR BAG light 47
- Side airbags 60
- Side Curtain Protection airbags 62
- Use of child restraints 59

Alarm button on vehicle key
- See Panic button 86

Alarm system 95
All-wheel drive
- Snow chains 289
- Winter tires 287

Allergen filter 128
Aluminum parts 311
Ambient lighting 118
Anodized surfaces 311
Antenna 321
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 192
Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) 192, 193
Anti-theft alarm system 95
- Description 95

Anti-theft wheel bolts 299, 301
Antifreeze 251, 252
Armrests 110
ASR
- See Braking assistance systems 192, 193
- Switching on and off 193

Assistance systems
- Adaptive chassis control DCC 157
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 162
- Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 192
- Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) 192, 193
- Automatic Post-Collision Braking System 192
- Blind Spot Monitor 173
- Brake Assist (BAS) 192
- Braking assistance systems 191
- Cruise control 160
- Downhill speed control 155
- Driving Mode Selection 157
- Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDL) 192
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 191
- Front Assist 167
- Hill Start Assist 154
- Lane Assist 171
- Park Assist 185
- Park Distance Control 179

Rear Traffic Alert 189
Rear View Camera system 182
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 265
Attaching jumper cables 235
Auto Hold
Indicator light 178
Auto-dimming rearview mirror 122
Automatic headlights 113
Automatic leveling headlights 115
Automatic load deactivation 258
Automatic Post-Collision Braking System 192
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 149
Automatic transmission 148
Driving 151
Driving on hills 151
Kick-down feature 151
Launch control program 151
Malfunction 152
Shifting 149
Towing 237, 238
Autonomous Emergency Braking
See Front Assist 167
AUX-in jack 198
Axle weights 324

B

Background lighting 118
BAS
See Braking assistance systems 192
Battery
Remote control vehicle key 87
See Vehicle battery 256
Before every trip
Preparatory activities 32
Belt pretensioners
Disposal 43
Service and disposal 43
Belt warning light 37
Blind Spot Monitor 173, 174
Active Blind Spot Monitor 174
Function 174
Indicator lights 174
Indicator lights in the outside mirrors 174
Malfunction 173
Tips and troubleshooting 175
Bottle holders 200
Brake Assist (BAS) 192
Brake booster 137, 191
Brake fluid 255
Specifications 255
Brake pad wear indicator 140
Brake system
Malfunction 140
Brakes
Brake booster 137
Brake fluid 255
Brake fluid level 255
Brake pads 136
Braking assistance systems 191
Break-in period 136
Changing brake fluid 255
Indicator light 194
Parking brake 178
Parking brake (Golf, Golf GTI) 178
Warning and indicator lights 140
Warning light 194
Braking assistance systems 191
Brake Assist (BAS) 192
Break-in period
Engine 140
The first few miles (kilometers) 140
Tires 274
Breakdown
Protecting the vehicle 85

C

Camera
See Rear View Camera system 182
Capacitive passenger detection system
Deactivation of the front passenger front airbag 58
Car wash 308
Care
See Vehicle care 308, 310
CarStick
Connecting 208
Establishing a connection 208
Catalytic converter 225
Indicator light 225
Cell phone
See Mobile phone 318
Center armrests 110
Center console
Overview 10, 11
Changing a wheel 299, 306
After the wheel change 306
Lifting the vehicle (Golf GTI) 304
Lifting the vehicle (Golf) 302
Preparations 300
Removing the subwoofer 204
Wheel bolts 301
When more than one tire is damaged 299
Changing light bulbs
See Replacing light bulbs 230
Checking engine oil level 249
Checklist
Adding engine oil 249
Before working in the engine compartment 243
Breakdown 85
Checking engine oil level 249
Checks while refueling 32
Driving in other countries 32
Getting ready 32
In an emergency 85
Lifting vehicle with jack 303, 304

Preparations for changing a wheel 300
Rear View Camera system 183
Safety belts 39
Child restraints 64
and front airbag 67
and the Advanced Airbag System 67
Booster seats 76
Child restraint mounting 72, 74
Child seat mounting 76
Convertible child restraints 74
Deactivating the passenger front airbag 59
Infant carriers 72
Information about child restraint systems 84
On front passenger seat 67
On the rear seat 71
Securing with LATCH/UAS anchorages 80
Securing with lockable safety belt 78
Securing with safety belt 78
Securing with the Top Tether strap 83
Transporting children in vehicles 69
Child safety lock 94
Child seats
See Child restraints 64
Chrome parts 311
Cleaning
See Vehicle care 308, 310
Climate control
Air recirculation 130
Climatronic 127
Tips and troubleshooting 132
Climatronic
See Air conditioning 126
Clock
Setting the clock 20
Closing
Doors 90
From inside the vehicle 92
From outside the vehicle 86
Power sunroof 100
Trunk lid 97
Windows 98
with Keyless Access 89
Coasting
DSG 151
Coat hooks 199
Coin holders 197, 198
Collision warning
See Front Assist 167
Combined weight
Determination (North America) 296
Coming Home feature 115
Compact spare wheel
Differences from road tires 281
Driving tips 281
Snow chains 289
Compass 17
Component protection 321
Consumer information 320
Continuous parking lights on both sides of the vehicle 114
Control units 318
Controls
Electrical controls on the front seats 105
Manual controls on the front seats 106
Convenience opening and closing
Power sunroof 101
Power windows 99
Convenience turn signal
See 3-blink turn signal 112
Coolant
See Engine coolant 251
Cornering lights 114
Counter-steering assistance 156
Cruise control 160
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 162
Indicator lights 160
Operating 160
Tips and troubleshooting 161
Cup holders 200
Bottles 200
Cleaning 313
Front center console 200
Rear center armrest 201
Curb weight 324
Cybersecurity 205

D

Data connection
see Internet 207
Data recorded
By control units 318
Data recorder 318
Daytime running lights (DRL) 113
Deactivating 113
Parking feature 113
Deactivation
Lane Assist 172
Declaration of compliance 322
Deicing door lock cylinders 312
Department of Transportation uniform tire quality grades 297
Differential lock
See Braking assistance systems 192
Digital clock 20
Dimensions 325
Display 16
Compass 17
Engine hood 244
Engine identification code 17
Front Assist 168
Gear recommendation 17
Instrument cluster 16
Lane Assist 172
Odometer 16
Open doors, hood, or trunk lid 16
Outside temperature 17

Selector lever position 17
Service reminder display 23
Speed warning 17
Time 20
Warning and information texts 19
Display (Golf, Golf GTI) 15
Disposal
Belt pretensioners 43
Door and window seals 313
Doors 90
Child safety lock 94
Emergency closing and opening 92
Downhill speed control 155
Driver door
Overview 8
Driver personalization
Settings 30
User management 30
Driver side
Overview 9
Driving
Driving in other countries 32
Driving through water on roads 139
Efficiency 134
Fuel gauge 21
Getting ready 32
Parking on a hill 177
Recorded data 318
Starting and stopping on hills 151
Through salt water 139
Towing 240
With automatic transmission or DSG 151
Driving lights 112
Driving Mode Selection 157
Function 158
Operation 158
Driving safely
Checklist 32
Driving through water 139
Driving tips
Spare wheel and compact spare wheel 281
When the vehicle is loaded 213
DRL 113
Parking feature 113
DSG® automated transmission 148
Coasting 151
Driving 151
Driving on hills 151
Kick-down feature 151
Launch control program 151
Malfunction 152
Shifting 149
Towing 237, 238
Vehicle key safety interlock 145
Dust filter 126, 128

E

Earth connection 234
EDL
See Braking assistance systems 192
Electrical consumers 202
Electrical controls on the front seats 105
Electrical load
Automatic load deactivation 258
Electrical sockets
12 Volt 202
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDL) 192
Electronic immobilizer 144
Electronic parking brake 178
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 191
Emergency 84
Emergency brake
See Parking brake 178
Emergency closing and opening
Driver door 92
Passenger doors 93
Trunk lid 98
Emergency flashers 85
Emergency release for the selector lever lock 152
Emergency starting 233
Using jumper cables 235
Emission control system 225
Indicator light 225
Engine
Break-in period 140
Engine and ignition 141
Electronic immobilizer 144
Ignition switch 141
Starting the engine 143
Starting the engine with Keyless Access 142
Stopping the engine 143
Unauthorized vehicle key 145
Engine compartment 241
Cleaning 311
Engine coolant 251
Engine oil 246
Opening or closing 243
Preparations 243
Vehicle battery 256
Engine coolant 251, 252
Checking coolant level 253
Filler opening 253
Indicator light 22
Specification 251, 252
Temperature gauge 22
Topping off 253
Warning light 22
Engine data
Gasoline engines 325
Engine hood
Display in the instrument cluster 244
Opening or closing 243
Engine identification code
Determining 320, 324, 325
Displays 17
Gasoline engines 325

Engine oil 246
Adding oil 249
Change 247
Checking engine oil level 249
Consumption 248
Dipstick 249
Filler opening 249
Indicator light 250
Specifications 246
Warning light 250
Engine oil level too low 250
Engine oil pressure too low 250
Engine oil system fault 250
Environmentally friendly driving 134
Equipment 244
ESC 191
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 191
ESC Sport
Switching on and off 193
Eyeglass storage compartment 199

F

Filling capacity
Windshield washer fluid reservoir 246
Flat tire
See Changing a wheel 299
Floor mats 133
Fog lights 113
Forward Collision Warning
See Front Assist 167
Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)
Front Assist 167
Tips and troubleshooting 171
Front airbags
See Airbag system 54
Front Assist 167
Displays 168
Operating 170
Pedestrian Monitoring 170
Switching off temporarily 169
System limits 169
Front head restraints
Adjusting 108
Front passenger front airbag
Deactivation due to measured electrical capacitance 58
Front passenger side
Overview 12
Front seats 104
Electrical controls 105
Manual controls 106
Front view
Vehicle overview 5
Fuel
Gasoline 223
Fuel capacities
Fuel tank 325
Fuel consumption
Driving efficiently 134
Fuel filler cap
Opening and closing 222
Fuel gauge 21
Indicator light 21
Fuel tank cap
See Fuel filler cap 222
Fuses 231
Color coding 233
Fuse boxes 231
Identifying a blown fuse 233
Preparations for replacement 233
Replacing 232
Types 232

G

g-meter 27
Gas cap
See Fuel filler cap 222
Gasoline 223
Fuel 223
Grades 223
Gear recommendation 133
Gearshift lever
Manual transmission 147
Generator 259
Getting ready 32
Glove compartment 197
Light 118
Gross vehicle weight 324
Ground clearance 325

H

Hand brake
See Parking brake 178
Hatch
See Trunk lid 96
Head restraints 107
Adjusting the front and rear head restraints 108
Removing and installing 109
Headlights
Flasher 116
Range adjustment 115
Switching on and off 112
Heated seats 131
Heating system
See Air conditioning 126
High beams
Switching on and off 116
Hill Hold
See Hill Start Assist 154
Hill Start Assist 154
Hood
Opening or closing 243

I

Ice removal 310
Identification number 324
Ignition
See Engine and ignition 141
Ignition keys
See Vehicle keys 86
Ignition switch 141
Safety interlock 145
Unauthorized vehicle key 145
Immobilizer 144
In an emergency 84
Breakdown 85
Checklist 85
Emergency flashers 85
Protecting yourself and the vehicle 85
Indicator lights
Adaptive chassis control DCC 159
Airbag system 46, 47
Applying the brake 194
Auto Hold 178
Blind Spot Monitor 174
Brake pad wear indicator 194
Brake system 140, 194
Catalytic converter 225
Checking engine oil level 250
Cruise control 160
Driver door 91
Emission control system 225
Engine coolant 22
Engine oil sensor 250
ESC 194
Fuel supply 21
Lane Assist 172
Overview 13
Parking brake 179
Rain sensor 120
Refueling 21
Replacing light bulbs 230
Shifting 152
Start-stop system 146
Steering column lock 157
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 263
Windshield washer fluid level 120
Windshield wiper 120
Individual door unlocking 91
Infotainment system
Climate controls 127
Driving mode 159
Performance Monitor 27
Settings 26
Vehicle settings 26
Inside mirror 122
Manually adjustable 122
Self-dimming 122
Inspection service
See Service reminder display 23
Instrument cluster
Brightness 118
Display (Golf, Golf GTI) 15
Displays 16, 18
Driver assistance systems button 25
Instruments (Golf, Golf GTI) 15
Menu structure 18
Operation with the multi-function steering wheel 25
Service reminder display 23
Symbols 13
Using menus 24
Warning and indicator lights 13
Instrument panel
Airbag system 44
Cleaning 313
Instruments (Golf, Golf GTI) 15
Interior lights 118
Internet
Establishing a data connection 207
Quick connection (WPS) 208
Wi-Fi client 210
Wi-Fi hotspot 207
ISOFIX 80

J

Jack 299
Jump leads
Earth connection 234
Jump lead connection point 234
Jump-starting
See Emergency starting 233
Jumper cables
Attaching 235
Removing 236

K

Keyless Access 89
Keyless Entry 89
Keyless Exit 89
Keyless Go 89, 142
Starter button 142
Starting the engine 143
Stopping the engine 143
Unlocking or locking the vehicle 89
Keys
See Vehicle keys 86
Kick-down feature 151

L

Lane Assist 171, 172
Display 172
Function 172
Indicator lights 172
When to deactivate 172
Lane Keeping System
See Lane Assist 171

5GM012723ST

Lap timer 20
Lap times 20
Menu 20
Performance Monitor 28
Statistics 20
LATCH 80
See Child restraints 64
Launch control program 151
Leaving Home feature 115
Lifting the vehicle
Checklist 303, 304
With the vehicle jack (Golf GTI) 304
With the vehicle jack (Golf) 302
Light
Switching on automatic parking light deactivation 114
Light Assist 116
Adjusting the sensitivity 117
Switching on or off 116
System limits 117
Lights 112
3-blink turn signal 112
Acoustic warnings 114
Adaptive Front Lighting System 114
AUTO 113
Coming Home/Leaving Home 115
Cornering lights 114
Daytime running lights (DRL) 113
Features 113
Fog lights 113
Headlight range adjustment 115
High beam switch 116
Instrument cluster brightness 118
Interior lights 118
Light Assist 116
Light switch 112
Low beams 112
Parking lights 113, 114
Reading lights 118
Replacing light bulbs 230
Switching on and off 112
Turn signal lever 112
Turn signals 112
Vehicle lighting 112
Load rating code of the tires 284
Loading
Driving with an open trunk lid 139
General instructions 213
Luggage compartment 213, 216
Luggage compartment pass-through 217
Stowing luggage 213
Tie-downs 216
Locking
After airbag inflation 95
From inside the vehicle 92
From outside the vehicle 86
Trunk lid 97
with Keyless Access 89
Luggage compartment 213, 216
Cover 214
Luggage compartment light 118
Pass-through 217
Storage areas 216
Variable luggage compartment floor 215
Luggage compartment floor 215
Luggage compartment lid
See Trunk lid 96
Luggage rack 218

M

Malfunction
Automatic or DSG transmission 152
Blind Spot Monitor 173
Park Assist 188
Park Distance Control 181
Rain sensor 121
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 263
Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) 225
Manual air conditioning
See Air conditioning 126
Manual controls on the front seats 106
Manual transmission
Towing 237, 238
Manually adjustable inside mirror 122
Microfiber fabric 313
Mirrors 121
Inside mirror 122
Outside mirrors 123
Synchronous mirror adjustment 123
Mobile phone
Use without outside antenna 318
Modifications 316
Multi-function steering wheel
Instrument cluster menus 25

N

Network
Settings 211
New engine 140
New tires 274
Noises
Braking assistance systems 194
Tires 287
Number of seats 33

O

Octane rating 223
Odometer 16
Oil
See Engine oil 246
Oil dipstick 249
Oil service
See Service reminder display 23
Older tires 271
Opening

Doors 90
From inside the vehicle 92
From outside the vehicle 86
Power sunroof 100
Trunk lid 97
Windows 98
with Keyless Access 89
Opening the trunk lid from the inside 98
Operating fluids 244
Outside mirrors 123
Folding in 123
Synchronous mirror adjustment 123
Outside temperature display 17
Overview
Center console, lower section 11
Center console, upper section 10
Driver door 8
Driver side 9
Front passenger side 12
Front view 5
Instrument cluster (Golf, Golf GTI) 15
Menu structure 18
Rear view 7
Roof console 12
Side view 6
Turn signal lever 112
Warning and indicator lights 13
Owner's Manual 197

P

Panic button on vehicle key 86
Panoramic power-sliding sunroof
See Power sunroof 100
Park Assist 185
Automatic braking 188
Interrupting 188
Malfunction 188
Parallel parking 187
Parking 187
Parking perpendicular to the road 187
Pulling out of a parallel parking space 188
Requirements for parking 186
Selecting a parking space 186
Stopping 188
Tips and troubleshooting 188
Park Distance Control 179
Malfunction 181
Operating instructions 180
PDC 179
Signal chimes and screen display 181
Parking 177
With Park Assist 187
Parking brake 178
Golf, Golf GTI 178
Parking lights 112, 113
Switching on and off 114
PASSENGER AIR BAG
Indicator light 47
Passenger front airbag
See Airbag system 44
PDC
See Park Distance Control 179
Pedals 35, 133
Pedestrian Monitoring 170
Performance Monitor 27
Lap timer and stopwatch 28
Sport gauges 27
Physical principle of a frontal collision 37
Pinch protection
Power sunroof 101
Power windows 99
Plenum chamber 311
Polishing 308
Pollen and pollutants filter 126, 128
Power display 27
Power locking system 90
Anti-theft alarm system 95
Description 91
Indicator light in the driver door 91
Individual door unlocking 91
Keyless Access 89
Power locking switch 92
Unlocking or locking from the outside 86
Power outlets 201
Power sunroof 100
Cleaning 312
Convenience opening and closing 101
Opening or closing 100
Pinch protection 101
Power washer 308
Power windows 98
Convenience opening and closing 99
One-touch opening and closing 98
Opening and closing 98
Pinch protection 99
Switches 98
Preparations
Adding engine coolant 253
Adding engine oil 249
Changing a wheel 300
Checking engine coolant level 253
Checking engine oil level 249
Vehicle battery 257
Working in the engine compartment 243
Progressive steering 156
Pulling out of a parallel parking space
With Park Assist 188
Push-button start 142

R

Radar sensor 5, 162, 163, 167
Radio reception
Antenna 321
Rain sensor 120
Indicator light 120
Malfunction 121

5GM012723ST

Raising the vehicle
With the vehicle jack (Golf GTI) 304
With the vehicle jack (Golf) 302
Reading lights 118
Rear head restraints
Adjusting 108
Rear lid
See Trunk lid 96
Rear seat backrest
Folding forward and back 107
Rear seats 106
Rear Traffic Alert 189
Rear view
Vehicle overview 7
Rear View Camera system 182
Checklist 183
Display 182, 183
Operating instructions 182
Parking 184
Requirements 183
Tips and troubleshooting 184
Rear window defroster 127
Rearview mirror 122
Recalibrating tire pressure
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 265
Reduced engine power
Braking assistance systems 194
Refueling 222
At the gas station 221
Fuel 222
Fuel gauge 21
Indicator light 21
Remote control vehicle key 86
Battery replacement 87
Removing
Cover for the front towing eye 239
Cover for the rear towing eye 239
Fuses 232
Head restraints 109
Jumper cables 236
Luggage compartment cover 214
Spare wheel 281
Subwoofer 204
Wax residue 310
Repairs 316
Replacement keys
See Vehicle keys 86
Replacement parts 316
Replacing light bulbs 230
Indicator light 115, 230
Reporting Safety Defects 322
Requirements
Rear View Camera system 183
Resetting tire pressure
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 265
Retrofits 316
Roof console
Overview 12
Roof rack 218

S

Safety belt height adjusters 42
Safety belt load limiter 43
Safety belt position 41
Safety belt pretensioner 43
Safety belt retractor 43
Safety belts 36
Belt position 41
Belt status display 37
Benefits 39
Checklist 39
Cleaning 313
Fastening 40
Lockable safety belt 39
Not fastened 38
Safety belt height adjusters 42
Safety belt load limiter 43
Safety belt pretensioner 43
Safety belt retractor 43
Twisted belt 39
Unfastening 40
Using 39
Warning light 37
Safety features 50
Sale of the vehicle
In other countries/continents 321
Seat heating 131
Seating position
Improper seating positions 34
Seats 33
Front seats 104
Rear seat backrest 107
Rear seats 106
Securing a load
Roof rack 219
Selector lever
Automatic or DSG transmission 149
Selector lever lock
See Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 149
Self-dimming rearview mirror 122
Service message, viewing 23
Service position
Windshield wipers 228
Service reminder display 23
Setting the time 20
Settings
Infotainment system 26
Menu and system settings 26
Network 211
Presets 26
Shift paddles
Tiptronic 150
Shifting 148
Automatic or DSG transmission 149
Emergency release for the selector lever lock 152

Gear recommendation 133
Gearshift lever (manual transmission) 147
Manual transmission 147
Selector lever (automatic or DSG transmission) 149
With Tiptronic 150
Shopping bag hooks 217
Side airbags
See Airbag system 60
Side Curtain Protection airbags
See Airbag system 62
Side view
Vehicle overview 6
Sitting 33
Adjusting the front and rear head restraints 108
Adjusting the steering wheel position 103
Electrical controls on the front seats 105
Manual controls on the front seats 106
Number of seats 33
Proper seating position 35
Removing and installing the head restraints 109
Seat heating 131
Snow chains 289
All-wheel drive 289
Compact spare wheel 289
Snow removal 310
Snow tires
See Winter tires 287
Snowflake symbol 17
Sockets
12 Volt 202
Spare parts 316
Spare wheel 281
Driving tips 281
Removing 281
Special considerations
Component protection 321
Radio reception 321
Removing vehicle key 145
Towing 236, 238
Vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) 236, 238
Water under vehicle 132
Speed rating code letter 284
Speed warning 19
Sport gauges 27
Stalling
Protecting the vehicle 85
Start-stop system
Indicator light 146
Starter button 142
Starting the engine 143
Steering 156
Counter-steering assistance 156
Electromechanical 156
Indicator light 157
Progressive steering 156
Pulling to one side 280
Steering column lock 156
Vibration 280
Warning light 157
Steering wheel 103
Adjusting 103
Shift paddles (Tiptronic) 150
Stopping the engine 143
Stopwatch 27
Performance Monitor 28
Storage compartments 196
Cleaning 313
Coin holders (Golf, Golf GTI) 198
Driver side 196
Eyeglass storage compartment 199
Front center armrest 198
Front center console 198
Glove compartment 197
In the luggage compartment 216
Other storage compartments 199
Overhead console 199
Owner's Manual 197
Passenger side 197
Storage compartment light 118
Stowing luggage 213
Subwoofer
Removing and reinstalling 204
Sun protection 124
Sun visors 124
Sunroof
See Power sunroof 100
Symbols
See Warning and indicator lights 13
Systems
Adaptive chassis control DCC 157
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 162
Adaptive Front Lighting System 114
Airbag system 44
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 192
Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) 192, 193
Automatic Post-Collision Braking System 192
Blind Spot Monitor 173
Brake Assist (BAS) 192
Cruise control 160
Downhill speed control 155
Driving Mode Selection 157
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDL) 192
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 191
ESC Sport 191, 193
Front Assist 167
Hill Start Assist 154
Launch control program 151
Light Assist 116
Park Assist 185
Park Distance Control 179

5GM012723ST

Rear Traffic Alert 189
Rear View Camera system 182
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 260, 265

T

Tachometer 16
Technical data 324
Axle weight 324
Curb weight 324
Dimensions 325
Displacement 325
Engine oil specifications 246
Fuel capacities 325
Gasoline engines 325
Gross vehicle weight 324
Output 325
Roof load 219
Safety compliance label 320
Tire inflation pressure 276
Vehicle identification label 324
Washer fluid filling capacity 246
Weights 324
Technical modifications 316
Temperature gauge
Engine coolant 22
Think Blue. Trainer. 135
Tie-downs 216
Tightening torque
Wheel bolts 301
Time
Setting the time 20
TIN 284
Tips and troubleshooting
Automatic locking 95
Blind Spot Monitor 175
Brakes 194
Cruise control system 161
Driving Mode Selection 159
Driving safely and efficiently 140
Emergency shut-off 145
Emergency start feature 145
Engine overheated 145
Engine speed limited 145
EPC 145
Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist) 171
Ignition switch 145
Indicator light in the driver door 95
Indicator light in the vehicle key 88
Lights 115
manual transmission 148
Misfire 225
One-touch opening and closing 100
Park Assist 188
Park Distance Control 181
Parking brake 179
Pinch protection 99
Rain/light sensor 115
Rear View Camera system 184
Remote control vehicle key 88
Shifting 152
Starter button 145
steering 157
Trunk lid 98
Turn signals 95, 98, 115
Vehicle lighting 115
Tiptronic 150
Tire damage 280
Tire inflation pressure 276
Checking 276
Compact spare wheel 276
Spare wheel 276
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 260, 265
Indicator light 263
Malfunction 263
Resetting the tire pressure 265
Tire inflation pressure 276
Tire wear 280
Tires and wheels 269, 278
Avoiding damage 271
Break-in period 274
Changing a wheel 299
Determine load limit 296
Embedded objects 280
Imbalance 280
Incorrect wheel alignment 280
Labeling 284
Load rating code of the tires 284
New tires 274
Older tires 271
Replacing tires 274
Rotating tires 271
Serial number 284
Snow chains 289
Spare wheel and compact spare wheel 281
Speed rating code 284
Speed rating code letter 284
Stowing the replaced wheel 282
Technical data 284
Tire and wheel handling 271
Tire damage 280
Tire identification number (TIN) 284
Tire inflation pressure 276
Tire inflation pressure in cold tires 278
Tire labeling 284
Tire storage 271
Tire wear 280
Traction 284
Tread depth 279
Tread wear indicator 279
Unidirectional tires 271, 284
UTQG classification 297
Wheel balancing 280
Wheel rims 273
When more than one tire is damaged 299
Winter tires 287

Tools
See Vehicle tool kit 227
Towing 236
Automatic or DSG transmission 237, 238
Driving tips 240
Front towing eye 239
Manual transmission 237, 238
Rear towing eye 239
Special considerations 236
Tow bar 236
Tow rope 236
Tow rope or tow bar 238
Tow truck 237
Towing other vehicles 238
Towing prohibition 238
Vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) 236, 238
Towing a trailer
See Trailer 220
TPMS 260
Trailer 220
Towing 220
Trailer hitch
See Trailer 220
Transporting 213
Driving tips 138
Driving with an open trunk lid 139
Luggage compartment pass-through 217
Roof rack 218, 219
Shopping bag hooks 217
Stowing luggage 213
Tie-downs 216
Trailer towing 220
Transporting children in vehicles 69
Trip odometer 16
Reset button (Golf, Golf GTI) 15
Trunk lid 96
Driving with an open trunk lid 139
Opening and closing 97
Opening the trunk lid from inside the luggage compartment 98
Unlocking or locking 86
Turn signals 112

U

UAS 80
See Child restraints 64
UCRA 80
UMTS Stick
See CarStick 208
Unidirectional tires 284
Unlocking
From inside the vehicle 92
From outside the vehicle 86
Trunk lid 97
Vehicle 86
with Keyless Access 89
Upholstery 313
Care and cleaning of leather upholstery 313
Care and treatment 314
Cleaning upholstery, microfiber fabric, and fabric trim 313
Leatherette 313
USB Internet stick
See CarStick 208
USB port 198
User profiles
Settings 30
UTQG classification 297

V

Vanity mirror 124
Variable luggage compartment floor 215
Vehicle
Loading 213
Protective action in case of breakdown 85
Stopping on a hill 177
Unlocking or locking from the inside 92
Unlocking or locking from the outside 86
Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access 89
Vehicle battery 256
Automatic load deactivation 258
Battery drain 258
Charging 258
Checking acid level 257
Connecting 258
Disconnecting 258
Drain 90
Earth connection for jump leads 234
Installation location 256
Jump-starting 235
Preparations 257
Replacement 258
Symbol explanation 256
Warning light 259
Vehicle care 308
Airbag module (instrument panel) 313
Anodized surfaces 311
Chrome and Aluminum parts 311
Cleaning storage compartments 313
Cleaning the safety belts 313
Cleaning wheel rims 311
Cleaning wiper blades 228
Deicing door lock cylinders 312
Door and window seals 313
Engine compartment 311
Exterior 310
Interior 313
Leather 313
Leatherette 313
Microfiber fabric and fabric trim 313
Plastic components 313
Plenum chamber 311
Power sunroof 312
Power washer 308

Replacing wiper blades 228
Service position 228
Special considerations 308
Washing the vehicle 308
Windshield-integrated antenna 321
Vehicle identification label 324
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 324
Vehicle keys 86
Battery replacement 87
Indicator light 86
Panic button 86
Synchronizing 88
Vehicle labels 320
Vehicle modifications 316
Vehicle overview
Front view 5
Rear view 7
Side view 6
Warning and indicator lights 13
Vehicle settings
Infotainment system 26
Vehicle tool kit 227
Contents 227
Storage 227
Vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION)
Towing 236
Volkswagen Information System
Displays 18
Menu structure 18

W

Warning chime
Safety belt unfastened 37
Warning lights
Alternator 259
Applying the brake 194
Brake system 140, 194
Depress brake pedal 168
Engine coolant 22
Engine oil pressure 250
Overview 13
Parking brake 179
Safety belts 37
Shifting 152
Steering column lock 157
Vehicle battery 259
Washing the vehicle 308, 310
Special considerations 308
Waxing the vehicle paint 308
Website connection
Connecting a CarStick 208
Weights 324
What happens to passengers not wearing a safety belt 38
Wheel bolts 299, 301
Cover caps 299
Tightening torque 301
Wheel change
See Changing a wheel 299
Wheel covers
Full wheel cover 299
Hubcaps 298
Wheel bolt caps 299
Wheel rims
Bolted decorative cover 274
Bolted rim ring 274
Cleaning 311
Wheel rims and bolts 273
Wheel trim 298
Wi-Fi
Client 210
Hotspot 207
NFC 209, 210
QR code 210
Quick connection (WPS) 208
Windows
See Power windows 98
Windshield
Defroster 127
Windshield washer 119
Windshield washer fluid
Checking 245
Indicator light 120
Refilling 245
Windshield wipers 119
Functions 120
Heated washer nozzles 120
Indicator light 120
Lifting the wiper blade 228
Rain sensor 120
Service position 228
Windshield wiper lever 119
Windshield-integrated antenna 321
Winter operation
Fuel consumption 134
Snow chains 289
Tread depth 279
Winter tires 287
Winter tires 287
All-wheel drive 287
Speed restrictions 287
Wiper blades
Cleaning 228
Replacing 228
Wrench symbol 23

X

XDL
See Braking assistance systems 192